

[TG1-1, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 1, p. 1]

(1-1)ENGLAND is the Southern, and Scotland is the  
(1-1)northern part of the celebrated island called Great  
(1-1)Britain. England is greatly larger than Scotland,  
(1-1)and the land is much richer, and produces better  
(1-1)crops. There are also a great many more men in  
(1-1)England, and both the gentlemen and the country  
(1-1)people are more wealthy, and have better food and  
(1-1)clothing there than in Scotland. The towns, also,  
(1-1)are much more numerous, and more populous.  
(1-1)Scotland, on the contrary, is full of hills, and  
(1-1)huge moors and wildernesses, which bear no corn,  
(1-1)and afford but little food for flocks of sheep or  
(1-1)herds of cattle. But the level ground that lies  
(1-1)along the great rivers is more fertile, and produces  
(1-1)good crops. The natives of Scotland are accustomed

[TG1-2, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 1, p. 2]

(1-2)to live more hardily in general than those  
(1-2)of England. The cities and towns are fewer,  
(1-2)smaller, and less full of inhabitants than in England.  
(1-2)But as Scotland possesses great quarries of  
(1-2)stone, the houses are commonly built of that material,  
(1-2)which is more lasting, and has a grander effect  
(1-2)to the eye than the bricks used in England.  
(1-2)Now, as these two nations live in the different  
(1-2)ends of the same island, and are separated by large  
(1-2)and stormy seas from all other parts of the world,  
(1-2)it seems natural that they should have been friendly  
(1-2)to each other, and that they should have lived as  
(1-2)one people under the same government. Accordingly,  
(1-2)about two hundred years ago, the King of  
(1-2)Scotland becoming King of England, as I shall  
(1-2)tell you in another part of this book, the two

(1-2)nations have ever since then been joined in one  
(1-2)great kingdom, which is called Great Britain.  
(1-2)But, before this happy union of England and  
(1-2)Scotland, there were many long, cruel, and bloody  
(1-2)wars, between the two nations; and, far from helping  
(1-2)or assisting each other, as became good neighbours  
(1-2)and friends, they did each other all the harm  
(1-2)and injury that they possibly could, by invading  
(1-2)each other's territories, killing their subjects, burning  
(1-2)their towns, and taking their wives and children  
(1-2)prisoners. This lasted for many many hundred  
(1-2)years; and I am about to tell you the reason why  
(1-2)the land was so divided.  
(1-2)A long time since, eighteen hundred years ago  
(1-2)and more, there was a brave and warlike people,  
(1-2)called the Romans, who undertook to conquer the

[TG1-3, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 1, p. 3]

(1-3)whole world, and subdue all countries, so as to  
(1-3)make their own city of Rome the head of all the  
(1-3)nations upon the face of the earth. And after  
(1-3)conquering far and near, at last they came to Britain,  
(1-3)and made a great war upon the inhabitants,  
(1-3)called the British, or Britons, whom they found  
(1-3)living there. The Romans, who were a very brave  
(1-3)people and well armed, beat the British, and took  
(1-3)possession of almost all the flat part of the island,  
(1-3)which is now called England, and also of a part of  
(1-3)the south of Scotland. But they could not make  
(1-3)their way into the high northern mountains of  
(1-3)Scotland, where they could hardly get any thing to  
(1-3)feed their soldiers, and where they met with much  
(1-3)opposition from the inhabitants. The Romans,  
(1-3)therefore, gave up all attempts to subdue this impenetrable  
(1-3)country, and resolved to remain satisfied

(1-3)with that level ground, of which they had already  
(1-3)possessed themselves.  
(1-3)Then the wild people of Scotland, whom the  
(1-3)Romans had not been able to subdue, began to come  
(1-3)down from their mountains, and make inroads upon  
(1-3)that part of the country which had been conquered  
(1-3)by the Romans.  
(1-3)These people of the northern parts of Scotland  
(1-3)were not one nation, but divided in two, called the  
(1-3)Scots and the Picts; they often fought against  
(1-3)each other, but they always joined together against  
(1-3)the Romans, and the Britons who had been subdued

[TG1-4, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 1, p. 4]

(1-4)by them. At length, the Romans thought  
(1-4)they would prevent these Picts and Scots from  
(1-4)coming into the southern part of Britain, and  
(1-4)laying it waste. For this purpose, they built a  
(1-4)very long wall between the one side of the island  
(1-4)and the other, so that none of the Scots or Picts  
(1-4)should come into the country on the south side of  
(1-4)the wall; and they made towers on the wall, and  
(1-4)camps, with soldiers, from place to place; so that,  
(1-4)at the least alarm, the soldiers might hasten to  
(1-4)defend any part of the wall which was attacked.  
(1-4)This first Roman wall was built between the two  
(1-4)great Friths of the Clyde and the Forth, just  
(1-4)where the island of Britain is at the narrowest,  
(1-4)and some parts of it are to be seen at this day.  
(1-4)You can see it on the map.  
(1-4)This wall defended the Britons for a time, and  
(1-4)the Scots and Picts were shut out from the fine  
(1-4)rich land, and enclosed within their own mountains.  
(1-4)But they were very much displeased with this, and  
(1-4)assembled themselves in great numbers, and climbed

(1-4)over the wall, in spite of all that the Romans could  
(1-4)do to oppose them. A man, named Grahame, is  
(1-4)said to have been the first soldier who got over;  
(1-4)and the common people still call the remains of  
(1-4)the wall Grahame's dike.  
(1-4)Now the Romans, finding that this first wall  
(1-4)could not keep out the Barbarians (for so they  
(1-4)termed the Picts and the Scots), thought they  
(1-4)would give up a large portion of the country to

[TG1-5, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 1, p. 5]

(1-5)them, and perhaps it might make them quiet. So  
(1-5)they built a new wall, and a much stronger one  
(1-5)than the first, sixty miles farther back from the  
(1-5)Picts and Scots. Yet the Barbarians made as  
(1-5)many furious attacks to get over this second wall,  
(1-5)as ever they had done to break through the former.  
(1-5)But the Roman soldiers defended the second wall  
(1-5)so well, that the Scots and Picts could not break  
(1-5)through it; though they often came round the  
(1-5)end of the wall by sea, in boats made of ox hides,  
(1-5)stretched upon hoops, landed on the other side,  
(1-5)and did very much mischief. In the mean time,  
(1-5)the poor Britons led a very unhappy life; for the  
(1-5)Romans, when they subdued their country, having  
(1-5)taken away all their arms, they lost the habit of  
(1-5)using them, or of defending themselves, and trusted  
(1-5)entirely to the protection of their conquerors.  
(1-5)But at this time great quarrels, and confusion,  
(1-5)and civil wars, took place at Rome. So the Roman  
(1-5)Emperor sent to the soldiers whom he had maintained  
(1-5)in Britain, and ordered that they should  
(1-5)immediately return to their own country, and leave  
(1-5)the Britons to defend their wall as well as they  
(1-5)could, against their unruly and warlike neighbours

(1-5)the Picts and Scots. The Roman soldiers were  
(1-5)very sorry for the poor Britons, but they could do  
(1-5)no more to help them than by repairing the wall of  
(1-5)defence. They therefore built it all up, and made

[TG1-6, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 1, p. 6]

(1-6)it as strong as if it were quite new. And then  
(1-6)they took to their ships, and left the island.  
(1-6)After the departure of the Romans, the Britons  
(1-6)were quite unable to protect the wall against the  
(1-6)Barbarians; for, since their conquest by the Romans,  
(1-6)they had become a weak and cowardly  
(1-6)people. So the Picts and the Scots broke through  
(1-6)the wall at several points, wasted and destroyed  
(1-6)the country, and took away the boys and girls to  
(1-6)be slaves, seized upon the sheep, and upon the  
(1-6)cattle, and burnt the houses, and did the inhabitants  
(1-6)every sort of mischief. Thus at last the  
(1-6)Britons, finding themselves no longer able to  
(1-6)resist these barbarous people, invited into Britain  
(1-6)to their assistance a number of men from the  
(1-6)North of Germany, who were called Anglo-Saxons.  
(1-6)Now, these were a very brave and warlike people,  
(1-6)and they came in their ships from Germany, and  
(1-6)landed in the south part of Britain, and helped the  
(1-6)Britons to fight with the Scots and Picts, [A.D.449.]  
(1-6)and drove these nations again into the hills and  
(1-6)fastnesses of their own country, to the north of the  
(1-6)wall which the Romans built; and they were  
(1-6)never afterwards so troublesome to their neighbours.  
(1-6)But the Britons were not much the better for  
(1-6)the defeat of their northern enemies; for the  
(1-6)Saxons, when they had come into Britain, and saw

[TG1-7, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 1, p. 7]

(1-7)what a beautiful rich country it was, and that the  
(1-7)people were not able to defend it, resolved to take  
(1-7)the land to themselves, and to make the Britons  
(1-7)their slaves and servants. The Britons were very  
(1-7)unwilling to have their country taken from them  
(1-7)by the people they had called in to help them, and  
(1-7)so strove to oppose them; but the Saxons were  
(1-7)stronger and more warlike than they, and defeated  
(1-7)them so often, that they at last got possession of  
(1-7)all the level and flat land in the south part of Britain.  
(1-7)However, the bravest part of the Britons  
(1-7)fled into a very hilly part of the country, which is  
(1-7)called Wales, and there they defended themselves  
(1-7)against the Saxons for a great many years; and  
(1-7)their descendants still speak the ancient British  
(1-7)language, called Welsh. In the mean time, the  
(1-7)Anglo-Saxons spread themselves throughout all  
(1-7)the south part of Britain, and the name of the  
(1-7)country was changed, and it was no longer called  
(1-7)Britain, but England; which means the land of  
(1-7)the Anglo-Saxons who had conquered it.  
(1-7)While the Saxons and Britons were thus fighting  
(1-7)together, the Scots and the Picts, after they  
(1-7)had been driven back behind the Roman wall, also  
(1-7)quarrelled and fought between themselves; and at  
(1-7)last, after a great many battles, the Scots got completely  
(1-7)the better of the Picts. The common people  
(1-7)say that the Scots destroyed them entirely;  
(1-7)but I think it is not likely that they could kill such  
(1-7)great number of people. Yet it is certain they  
(1-7)must have slain many, and driven others out of the  
(1-7)country, and made the rest their servants and

(1-8)slaves; at least the Picts were never heard of in  
(1-8)history after these great defeats, and the Scots  
(1-8)gave their own name to the north part of Britain,  
(1-8)as the Angles, or Anglo-Saxons, did to the south  
(1-8)part; and so came the name of Scotland, the land  
(1-8)of the Scots; and England, the land of the English.  
(1-8)The two kingdoms were divided from each other,  
(1-8)on the east by the river Tweed; then, as you proceed  
(1-8)westward, by a great range of hills and wildernesses,  
(1-8)and at length by a branch of the sea  
(1-8)called the Frith of Solway. The division is not  
(1-8)very far from the old Roman wall. The wall itself  
(1-8)has been long suffered to go to ruins; but, as I  
(1-8)have already said, there are some parts of it still  
(1-8)standing, and it is curious to see how it runs as  
(1-8)straight as an arrow over high hills, and through  
(1-8)great bogs and morasses.  
(1-8)You see, therefore, that Britain was divided  
(1-8)between three different nations, who were enemies  
(1-8)the richest and best part of the island, and which  
(1-8)was inhabited by the English. Then there was  
(1-8)Scotland, full of hills and great lakes, and difficult  
(1-8)and dangerous precipices, wild heaths, and great  
(1-8)morasses. This country was inhabited by the Scots,  
(1-8)or Scottish men. And there was Wales, also a  
(1-8)very wild and mountainous country, whither the  
(1-8)remains of the ancient Britons had fled, to obtain  
(1-8)safety from the Saxons.  
(1-8)The Welsh defended their country for a long  
(1-8)time, and lived under their own government and  
(1-8)laws; yet the English got possession of it at last.

[TG1-9, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 1, P. 9]

(1-9)But they were not able to become masters of Scotland,  
(1-9)though they tried it frequently. The two

(1-9)countries were under different kings, who fought  
(1-9)together very often and very desperately; and thus  
(1-9)you see the reason why England and Scotland,  
(1-9)though making parts of the same island, were for  
(1-9)a long time great enemies to each other. Papa  
(1-9)will show you the two countries on the map, and  
(1-9)you must take notice that Scotland is all full of  
(1-9)hills, and wild moors covered with heather.-- But  
(1-9)now I think upon it, Mr Hugh Littlejohn is a traveller,  
(1-9)and has seen Scotland, and England too,  
(1-9)with his own eyes. However, it will do no harm  
(1-9)to look at the map.  
(1-9)The English are very fond of their fine country;  
(1-9)they call it "Old England," and "Merry England,"  
(1-9)and think it the finest land that the sun  
(1-9)shines upon. And the Scots are also very proud of  
(1-9)their own country, with its great lakes and mountains;  
(1-9)and, in the old language of the country, they  
(1-9)call it "The land of the lakes and mountains; and  
(1-9)of the brave men;" and often, also, " The Land of  
(1-9)Cakes," because the people live a good deal upon  
(1-9)cakes made of oatmeal, instead of wheaten bread.  
(1-9)But both England and Scotland are now parts of  
(1-9)the same kingdom, and there is no use in asking  
(1-9)which is the best country, or has the bravest men.

[TG1-10, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 1, p. 10]

(1-10)This is but a dull chapter, Mr Littlejohn. But  
(1-10)as we are to tell many stories about Scotland and  
(1-10)England, it is best to learn what sort of countries  
(1-10)we are talking about. The next story shall be more  
(1-10)entertaining.

[TG2-11, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 11]



(2-11)Soon after the Scots and Picts had become one  
(2-11)people, as I told you before, there was a king of  
(2-11)Scotland called Duncan, a very good old man. He  
(2-11)had two sons ; one was called Malcolm, and the  
(2-11)other Donaldbane. But King Duncan was too old  
(2-11)to lead out his army to battle, and his sons were  
(2-11)too young to help him.  
(2-11)At this time Scotland, and indeed France and  
(2-11)England, and all the other countries of Europe,  
(2-11)were much harassed by the Danes. These were a  
(2-11)very fierce, warlike people, who sailed from one  
(2-11)place to another, and landed their armies on the  
(2-11)coast, burning and destroying every thing wherever  
(2-11)they came. They were heathens, and did not  
(2-11)believe in the Bible, but thought of nothing but  
(2-11)battle and slaughter, and making plunder. When  
(2-11)they came to countries where the inhabitants were  
(2-11)cowardly, they took possession of the land, as I told  
(2-11)you the Saxons took possession of Britain. At  
(2-11)other times, they landed with soldiers, took  
(2-11)what spoil they could find, burned the houses, and  
(2-11)then got on board, hoisted sails, and away again.

[TG2-12, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 12]

(2-12)They did so much mischief, that people put up  
(2-12)prayers to God in the churches, to deliver them  
(2-12)from the rage of the Danes.  
(2-12)Now, it happened in King Duncan's time, that a  
(2-12)great fleet of these Danes came to Scotland and  
(2-12)landed their men in Fife, and threatened to take  
(2-12)possession of that province. So a numerous Scottish  
(2-12)army was levied to go to fight against them.  
(2-12)The King, as I told you, was too old to command  
(2-12)his army, and his sons were too young. He therefore  
(2-12)sent out one of his near relations, who was

(2-12)called Macbeth; he was son of Finel, who was  
(2-12)Thane, as it was called, of Glamis. The governors  
(2-12)of provinces were at that time, in Scotland, called  
(2-12)Thanes; they were afterwards termed Earls.  
(2-12)This Macbeth, who was a brave soldier, put  
(2-12)himself at the head of the Scottish army, and  
(2-12)marched against the Danes. And he carried with  
(2-12)him a relation of his own, called Banquo, who was  
(2-12)Thane of Lochaber and was also a very brave man.  
(2-12)So there was a great battle fought between the  
(2-12)Danes and the Scots; and Macbeth and Banquo,  
(2-12)the Scottish generals, defeated the Danes, and  
(2-12)drove them back to their ships, leaving a great many  
(2-12)of their soldiers both killed and wounded. Then  
(2-12)Macbeth and his army marched back to a town in  
(2-12)the North or Scotland, called Forres, rejoicing on  
(2-12)account of their victory.  
(2-12)Now there lived at this time three old women in  
(2-12)the town of Forres, whom people looked upon as

[TG2-13, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 13]

(2-13)witches, and supposed they could tell what was to  
(Tg2-13)come to pass. Nobody would believe such folly  
(2-13)now-a-days, except low and ignorant creatures,  
(2-13)such as those who consult gipsies in order to have  
(2-13)their fortunes told; but in those early times the  
(2-13)people were much more ignorant, and even great  
(2-13)men, like Macbeth, believed that such persons as  
(2-13)these witches of Forres could tell what was to  
(2-13)come to pass afterwards, and listened to the nonsense  
(2-13)they told them, as if the old women had  
(Tg2-13)really been prophetesses. The old women saw that  
(2-13)they were respected and feared, so that they were  
(2-13)tempted to impose upon people, by pretending to  
(2-13)tell what was to happen to them; and they got presents

(2-13)for doing so.

(Tg2-13)So the three old women went and stood by the  
(2-13)wayside, in a great moor or heath near Forres, and  
(Tg2-13)waited till Macbeth came up. And then, stepping  
(2-13)before him as he was marching at the head of his  
(2-13)soldiers, the first woman said, "All hail, Macbeth  
(Tg2-13)-- hail to thee, Thane of Glamis." The second said,  
(2-13)"All hail, Macbeth -- hail to thee, Thane of Cawdor."  
(Tg2-13)Then the third, wishing to pay him a higher compliment  
(2-13)than the other two, said, "All hail, Macbeth,  
(Tg2-13)that shalt be King of Scotland." Macbeth was very  
(2-13)much surprised to hear them give him these titles;  
(2-13)and while he was wondering what they could mean,  
(2-13)Banquo stepped forward, and asked them whether  
(2-13)they had nothing to tell about him as well as about  
(Tg2-13)Macbeth. And they said that he should not be so  
(2-13)great as Macbeth, but that, though he himself  
(2-13)should never be a king, yet his children should

[TG2-14, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 14]

(2-14)succeed to the throne of Scotland, and be kings for  
(2-14)a great number of years.  
(Tg2-14)Before Macbeth was recovered from his surprise,  
(2-14)there came a messenger to tell him that his father  
(2-14)was dead, so that he was become Thane of Glamis  
(Tg2-14)by inheritance. And there came a second messenger,  
(2-14)from the King, to thank Macbeth for the great  
(2-14)victory over the Danes, and tell him that the Thane  
(2-14)of Cawdor had rebelled against the King, and that  
(2-14)the King had taken his office from him, and had  
(2-14)sent to make Macbeth Thane of Cawdor as well as  
(Tg2-14)of Glamis. Thus the two first old women seemed  
(Tg2-14)to be right in giving him those two titles. I dare  
(2-14)say they knew something of the death of Macbeth's  
(2-14)father, and that the government of Cawdor was

(2-14)intended for Macbeth, though he had not heard of it.  
(Tg2-14)However, Macbeth, seeing a part of their words  
(2-14)come to be true, began to think how he was to  
(2-14)bring the rest to pass, and make himself King, as  
(Tg2-14)well as Thane of Glamis and Cawdor. Now Macbeth  
(2-14)had a wife, who was a very ambitious, wicked  
(2-14)woman, and when she found out that her husband  
(2-14)thought of raising himself up to be King of Scotland,  
(2-14)she encouraged him in his wicked purpose, by  
(2-14)all the means in her power, and persuaded him that  
(2-14)the only way to get possession of the crown was to  
(Tg2-14)kill the good old King, Duncan. Macbeth was  
(2-14)very unwilling to commit so great a crime, for he  
(2-14)knew what a good sovereign Duncan had been;  
(2-14)and he recollected that he was his relation, and had  
(2-14)been always very kind to him, and had intrusted  
(2-14)him with the command of his army, and had bestowed

[TG2-15, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 15]

(2-15)on him the government or Thanedom of  
(Tg2-15)Cawdor. But his wife continued telling him what  
(2-15)a foolish, cowardly thing it was in him not to take  
(2-15)the opportunity of making himself King, when it  
(2-15)was in his power to gain what the witches promised  
(Tg2-15)him. So the wicked advice of his wife, and the  
(2-15)prophecy of these wretched old women, at last  
(2-15)brought Macbeth to think of murdering his King  
(Tg2-15)and his friend. The way in which he accomplished  
(2-15)his crime, made it still more abominable.  
(Tg2-15)Macbeth invited Duncan to come to visit him at  
(2-15)a great castle near Inverness; and the good King,  
(2-15)who had no suspicions of his kinsman, accepted the  
(Tg2-15)invitation very willingly. Macbeth and his lady  
(2-15)received the King and all his retinue with much  
(2-15)appearance of joy, and made a great feast, as a

(2-15)subject would do to make his King welcome.  
(Tg2-15)About the middle of the night, the King desired  
(2-15)to go to his apartment, and Macbeth conducted him  
(2-15)to a fine room, which had been prepared for him.  
(Tg2-15)Now, it was the custom, in those barbarous times,  
(2-15)that wherever the King slept, two armed men slept  
(2-15)in the same chamber, in order to defend his person  
(2-15)in case he should be attacked by any one during  
(Tg2-15)the night. But the wicked Lady Macbeth had  
(2-15)made these two watchmen drink a great deal of  
(2-15)wine, and had besides put some drugs into the  
(2-15)liquor; so that when they went to the King's apartment  
(2-15)they both fell asleep, and slept so soundly  
(2-15)that nothing could awaken them.  
(Tg2-15)Then the cruel Macbeth came into King Duncan's  
(Tg2-15)bedroom about two in the morning. It was

[TG2-16, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 16]

(2-16)a terrible stormy night ; but the noise of the wind  
(2-16)and of the thunder did not awaken the King, for  
(2-16)he was old, and weary with his journey; neither  
(2-16)could it awaken the two sentinels, who were stupified  
(2-16)with the liquor and the drugs they had  
(Tg2-16)swallowed. They all slept soundly. So Macbeth  
(2-16)having come into the room, and stepped gently  
(2-16)over the floor, he took the two dirks which belonged  
(2-16)to the sentinels, and stabbed poor old King Duncan  
(2-16)to the heart, and that so effectually, that he  
(Tg2-16)died without giving even a groan. Then Macbeth  
(2-16)put the bloody daggers into the hands of the sentinels,  
(2-16)and daubed their faces over with blood, that  
(2-16)it might appear as if they had committed the murder.  
(Tg2-16)Macbeth was, however, greatly frightened  
(2-16)at what he had done, but his wife made him wash  
(2-16)his hands and go to bed.

(Tg2-16)Early in the morning, the nobles and gentlemen  
(2-16)who attended on the King assembled in the great  
(2-16)hall of the castle, and there they began to talk of  
(2-16)what a dreadful storm it had been the night before.  
(Tg2-16)But Macbeth could scarcely understand what they  
(2-16)said, for he was thinking on something much worse  
(2-16)and more frightful than the storm, and was wondering  
(2-16)what would be said when they heard of the  
(Tg2-16)murder. They waited for some time, but finding  
(2-16)the King did not come from his apartment, one of  
(2-16)the noblemen went to see whether he was well or  
(Tg2-16)not. But when he came into the room, he found  
(2-16)poor King Duncan lying stiff, and cold, and bloody,  
(2-16)and the two sentinels both fast asleep, with their  
(Tg2-16)dirks or daggers covered with blood. As soon as

[TG2-17, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 17]

(2-17)the Scottish nobles saw this terrible sight, they  
(2-17)were greatly astonished and enraged; and Macbeth  
(2-17)made believe as if he were more enraged than any  
(2-17)of them, and, drawing his sword, before any one  
(2-17)could prevent him, he killed the two attendants of  
(2-17)the King who slept in the bedchamber, pretending  
(2-17)to think they had been guilty of murdering King  
(2-17)Duncan.  
(Tg2-17)When Malcolm and Donaldbane, the two sons  
(2-17)of the good King, saw their father slain in this  
(2-17)strange manner within Macbeth's castle, they  
(2-17)became afraid that they might be put to death  
(2-17)likewise, and fled away out of Scotland; for, notwithstanding  
(2-17)all the excuses which he could make,  
(2-17)they still believed that Macbeth had killed their  
(Tg2-17)father. Donaldbane fled into some distant islands,  
(2-17)but Malcolm, the eldest son of Duncan, went to  
(2-17)the Court of England, where he begged for assistance

(2-17)from the English King, to place him on the  
(2-17)throne of Scotland as his father's successor.  
(Tg2-17)In the mean time, Macbeth took possession of  
(2-17)the kingdom of Scotland, and thus all his wicked  
(Tg2-17)wishes seemed to be fulfilled. But he was not  
(Tg2-17)happy. He began to reflect how wicked he had  
(2-17)been in killing his friend and benefactor, and how  
(2-17)some other person, as ambitious as he was himself  
(Tg2-17)might do the same thing to him. He remembered,  
(2-17)too, that the old women had said, that the children  
(2-17)of Banquo should succeed to the throne after his  
(2-17)death, and therefore he concluded that Banquo  
(2-17)might be tempted to conspire against him, as all  
(Tg2-17)had himself done against King Duncan. The

[TG2-18, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 18]

(2-18)wicked always think other people are as bad  
(Tg2-18)as themselves. In order to prevent this supposed  
(2-18)danger, Macbeth hired ruffians to watch in a wood,  
(2-18)where Banquo and his son Fleance sometimes  
(2-18)used to walk in the evening, with instructions to  
(Tg2-18)attack them, and kill both father and son. The  
(2-18)villains did as they were ordered by Macbeth;  
(2-18)but while they were killing Banquo, the boy  
(2-18)Fleance made his escape from their wicked hands,  
(Tg2-18)and fled from Scotland into Wales. And it is  
(2-18)said that long afterwards, his children came to  
(2-18)possess the Scottish crown.  
(Tg2-18)Macbeth was not the more happy that he had  
(Tg2-18)slain his brave friend and cousin, Banquo. He  
(2-18)knew that men began to suspect the wicked deeds  
(2-18)which he had done, and he was constantly afraid  
(2-18)that some one would put him to death as he had  
(2-18)done his old sovereign, or that Malcolm would  
(2-18)obtain assistance from the King of England, and

(2-18)come to make war against him, and take from him  
(Tg2-18)the Scottish kingdom. So, in this great perplexity  
(2-18)of mind, he thought he would go to the old women,  
(2-18)whose words had first put into his mind the desire  
(Tg2-18)of becoming a king. It is to be supposed that he  
(2-18)offered them presents, and that they were cunning  
(2-18)enough to study how to give him some answer,  
(2-18)which should make him continue in the belief that  
(2-18)they could prophesy what was to happen in future  
(Tg2-18)times. So they answered to him that he should  
(2-18)not be conquered, or lose the crown of Scotland,  
(2-18)until a great forest, called Birnam Wood, should

[TG2-19, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 19]

(2-19)come to attack a strong castle situated on a high  
(2-19)hill called Dunsinane, in which castle Macbeth  
(Tg2-19)commonly resided. Now, the hill of Dunsinane is  
(2-19)upon the one side of a great valley, and the forest  
(Tg2-19)of Birnam is upon the other. There are twelve  
(2-19)miles' distance betwixt them; and besides that,  
(2-19)Macbeth thought it was impossible that the trees  
(Tg2-19)could ever come to the assault of the castle. He  
(2-19)therefore resolved to fortify his castle on the Hill  
(2-19)of Dunsinane very strongly, as being a place in  
(Tg2-19)which he would always be sure to be safe. For  
(2-19)this purpose he caused all his great nobility and  
(2-19)Thanes to send in stones, and wood, and other  
(2-19)things wanted in building, and to drag them with  
(2-19)oxen up to the top of the steep hill where he was  
(2-19)building the castle.  
(Tg2-19)Now, among other nobles who were obliged to  
(2-19)send oxen, and horses, and materials to this laborious  
(2-19)work, was one called Macduff, the Thane of  
(Tg2-19)Fife. Macbeth was afraid of this Thane, for he  
(2-19)was very powerful, and was accounted both brave



(2-19)and wise; and Macbeth thought he would most  
(2-19)probably join with Prince Malcolm, if ever he  
(Tg2-19)should come from England with an army. The  
(2-19)King, therefore had a private hatred against the  
(2-19)Thane of Fife, which he kept concealed from all  
(2-19)men, until he should have some opportunity of  
(2-19)putting him to death, as he had done Duncan and  
(Tg2-19)Banquo. Macduff, on his part, kept upon his  
(2-19)guard and went to the King's court as seldom as  
(2-19)he could, thinking himself never safe unless while

[TG2-20, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 20]

(2-20)in his own castle of Kennoway, which is on the  
(2-20)coast of Fife, near to the mouth of the Frith of  
(2-20)Forth.  
(Tg2-20)It happened, however, that the King had summoned  
(2-20)several of his nobles, and Macduff, the  
(2-20)Thane of Fife, amongst others, to attend him at  
(2-20)his new castle of Dunsinane; and they were all  
(Tg2-20)obliged to come -- none dared stay behind. Now,  
(2-20)the King was to give the nobles a great entertainment,  
(Tg2-20)and preparations were made for it. In the  
(2-20)mean time, Macbeth rode out with a few attendants,  
(2-20)to see the oxen drag the wood and the stones  
(2-20)up the hill, for enlarging and strengthening the  
(Tg2-20)castle. So they saw most of the oxen trudging up  
(2-20)the hill with great difficulty (for the ascent is very  
(2-20)steep), and the burthens were heavy, and the  
(Tg2-20)weather was extremely hot. At length Macbeth  
(2-20)saw a pair of oxen so tired that they could go no  
(2-20)farther up the hill, but fell down under their load.  
(Tg2-20)Then the King was very angry, and demanded to  
(2-20)know who it was among his Thanes that had sent  
(2-20)oxen so weak and so unfit for labour, when he had  
(Tg2-20)so much work for them to do. Some one replied

(2-20)that the oxen belonged to Macduff, the Thane of  
(Tg2-20)Fife. "Then," said the King, in great anger,  
(2-20)"since the Thane of Fife sends such worthless  
(2-20)cattle as these to do my labour, I will put his own  
(2-20)neck into the yoke, and make him drag the burdens  
(2-20)himself."

(Tg2-20)There was a friend of Macduff who heard these  
(2-20)angry expressions of the King, and hastened to  
(2-20)communicate them to the Thane of Fife , who was

[TG2-21, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 21]

(2-21)walking in the hall of the King's castle while  
(Tg2-21)dinner was preparing. The instant that Macduff  
(2-21)heard what the King had said, he knew he had no  
(2-21)time to lose in making his escape; for whenever  
(2-21)Macbeth threatened to do mischief to any one, he  
(2-21)was sure to keep his word.

(Tg2-21)So Macduff snatched up from the table a loaf of  
(2-21)bread, called for his horses and his servants, and  
(2-21)was galloping back to his own province of Fife,  
(2-21)before Macbeth and the rest of the nobility were  
(Tg2-21)returned to the castle. The first question which  
(2-21)the King asked was, what had become of Macduff?  
(2-21)and being informed that he had fled from Dunsinane,  
(2-21)he ordered a body of his guards to attend  
(2-21)him, and mounted on horseback himself to pursue  
(2-21)the Thane, with the purpose of putting him to  
(2-21)death.

(Tg2-21)Macduff, in the mean time, fled as fast as horses'  
(2-21)feet could carry him; but he was so ill provided  
(2-21)with money for his expenses, that, when he came to  
(2-21)the great ferry over the river Tay, he had nothing  
(2-21)to give to the boatmen who took him across,  
(2-21)excepting the loaf of bread which he had taken  
(Tg2-21)from the King's table. The place was called, for

(2-21)a long time afterwards, the Ferry of the Loaf.  
(Tg2-21)When Macduff got into his province of Fife,  
(2-21)which is on the other side of the Tay, he rode on  
(2-21)faster than before, towards his own castle of Kennoway,  
(2-21)which, as I told you, stands close by the  
(2-21)seaside; and when he reached it, the King and  
(Tg2-21)his guards were not far behind him. Macduff  
(2-21)ordered his wife to shut the gates of the castle,

[TG2-22, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 22]

(2-22)draw up the drawbridge, and on no account to  
(2-22)permit the King or any of his soldiers to enter. In  
(2-22)the mean time, he went to the small harbour  
(2-22)belonging to the castle, and caused a ship which  
(2-22)was lying there to be fitted out for sea in all haste,  
(2-22)and got on board himself, in order to escape from  
(2-22)Macbeth.  
(Tg2-22)In the mean time, Macbeth summoned the lady  
(2-22)to surrender the castle, and to deliver up her  
(Tg2-22)husband. But Lady Macduff, who was a wise  
(2-22)and a brave woman, made many excuses and  
(2-22)delays, until she knew that her husband was safely  
(2-22)on board the ship, and had sailed from the harbour.  
(Tg2-22)Then she spoke boldly from the wall of the castle  
(2-22)to the King, who was standing before the gate still  
(2-22)demanding entrance, with many threats of what  
(2-22)he would do if Macduff was not given up to him.  
(Tg2-22)"Do you see," she said, "yon white sail upon  
(Tg2-22)the sea? Yonder goes Macduff to the Court of  
(Tg2-22)England. You will never see him again, till he  
(2-22)comes back with young Prince Malcolm, to pull  
(2-22)you down from the throne, and to put you to death.  
(Tg2-22)You will never be able to put your yoke, as you  
(2-22)threatened, on the Thane of Fife's neck."  
(Tg2-22)Some say that Macbeth was so much incensed

(2-22)at this bold answer, that he and his guards attacked  
(2-22)the castle and took it, killing the brave lady and  
(Tg2-22)all whom they found there. But others say, and  
(2-22)I believe more truly, that the King, seeing that  
(2-22)the fortress of Kennoway was very strong, and  
(2-22)that Macduff had escaped from him, and was embarked  
(2-22)for England, departed back to Dunsinane

[TG2-23, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 23]

(Tg2-23)without attempting to take the castle. The ruins  
(2-23)are still to be seen, and are called the Thane's  
(2-23)Castle.

(Tg2-23)There reigned at that time in England a very  
(Tg2-23)good King, called Edward the Confessor. I told  
(2-23)you that Prince Malcolm, the son of Duncan, was  
(2-23)at his court, soliciting assistance to recover the  
(Tg2-23)Scottish throne. The arrival of Macduff greatly  
(2-23)aided the success of his petition; for the English  
(2-23)King knew that Macduff was a brave and a wise  
(Tg2-23)man. As he assured Edward that the Scots were  
(2-23)tired of the cruel Macbeth, and would join Prince  
(2-23)Malcolm if he were to return to his country at the  
(2-23)head of an army, the King ordered a great warrior,  
(2-23)called Siward, Earl of Northumberland, to enter  
(2-23)Scotland with a large force [A.D. 1054 ], and  
(2-23)assist Prince Malcolm in the recovery of his  
(2-23)father's crown.

(Tg2-23)Then it happened just as Macduff had said ; for  
(2-23)the Scottish Thanes and nobles would not fight for  
(2-23)Macbeth, but joined Prince Malcolm and Macduff  
(2-23)against him; so that at length he shut himself up  
(2-23)in his castle of Dunsinane, where he thought himself  
(2-23)safe, according to the old women's prophecy,  
(Tg2-23)until Birnam Wood should come against him. He  
(2-23)boasted of this to his followers, and encouraged

(2-23)them to make a valiant defence, assuring them of

[TG2-24, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 2, p. 24]

(Tg2-24)certain victory. At this time Malcolm and Macduff  
(2-24)were come as far as Birnam Wood, and lay  
(Tg2-24)encamped there with their army. The next morning,  
(2-24)when they were to march across the broad  
(2-24)valley to attack the castle of Dunsinane, Macduff  
(2-24)advised that every soldier should cut down a bough  
(2-24)of a tree and carry it in his hand, that the enemy  
(2-24)might not be able to see how many men were  
(2-24)coming against them.  
(Tg2-24)Now, the sentinel who stood on Macbeth's castlewall,  
(2-24)when he saw all these branches, which the  
(2-24)soldiers of Prince Malcolm carried, ran to the  
(2-24)King, and informed him that the wood of Birnam  
(Tg2-24)was moving towards the castle of Dunsinane. The  
(2-24)King at first called him a liar, and threatened to  
(2-24)put him to death; but when he looked from the  
(2-24)walls himself, and saw the appearance of a forest  
(2-24)approaching from Birnam, he knew the hour of his  
(Tg2-24)destruction was come. His followers, too, began  
(2-24)to be disheartened and to fly from the castle, seeing  
(2-24)their master had lost all hopes.  
(Tg2-24)Macbeth, however, recollected his own bravery,  
(2-24)and sallied desperately out at the head of the few  
(Tg2-24)followers who remained faithful to him. He was  
(2-24)killed, after a furious resistance, fighting hand to  
(2-24)hand with Macduff in the thick of the battle.  
(Tg2-24)Prince Malcolm mounted the throne of Scotland,  
(Tg2-24)and reigned long and prosperously. He rewarded  
(2-24)Macduff by declaring that his descendants should  
(2-24)lead the vanguard of the Scottish army in battle,  
(2-24)and place the crown on the King's head at the  
(Tg2-24)ceremony of coronation. King Malcolm also

[TG2-25, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 2, p. 25]

(2-25)created the thanes of Scotland earls, after the  
(2-25)title of dignity adopted in the court of England.

[TG3-27, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 3, p. 27]

(Tg3-27)The conduct of Edward the Confessor, King of  
(3-27)England, in the story of Macbeth, was very generous  
(Tg3-27)and noble. He sent a large army and his  
(3-27)General Siward to assist in dethroning the tyrant  
(3-27)Macbeth, and placing Malcolm, the son of the murdered  
(3-27)King Duncan, upon the throne; and we  
(3-27)have seen how, with the assistance of Macduff,  
(Tg3-27)they fortunately succeeded. But King Edward  
(3-27)never thought of taking any part of Scotland to  
(3-27)himself in the confusion occasioned by the invasion;  
(3-27)for he was a good man, and was not ambitious  
(3-27)or covetous of what did not belong to him.  
(Tg3-27)It had been well both for England and Scotland  
(3-27)that there had been more such good and moderate  
(3-27)kings, as it would have prevented many great  
(3-27)quarrels, long wars, and terrible bloodshed.  
(Tg3-27)But good King Edward the Confessor did not  
(3-27)leave any children to succeed him on the throne.  
(Tg3-27)He was succeeded by a king called Harold, who  
(3-27)was the last monarch of the Saxon race that ever  
(Tg3-27)reigned in England. The Saxons, you recollect,  
(3-27)had conquered the Britons, and now there came a

[TG3-28, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 3, p. 28]

(Tg3-28)new enemy to attack the Saxons. These were the  
(3-28)Normans, a people who came from France, but  
(Tg3-28)were not originally Frenchmen. Their forefathers

(3-28)were a colony of those Northern pirates, whom we  
(3-28)mentioned before as plundering all the sea-coasts  
(Tg3-28)which promised them any booty. They were frequently  
(3-28)called Northmen or Normans, as they came  
(3-28)from Denmark, Sweden, Norway, and the other  
(Tg3-28)Northern regions. A large body of them landed  
(3-28)on the north part of France, and compelled the  
(3-28)King of that country to yield up to them the possession  
(3-28)of a large territory, or province, called  
(3-28)Neustria, the name of which was changed to Normandy,  
(3-28)when it became the property of these  
(Tg3-28)Northmen, or Normans. This province was  
(3-28)governed by the Norman chief who was called a  
(Tg3-28)duke, from a Latin word signifying a general. He  
(3-28)exercised all the powers of a king within his  
(3-28)dominion of Normandy, but, in consideration of his  
(3-28)being possessed of a part of the territories of  
(3-28)France, he acknowledged the king of that country  
(3-28)for his sovereign, and became what was called his  
(3-28)vassal.  
(Tg3-28)This connexion of a king as sovereign, with his  
(3-28)princes and great men as vassals, must be attended  
(3-28)to and understood, in order that you may comprehend  
(Tg3-28)the history which follows. A great king, or  
(3-28)sovereign prince, gave large provinces, or grants  
(3-28)of land, to his dukes, earls, and noblemen; and  
(3-28)each of these possessed nearly as much power,  
(3-28)within his own district, as the king did in the rest  
(Tg3-28)of his dominions. But then the vassal, whether

[TG3-29, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 3, p. 29]

(3-29)duke, earl, or lord, or whatever he was, was  
(3-29)obliged to come with a certain number of men to  
(3-29)assist the sovereign, when he was engaged in war;  
(3-29)and in time of peace, he was bound to attend on his

(3-29)court when summoned, and do homage to him ---  
(3-29)that is, acknowledge that he was his master and  
(Tg3-29)liege lord. In like manner, the vassals of the crown,  
(3-29)as they were called, divided the lands which the  
(3-29)king had given them into estates, which they bestowed  
(3-29)on knights and gentlemen, whom they  
(3-29)thought fitted to follow them in war, and to attend  
(3-29)them in peace; for they, too, held courts, and administered  
(Tg3-29)justice, each in his own province. Then  
(3-29)the knights and gentlemen, who had these estates  
(3-29)from the great nobles, distributed the property  
(3-29)among an inferior class of proprietors, some of  
(3-29)whom cultivated the land themselves, and others  
(3-29)by means of husbandmen and peasants, who were  
(3-29)treated as a sort of slaves, being bought and sold  
(3-29)like brute beasts, along with the farms which they  
(3-29)laboured.  
(Tg3-29)Thus, when a great king, like that of France or  
(3-29)England, went to war, he summoned all his crown  
(3-29)vassals to attend him, with the number of armed  
(3-29)men corresponding to his Fief, as it was called; that  
(3-29)is, the territory which had been granted to each of  
(Tg3-29)them. The prince, duke, or earl, in order to obey  
(3-29)the summons, called upon all the gentlemen to  
(3-29)whom he had given estates, to attend his standard  
(Tg3-29)with their followers in arms. The gentlemen, in  
(3-29)their turn, called on the franklins, a lower order of  
(3-29)gentry, and upon the peasants; and thus the whole

[TG3-30, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 3, p.30]

(3-30)force of the kingdom was assembled in one array.  
(Tg3-30)This system of holding lands for military service,  
(3-30)that is, for fighting for the sovereign when called  
(Tg3-30)upon, was called the FEUDAL SYSTEM. It was  
(3-30)general throughout all Europe for a great many



(3-30)ages.

(Tg3-30)But as many of these great crown vassals, as, for  
(3-30)example, the Dukes of Normandy, became extremely  
(3-30)powerful, they were in the custom of  
(3-30)making peace and war at their own hand, without  
(3-30)the knowledge or consent of the King of France  
(Tg3-30)their sovereign. In the same manner, the vassals  
(3-30)of those great dukes and princes frequently made  
(3-30)war on each other, for war was the business of  
(3-30)every one; while the poor bondsman, who cultivated  
(3-30)the ground, was subjected to the greatest hardships,  
(3-30)and plundered and ill-treated by whichever  
(Tg3-30)side had the better. The nobles and gentlemen  
(3-30)fought on horseback, arrayed in armour of steel,  
(3-30)richly ornamented with gold and silver, and were  
(Tg3-30)called knights or squires. They used long lances,  
(3-30)with which they rode fiercely against each other,  
(3-30)and heavy swords, or clubs or maces, to fight hand  
(3-30)to hand, when the lance was broken. Inferior persons  
(3-30)fought on foot, and were armed with bows and  
(3-30)arrows, which, according to their form, were called  
(3-30)long-bows, or cross-bows, and served to kill men at  
(3-30)a distance, instead of guns and cannon, which were  
(Tg3-30)not then invented. The poor husbandmen were  
(3-30)obliged to come to the field of battle with such  
(3-30)arms as they had: and it was no uncommon thing  
(3-30)to see a few of these knights and squires ride over

[TG3-31, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 3, p. 31]

(3-31)and put to flight many hundreds of them; for the  
(3-31)gentry were clothed in complete armour, so that  
(3-31)they could receive little hurt, and the poor peasants  
(Tg3-31)had scarce clothes sufficient to cover them.  
(Tg3-31)You may see coats of the ancient armour preserved  
(3-31)in the Tower of London and elsewhere, as matters

(3-31)of curiosity.

(Tg3-31)It was not a very happy time this, when there  
(3-31)was scarcely any law, but the strong took every  
(3-31)thing from the weak at their pleasure; for as almost  
(3-31)all the inhabitants of the country were obliged  
(3-31)to be soldiers, it naturally followed that they were  
(3-31)engaged in continual fighting.

(Tg3-31)The great crown-vassals, in particular, made  
(3-31)constant war upon one another, and sometimes  
(3-31)upon the sovereign himself, though to do so was to  
(3-31)incur the forfeiture of their fiefs, or the territories  
(3-31)which he had bestowed upon them, and which he  
(3-31)was enabled by law to recall when they became his  
(3-31)enemies. But they took the opportunity, when they  
(3-31)were tolerably certain that their prince would not  
(Tg3-31)have strength sufficient to punish them. In short,  
(3-31)no one could maintain his right longer than he had  
(3-31)the power of defending it; and this induced the  
(3-31)more poor and helpless to throw themselves under  
(3-31)the protection of the brave and powerful -- acknowledge  
(3-31)themselves their vassals and subjects, and do  
(3-31)homage to them, in order that they might obtain  
(3-31)their safeguard and patronage.

(Tg3-31)While things were in this state, William, the  
(3-31)Duke of Normandy, and the leader of that valiant  
(3-31)people whose ancestors had conquered that province,

[TG3-32, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 3, p. 32]

(3-32)began, upon the death of good King Edward  
(3-32)the Confessor, to consider the time as favourable  
(3-32)for an attempt to conquer the wealthy kingdom of  
(Tg3-32)England. He pretended King Edward had named  
(3-32)him his heir; but his surest reliance was upon a  
(3-32)strong army of his brave Normans, to whom were  
(3-32)joined many knights and squires from distant countries,

(3-32)who hoped, by assisting this Duke William  
(3-32)in his proposed conquest, to obtain from him good  
(3-32)English estates, under the regulations which I have  
(3-32)described.

(Tg3-32)The Duke of Normandy landed [on the 28th of  
(3-32)September, at Pevensey] in Sussex, in the year  
(3-32)one thousand and sixty-six, after the birth of our  
(3-32)blessed Saviour. He had an army of sixty thousand  
(3-32)chosen men, for accomplishing his bold enterprise.  
(Tg3-32)Many gallant knights, who were not his subjects,  
(3-32)joined him, in the hope of obtaining fame in arms,  
(3-32)and estates, if his enterprise should prosper. Harold,  
(3-32)who had succeeded Edward the Confessor on  
(3-32)the throne of England, had been just engaged in  
(3-32)repelling an attack upon England by the Norwegians,  
(3-32)and was now called upon to oppose this new  
(Tg3-32)and more formidable invasion. He was, therefore,  
(3-32)taken at considerable disadvantage.

(Tg3-32)The armies of England and Normandy engaged  
(3-32)in a desperate battle near Hastings, and the victory  
(Tg3-32)was long obstinately contested. The Normans had  
(3-32)a great advantage, from having amongst them large  
(3-32)bands of archers, who used the long-bow, and  
(3-32)greatly annoyed the English, who had but few  
(3-32)bow-men to oppose them, and only short darts

[TG3-33, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 3, p.33]

(3-33)called javelins, which they threw from their hands,  
(Tg3-33)and which could do little hurt at a distance. Yet  
(3-33)the victory remained doubtful, though the battle  
(3-33)had lasted from nine in the morning until the close  
(3-33)of the day, when an arrow pierced through King  
(Tg3-33)Harold's head, and he fell dead on the spot. The  
(3-33)English then retreated from the field, and Duke  
(3-33)William used his advantage with so much skill and

(3-33)dexterity, that he made himself master of all England,  
(3-33)and reigned there under the title of William  
(Tg3-33)the Conqueror. He divided great part of the rich

[TG3-34, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 3, p. 34]

(3-34)country of England among his Norman followers,  
(3-34)who held lands of him for military service, according  
(3-34)to the rules of the feudal system, of which I  
(Tg3-34)gave you some account. The Anglo-Saxons, you  
(3-34)may well suppose, were angry at this, and attempted  
(3-34)several times to rise against King William, and  
(Tg3-34)drive him and his soldiers back to Normandy. But  
(3-34)they were always defeated; and so King William  
(3-34)became more severe towards these Anglo-Saxons,  
(3-34)and took away their lands, and their high rank and  
(3-34)appointments, until he left scarce any of them in  
(3-34)possession of great estates, or offices of rank, but  
(3-34)put his Normans above them, as masters, in every  
(3-34)situation.

(Tg3-34)Thus the Saxons who had conquered the British  
(3-34)as you have before read, were in their turn conquered  
(3-34)by the Normans, deprived of their property,  
(3-34)and reduced to be the servants of those proud  
(Tg3-34)foreigners. To this day, though several of the  
(3-34)ancient nobility of England claim to be descended  
(3-34)from the Normans, there is scarcely a nobleman,  
(3-34)and very few of the gentry, who can show that they  
(3-34)are descended of the Saxon blood; William the  
(3-34)Conqueror took so much care to deprive the conquered  
(3-34)people of all power and importance.

(Tg3-34)It must have been a sad state of matters in England,  
(3-34)when the Normans were turning the Saxons  
(3-34)out of their estates and habitations, and degrading  
(Tg3-34)them from being freemen into slaves. But good  
(3-34)came out of it in the end; for these Normans were

(3-34)not only one of the bravest people that ever lived,  
(3-34)but they were possessed of more learning and skill

[TG3-35, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 3, p. 35]

(Tg3-35)in the arts than the Saxons. They brought with  
(3-35)them the art of building large and beautiful castles  
(3-35)and churches composed of stone, whereas the Saxons  
(Tg3-35)had only miserable houses made of wood. The  
(3-35)Normans introduced the use of the long-bow also,  
(3-35)which became so general, that the English were  
(3-35)accounted the best archers in the world, and gained  
(3-35)many battles by their superiority in that military  
(Tg3-35)art. Besides these advantages, the Normans lived  
(3-35)in a more civilized manner than the Saxons, and  
(3-35)observed among each other the rules of civility and  
(3-35)good-breeding, of which the Saxons were ignorant.  
(Tg3-35)The Norman barons were also great friends to  
(3-35)national liberty, and would not allow their kings to  
(3-35)do any thing contrary to their privileges, but resisted  
(3-35)them whenever they attempted any thing  
(3-35)beyond the power which was given to them by law.  
(Tg3-35)Schools were set up in various places by the Norman  
(Tg3-35)princes, and learning was encouraged. Large  
(3-35)towns were founded in different places of the kingdom,  
(3-35)and received favour from the Norman kings,  
(3-35)who desired to have the assistance of the townsmen,  
(3-35)in case of any dispute with their nobility.  
(Tg3-35)Thus the Norman Conquest, though a most unhappy  
(3-35)and disastrous event at the time it took  
(3-35)place, rendered England, in the end, a more wise,  
(3-35)more civilized, and more powerful country than it  
(3-35)had been before; and you will find many such cases  
(3-35)in history, my dear child, in which, it has pleased  
(3-35)the providence of God to bring great good out of  
(3-35)what seems, at first sight, to be unmixed evil.

[TG4-36, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 4, p. 36]

(Tg4-36)THE last chapter may seem to have little to do  
(4-36)with Scottish history, yet the Norman Conquest of  
(4-36)England produced a great effect upon their neighbours.  
(Tg4-36)In the first place, a very great number of  
(4-36)the Saxons who fled from the cruelty of William  
(4-36)the Conqueror, retired into Scotland, and this had  
(4-36)a considerable effect in civilizing the southern parts  
(4-36)of that country; for if the Saxons were inferior to  
(4-36)the Normans in arts and in learning, they were, on  
(4-36)the other hand, much superior to the Scots, who  
(4-36)were a rude and very ignorant people.  
(Tg4-36)These exiles were headed and accompanied by  
(4-36)what remained of the Saxon royal family, and  
(4-36)particularly by a young prince named Edgar  
(4-36)Etheling, who was a near kinsman of Edward the  
(4-36)Confessor, and the heir of his throne, but dispossessed  
(4-36)by the Norman conquerors.

[TG4-37, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 4, p. 37]

(Tg4-37)This prince brought with him to Scotland two  
(Tg4-37)sisters, named Margaret bad Christian. They  
(4-37)were received with much kindness by Malcolm  
(4-37)III, called Canmore (or Great Head), who  
(4-37)remembered the assistance which he had received  
(4-37)from Edward the Confessor, and felt himself  
(4-37)obliged to behave generously towards his family in  
(Tg4-37)their misfortunes. He himself married the Princess  
(4-37)Margaret [1068], and made her the Queen  
(Tg4-37)of Scotland. She was an excellent woman, and of  
(4-37)such a gentle, amiable disposition, that she often  
(4-37)prevailed upon her husband, who was a fierce,  
(4-37)passionate man, to lay aside his resentment, and

(4-37)forgive those who had offended him.  
(Tg4-37)When Malcolm King of Scotland was thus  
(4-37)connected with the Saxon royal family of England,  
(4-37)he began to think of chasing away the Normans,  
(4-37)and of restoring Edgar Etheling to the English  
(Tg4-37)throne. This was an enterprise for which he had  
(4-37)not sufficient strength; - but he made deep and  
(4-37)bloody inroads into the northern parts of England,  
(4-37)and brought away so many captives, that they  
(4-37)were to be found for many years afterwards in  
(4-37)every Scottish village, nay, in every Scottish  
(Tg4-37)hovel. No doubt, the number of the Saxons thus  
(4-37)introduced into Scotland, tended much to improve  
(4-37)and civilize the manners of the people: for, as I  
(4-37)have already said, the Scots were inferior to the  
(4-37)Saxons in all branches of useful knowledge.  
(Tg4-37)Not only the Saxons, but afterwards a number  
(4-37)of the Normans themselves, came to settle in Scotland.  
(4-37)King William could not satisfy the whole

[TG4-38, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 4, p. 38]

(4-38)of them, and some, who were discontented, and  
(4-38)thought they could mend their fortunes, repaired  
(4-38)to the Scottish court, and were welcomed by King  
(Tg4-38)Malcolm. He was desirous to retain these brave  
(4-38)men in his service, and for that purpose, he gave  
(4-38)them great grants of land, to be held for military  
(4-38)services; and most of the Scottish nobility are of  
(Tg4-38)Norman descent. And thus the Feudal System  
(4-38)was introduced into Scotland as well as England,  
(4-38)and went on gradually gaining strength, till it  
(4-38)became the general law of the country, as indeed it  
(4-38)was that of Europe at large.  
(Tg4-38)Malcolm Canmore, thus increasing in power,  
(4-38)and obtaining reinforcements of warlike and civilized

(4-38)subjects, began greatly to enlarge his dominions.  
(Tg4-38)At first he had resided almost entirely in  
(4-38)the province of Fife, and at the town of Dunfermline,  
(4-38)where there are still the ruins of a small  
(Tg4-38)tower which served him for a palace. But as he  
(4-38)found his power increase, he ventured across the  
(4-38)frith of Forth, and took possession of Edinburgh  
(4-38)and the surrounding country, which had hitherto

[TG4-39, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 4, p. 39]

(Tg4-39)been accounted part of England. The great  
(4-39)strength of the castle of Edinburgh, situated upon  
(4-39)a lofty rock, led him to choose that town frequently  
(4-39)for his residence, so that in time it became the  
(4-39)metropolis or chief city of Scotland.  
(Tg4-39)This King Malcolm was a brave and wise  
(Tg4-39)prince, though without education. He often  
(4-39)made war upon King William the Conqueror of  
(4-39)England, and upon his son and successor William,  
(4-39)who, from his complexion, was called William  
(Tg4-39)Rufus, that is, Red William. Malcolm was sometimes  
(4-39)beaten in these wars, but he was more frequently  
(4-39)successful; and not only made a complete  
(4-39)conquest of Lothian, but threatened also to possess  
(4-39)himself of the great English province of Northumberland,  
(Tg4-39)which he frequently invaded. In Cumberland,  
(Tg4-39)also, he held many possessions. But in  
(4-39)the year 1093, having assembled a large army for  
(4-39)the purpose, Malcolm besieged the border fortress

[TG4-40, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 4, p. 40]

(4-40)of Alnwick, where he was unexpectedly attacked by  
(4-40)a great Norman baron, called Robert de Moubray,  
(Tg4-40)who defeated the Scottish army completely. Malcolm



(4-40)Canmore was killed in the action, and his  
 (4-40)eldest son fell by his side.  
 (Tg4-40)There is a silly story told of Malcolm being  
 (4-40)killed by one of the garrison of Alnwick, who,  
 (4-40)pretending to surrender the keys of the castle on  
 (4-40)the point of a spear, thrust the lance-point into the  
 (4-40)eye of the King of Scotland, and so killed him.  
 (Tg4-40)They pretend that this soldier took the name of  
 (4-40)Pierce-eye, and that the great family of the Percies  
 (4-40)of Northumberland were descended from him.  
 (Tg4-40)But this is all a fable. The Percies are descended  
 (4-40)from a great Norman baron, who came over with  
 (4-40)William, and who took his name from his castle  
 (4-40)and estate in Normandy.  
 (Tg4-40)Queen Margaret of Scotland was extremely ill  
 (4-40)at the time her husband marched against England.  
 (Tg4-40)When she was lying on her death-bed, she saw  
 (4-40)her second son, who had escaped from the fatal  
 (Tg4-40)battle, approach her bed. "How fares it," said the  
 (4-40)expiring Queen, "with your father, and with your  
 (Tg4-40)brother Edward?"-- The young man stood silent.  
 (Tg4-40)-- "I conjure you," she added, "by the Holy  
 (4-40)Cross, and by the duty you owe me, to tell me the  
 (4-40)truth."  
 (Tg4-40)"Your husband and your son are both slain."  
 (Tg4-40)"The will of God be done!" answered the  
 (4-40)Queen, and expired, with expressions of devout  
 (Tg4-40)resignation to the pleasure of Heaven. This good  
 (4-40)princess was esteemed a Saint by those of the

[TG4-41, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 4. p. 41]

(4-41)period in which she lived, and was called Saint  
 Margaret(Tg4-41).  
 (Tg4-41)After the death of Malcolm Canmore, the Scottish  
 (4-41)crown was occupied successively by three

(4-41)princes of little power or talent, who seized on the  
(4-41)supreme authority because the children of the  
(Tg4-41)deceased sovereign were under age. After these  
(4-41)had ended their short reigns, the sons of Malcolm  
(4-41)came to the throne in succession, by name Edgar,  
(4-41)-- Alexander, called the First,-- and David, also  
(Tg4-41)called the First of that name. These two last  
(Tg4-41)princes were men of great ability. David, in particular,  
(4-41)was a wise, religious, and powerful prince.  
(Tg4-41)He had many furious wars with England, and  
(4-41)made dreadful incursions into the neighbouring  
(4-41)provinces, which were the more easy that the  
(4-41)country of England was then disunited by civil  
(Tg4-41)war. The cause was this:-  
(4-41)Henry I., the youngest son of William the Conqueror,  
(4-41)had died, leaving only one child, a daughter,  
(4-41)named Matilda, or Maud, whose mother was a  
(4-41)daughter of Malcolm Canmore, and a sister, consequently,  
(Tg4-41)of David, King of Scotland. During  
(4-41)Henry's life, all the English barons had agreed that  
(4-41)his daughter should succeed him in the throne.  
(Tg4-41)Upon the King's death [1135], however, Stephen,  
(4-41)Earl of Mortagne, a great Norman lord, usurped  
(4-41)the government, to the exclusion of the Empress  
(4-41)Matilda (so called because she had married the  
(4-41)Emperor of Germany), and caused himself to be  
(Tg4-41)proclaimed King. Many of the English barons  
(4-41)took arms against Stephen, with the purpose of

[TG4-42, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 4, p. 42]

(4-42)doing justice to the Empress Maud, and her son  
(Tg4-42)Henry. It was natural that David, King of Scotland,  
(4-42)should join the party which favoured his niece.  
(Tg4-42)But he also took the opportunity to attempt an  
(4-42)extension of his own dominions.

(Tg4-42)He assembled from the different provinces of  
(4-42)Scotland a large but ill-disciplined army, consisting  
(4-42)of troops of different nations and languages, who  
(4-42)had only one common principle -- the love of plunder.  
(Tg4-42)There were Normans, and Germans, and  
(4-42)English; there were the Danes of Northumberland,  
(4-42)and the British of Cumberland, and of the valley  
(4-42)of Clyde; there were the men of Teviotdale, who  
(4-42)were chiefly Britons, and those of Lothian, who  
(4-42)were Saxons; and there were also the people of  
(Tg4-42)Galloway. These last were almost a separate and  
(4-42)independent people, of peculiarly wild and ferocious  
(Tg4-42)habits. Some historians say they came of  
(4-42)the race of the ancient Picts; some call them the  
(4-42)wild Scots of Galloway; all agree that they were  
(4-42)a fierce, ungovernable race of men, who fought half  
(4-42)naked, and committed great cruelty upon the inhabitants  
(Tg4-42)of the invaded country. These men of Galloway  
(Tg4-42)were commanded by several chiefs. Amongst  
(4-42)others, was a chief leader called William MacDonochy,  
(4-42)that is, William the son of Duncan.  
(Tg4-42)The barons of the northern parts of England,  
(4-42)hearing that the King of Scotland was advancing  
(4-42)at the head of this formidable army, resolved to  
(Tg4-42)assemble their forces to give him battle. Thurstan,  
(4-42)the Archbishop of York, joined with them.  
(Tg4-42)They hoisted a banner, which they called that of

[TG4-43, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 4, p. 43]

(4-43)Saint Peter, upon a carriage mounted on wheels;  
(4-43)from which circumstance the war took the name of  
(Tg4-43)the Battle of the Standard. The two armies came  
(4-43)in sight of each other at Cuton Moor, near Northallerton,  
(4-43)and prepared to fight on the next  
(Tg4-43)morning. It was a contest of great importance;

(4-43)for if David should prove able to defeat the army  
(4-43)now opposed to him, there seemed little to prevent  
(4-43)him from conquering England as far as the Humber.  
(Tg4-43)There was in the English army an aged baron  
(4-43)named Robert Bruce, father of a race afterwards  
(Tg4-43)very famous in Scottish history. He had great  
(Tg4-43)estates both in England and Scotland. He loved  
(4-43)King David, because he had been formerly his  
(4-43)companion in arms, and he resolved to make an  
(4-43)effort to preserve peace.  
(Tg4-43)He went, therefore' to the Scottish camp, and  
(4-43)endeavoured to persuade King David to retreat,  
(4-43)and to make peace -- remonstrated with him on the  
(4-43)excesses which his army had committed -- exaggerated  
(4-43)the danger in which he was placed; and  
(4-43)finally burst into tears when he declared his own  
(4-43)purpose of relinquishing his allegiance to the King  
(4-43)of Scotland, and fighting against him in battle, if  
(Tg4-43)he persevered in his invasion. The King shed  
(4-43)tears at this exhortation; but William MacDonochy

[TG4-44, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 4, p. 44]

(Tg4-44)exclaimed, " Bruce, thou art a false traitor!"  
(Tg4-44)Bruce, incensed at this insult, left the camp of the  
(4-44)Scots, renouncing for ever all obedience to David,  
(4-44)and giving up the lands he held of him in Scotland.  
(Tg4-44)A dispute arose in the Scottish council of war.  
(Tg4-44)The Galloway men, who had gained a considerable  
(4-44)battle in their advance into England, were  
(4-44)intoxicated with their own success, and demanded  
(4-44)peremptorily that they should lead the van in the  
(Tg4-44)battle of the next day. King David would fain  
(Tg4-44)have eluded the request. He had more confidence  
(4-44)in the disciplined valour of the men-at-arms in his  
(4-44)service, than in those brave, but tumultuous barbarians.-

(Tg4-44)A chief, called Malise, Earl of Strathearn,  
(Tg4-44)saw and was angry at David's hesitation. "Why  
(4-44)so much confidence in a plate of steel, or in rings  
(Tg4-44)of iron?" said he. "I who wear no armour, will  
(4-44)go as far to-morrow with a bare breast, as any one  
(4-44)who wears a cuirass."  
(Tg4-44)"Rude earl," said Allan de Percy, a Norman  
(4-44)knight, "you brag of what you dare not do."  
(Tg4-44)The King interposed, and with difficulty appeased  
(Tg4-44)the dispute. He granted with reluctance  
(4-44)the request of the men of Galloway.  
(Tg4-44)In the morning, David prepared for the eventful  
(Tg4-44)contest. He drew his army up in three lines.  
(Tg4-44)The first, according to his promise, consisted of  
(4-44)the Galloway men, who were commanded by  
(4-44)William MacDonochy, and Ulrick, and Dovenald.  
(Tg4-44)The second line consisted of the men-at-arms, the  
(4-44)Borderers of Teviotdale, with the archers of Cumberland  
(Tg4-44)and Strathclyde. They were headed by

[TG4-45, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 4, p. 45]

(4-45)Henry, Prince of Scotland, a brave and amiable  
(Tg4-45)youth. The King himself, surrounded by a guard  
(4-45)consisting of English and Norman men-at-arms,  
(4-45)commanded the third body of troops, who were the  
(4-45)men of Lothian, with the Northern Scots, properly  
(4-45)so called.  
(Tg4-45)The English were formed into one compact and  
(4-45)firm battalion, in the midst of which the consecrated  
(Tg4-45)Standard was displayed. The bishop of Orkney,  
(4-45)as deputed by the aged Thurstan, mounted the  
(4-45)carriage of Saint Peter's Standard, and proclaiming  
(4-45)the war was a holy one, assured each English  
(4-45)soldier that those who fell should immediately pass  
(Tg4-45)into Paradise. The English barons grasped each

(4-45)other's hands, and swore to be victorious, or die in  
(4-45)the field.

(Tg4-45)The armies being now near each other, the men  
(4-45)of Galloway charged, with cries which resembled  
(Tg4-45)the roar of a tempest. They fought for two hours  
(4-45)with the greatest fury, and made such slaughter  
(4-45)amongst the English spearmen that they began to  
(Tg4-45)give way. But the archers supported them, and  
(4-45)showered their arrows so thick upon the Galloway  
(4-45)men, that, having no defensive armour to resist the

[TG4-46, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 4, p. 46]

(Tg4-46)shot, they became dismayed, and began to retreat.  
(Tg4-46)Prince Henry of Scotland advanced to their support  
(Tg4-46)with the men-at-arms. He rushed at full  
(4-46)gallop on that part of the English line which was  
(4-46)opposed to him, and broke through it, says a historian,  
(Tg4-46)as if it had been a spider's web. He then  
(4-46)attacked the rear of the English; the men of  
(4-46)Galloway rallied, and were about to renew the  
(4-46)contest, when an English soldier showed the head  
(4-46)of a slain man on a spear, and called out it was the  
(Tg4-46)King of Scots. The falsehood was believed by  
(4-46)the Scottish army, who fell into confusion, and  
(Tg4-46)fled. The King in vain threw his helmet from  
(4-46)his head, and rode barefaced among the soldiers, to  
(Tg4- 46)show that he still lived. The alarm and panic  
(4-46)were general, and the Scots lost a battle, which if  
(4-46)they had won, must have given them a great part  
(4-46)of England, and eventually, it may be, the whole  
(4-46)of that kingdom, distracted as it was with civil  
(Tg4-46)war. Such was the famous battle of the Standard.  
(Tg4-46)It forced David to make peace with England, but  
(4-46)it was upon the most favourable terms; since

[TG4-47, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 4, p. 47]

(4-47)excepting the fortresses of Newcastle and Bamborough,  
(4-47)the whole of Northumberland and Durham  
(4-47)was surrendered by Stephen to the Scottish monarch.  
(Tg4-47)David died in the year 1153. His brave and  
(4-47)amiable son, Henry, had died two or three years  
(Tg4-47)before his father. David was a most excellent  
(Tg4-47)sovereign. He would leave his sport of hunting,  
(4-47)or any thing in which he was engaged at the time,  
(4-47)if the meanest of his subjects came to complain of  
(4-47)any wrong which he had received; nor would he  
(4-47)resume his amusement till he had seen the poor man  
(Tg4-47)redressed. He is also much praised by historians,  
(4-47)who, in those times, were chiefly clergymen, for  
(Tg4-47)his great bounty to the church. He founded  
(4-47)bishoprics, and built and endowed many monasteries,  
(4-47)which he vested with large grants of lands  
(Tg4-47)out of the patrimony of the kings. Amongst these  
(4-47)were the Abbeyes of Holyroodhouse, near Edinburgh;  
(4-47)of Melrose, in Roxburghshire; of Dryburgh,  
(4-47)in Berwickshire; of Newbattle, in Lothian;  
(4-47)of Cambuskenneth, in Stirlingshire; also the Abbeyes  
(4-47)of Kelso and Jedburgh, and many ecclesiastical  
(4-47)houses of less note.  
(Tg4-47)It was, perhaps, as much from his munificence  
(4-47)to the church, as from his private virtues and public  
(4-47)deeds, that this monarch was received into the

[TG4-48, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 4, p. 48]

(Tg4-48)catalogue of holy persons, and called Saint David.  
(Tg4-48)One of his successors, James I., who esteemed his  
(4-48)liberality to the church rather excessive, said,  
(4-48)"St. David had proved a sore saint for the crown."  
(Tg4-48)But we ought to recollect, that the church lands

(4-48)were frequently spared, out of veneration to religion,  
(4-48)when, in those restless times, all the rest of  
(Tg4-48)the country was burned and plundered. David,  
(4-48)therefore, by putting these large estates under the  
(4-48)protection of the church, may be considered as

[TG4-49, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 4, p. 49]

(4-49)having done his best to secure them against devastation;  
(4-49)and we may observe that most of his monasteries  
(4-49)were founded in provinces peculiarly exposed  
(Tg4-49)to the dangers of war. The monks, it must be also  
(4-49)remembered, were the only persons possessed of  
(Tg4-49)the most ordinary branches of knowledge. They  
(4-49)were able to read and write; they understood  
(4-49)French and Latin; they were excellent architects,  
(4-49)as their magnificent buildings still testify; they  
(4-49)possessed the art of gardening, and of forming  
(4-49)plantations; and it appears that the children of the  
(4-49)gentry were often educated in these monasteries.  
(Tg4-49)It was, therefore, no wonder that David should  
(4-49)have desired to encourage communities so nearly  
(4-49)connected with arts and learning, although he certainly  
(4-49)carried to excess the patronage which he  
(4-49)was disposed to afford them.  
(Tg4-49)It was during the reigns of Malcolm Canmore  
(4-49)and his successors, that a dispute arose, grounded  
(4-49)upon the feudal law, which occasioned a most  
(4-49)dreadful quarrel between England and Scotland;  
(4-49)and though Master Littlejohn be no great lawyer,  
(4-49)it is necessary he should try all he can to understand  
(4-49)it, for it is a very material point in history.  
(Tg4-49)While the English were fighting among themselves,  
(4-49)and afterwards with the Normans, the  
(4-49)Scottish Kings, as I have repeatedly told you, had  
(4-49)been enlarging their dominions at the expense of



(4-49)their neighbours, and had possessed themselves, in  
(4-49)a great measure, of the northern provinces of  
(4-49)England, called Lothian, Northumberland, Cumberland,  
(Tg4-49)and Westmoreland. After much fighting

[TG4-50, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 4, p. 50]

(4-50)and disputing. it was agreed that the King of Scotland  
(4-50)should keep these English provinces, or such  
(4-50)parts of them as he possessed, not as an independent  
(4-50)sovereign, however, but as a vassal of the  
(4-50)King of England; and that he should do homage  
(4-50)for the same to the English King, and attend him  
(Tg4-50)to the field of battle when summoned. But this  
(4-50)homage, and this military service, were not paid on  
(4-50)account of the kingdom of Scotland, which had  
(4-50)never since the beginning of the world been under  
(4-50)the dominion of an English King, but was, and had  
(4-50)always remained independent, a free state, having  
(4-50)sovereigns and monarchs of its own. It may seem  
(4-50)strange to Master Littlejohn, how a King of Scotland  
(4-50)should be vassal for that part of his dominions  
(4-50)which lay in England, and an independent prince  
(4-50)when he was considered as King of Scotland; but  
(4-50)this might easily happen, according to the regulations  
(Tg4-50)of the feudal system. William the Conqueror  
(4-50)himself stood in the same situation; for he held his  
(4-50)great dukedom of Normandy, and his other possessions  
(4-50)in France, as a vassal of the King of  
(4-50)France, by whom it had been granted as a fief to  
(4-50)his ancestor Rollo; but he was, at the same time,  
(4-50)the independent Sovereign of England, of which  
(4-50)he had gained possession by his victory at Hastings.  
(Tg4-50)The English Kings, however, occasionally took  
(4-50)opportunities to insinuate, that the homage paid by  
(4-50)the Scottish Kings was not only for the provinces

(4-50)which they at this time possessed in England, but  
(Tg4-50)also for the kingdom of Scotland. The Scottish  
(4-50)Kings, on the contrary, although they rendered the

[TG4-51, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 4, p. 51]

(4-51)homage and services demanded, as holding large  
(4-51)possessions within the boundaries of England, uniformly  
(4-51)and positively refused to permit it to be said  
(4-51)or supposed, that they were subject to any claim of  
(Tg4-51)homage on account of the kingdom of Scotland.  
(Tg4-51)This was one cause of the frequent wars which took  
(4-51)place betwixt the countries, in which the Scots  
(4-51)maintained their national independence, and though  
(4-51)frequently defeated, were often victorious, and  
(4-51)threatened, upon more than one occasion, to make  
(4-51)extensive acquisitions of territory at the expense of  
(4-51)their neighbours.

(Tg4-51)At the death of David the First of Scotland, that  
(4-51)monarch was in full possession of Lothian, which  
(4-51)began to be considered as a part of Scotland, and  
(4-51)which still continues to be so; as also of Northumberland  
(4-51)and of Cumberland, with great part of  
(4-51)Westmoreland, of which his sovereignty was less  
(4-51)secure.

(Tg4-51)David was succeeded by his grandson, named  
(4-51)MALCOLM [1153, in his twelfth year], the eldest  
(4-51)son of the brave and generous Prince Henry.

(Tg4-51)Malcolm did homage to the King of England for  
(4-51)the possessions which he had in England, He was  
(4-51)so kind and gentle in his disposition, that he was  
(Tg4-51)usually called Malcolm the Maiden. Malcolm attached  
(4-51)himself particularly to Henry II, King of  
(4-51)England, who was indeed a very wise and able  
(Tg4-51)Prince. The Scottish King at one time went the  
(4-51)length of resigning to Henry the possessions he

(4-51)held in the North of England; nay, he followed  
(4-51)that prince into France, and acted as a volunteer

[TG4-52, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 4, p. 52]

(Tg4-52)in his army. This partiality to the English King  
(4-52)disgusted the Scottish nation, who were afraid of  
(4-52)the influence which Henry possessed over the mind  
(Tg4-52)of their youthful sovereign. They sent a message  
(4-52)to France to upbraid Malcolm with his folly, and  
(4-52)to declare they would not have Henry of England  
(Tg4-52)to rule over them. Malcolm returned to Scotland  
(4-52)with all speed, and reconciled himself to his subjects.  
(4-52)He died at Jedburgh in the year 1165.  
(Tg4-52)Malcolm the Maiden was succeeded by his brother  
(4-52)WILLIAM [crowned 24th December, 1165],  
(4-52)a son of Prince Henry, and grandson of the good  
(Tg4-52)King David. In his time, warriors and men of  
(4-52)consequence began to assume what are called armorial  
(4-52)bearings, which you may still see cut upon  
(4-52)seals, engraved on silver plate, and painted upon  
(Tg4-52)gentlemen's carriages. Now, Master Littlejohn, it  
(4-52)is as well to know the meaning of this ancient custom.  
(Tg4-52)In the time of which I am speaking, the warriors  
(4-52)went into battle clad in complete armour, which  
(Tg4-52)covered them from top to toe. On their head they  
(4-52)wore iron caps, called helmets, with visors, which  
(4-52)came down and protected the face, so that nothing  
(4-52)could be seen of the countenance except the eyes  
(Tg4-52)peeping through bars of iron. You have seen such  
(Tg4-52)helmets in grandpapa's entrance-hall. But as it was  
(4-52)necessary that a king, lord, or knight, should be  
(4-52)known to his followers in battle, they adopted two  
(Tg4-52)ways of distinguishing themselves. The one was  
(4-52)by a crest, that is, a figure of some kind or other,  
(4-52)as a lion, a wolf, a hand holding a sword, or some

[TG4-53, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 4, p. 53]

(4-53)such decoration, which they wore on the top of the  
(4-53)helmet, as we talk of a cock's comb being the crest  
(4-53)of that bird, But, besides this mark of distinction,  
(4-53)these warriors were accustomed to paint emblematical  
(4-53)figures, sometimes of a very whimsical kind,  
(Tg4-53)upon their shields. These emblems became general;  
(4-53)and at length no one was permitted to bear any  
(4-53)such armorial device, excepting he either had right  
(4-53)to carry it by inheritance, or that such right had  
(4-53)been conferred upon him by some sovereign prince.  
(Tg4-53)To assume the crest or armorial emblems of  
(4-53)another man was a high offence, and often mortally  
(4-53)resented; and to adopt armorial bearings for  
(4-53)yourself, was punished as a misdemeanour by a peculiar  
(4-53)court, composed of men called Heralds, who gave  
(Tg4-53)their name to the science called Heraldry. As men  
(4-53)disused the wearing of armour, the original purpose  
(4-53)of heraldry fell into neglect, but still persons of  
(4-53)ancient descent remained tenacious of the armorial  
(4-53)distinctions of their ancestors; and, as I told you  
(4-53)before, they are now painted on carriages, or placed  
(4-53)above the principal door of country-houses, or frequently  
(Tg4-53)engraved on seals. But there is much less  
(4-53)attention paid to heraldry now than there was  
(4-53)formerly, although the College of Heralds still  
(4-53)exists.  
(Tg4-53)Now, William King of Scotland having chosen  
(4-53)for his armorial bearing a Red Lion, rampant (that  
(4-53)is, standing on its hind legs, as if it were going to  
(4-53)climb), he acquired the name of William the Lion.  
(Tg4-53)And this Rampant Lion still constitutes the arms  
(4-53)of Scotland, and the President of the Heralds'

[TG4-54, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 4, p. 54]

(4-54)Court in that country, who is always a person of  
(Tg4-54)high rank, is called Lord Lion King-at-Arms.  
(4-54)William, though a brave man, and though he had  
(Tg4-54)a lion for his emblem, was unfortunate in war. In  
(4-54)the year 1174, he invaded England, for the purpose  
(4-54)of demanding and compelling restoration of  
(4-54)the portion of Northumberland, which had been  
(Tg4-54)possessed by his ancestors. He himself, with a  
(4-54)small body of men, lay in careless security near  
(4-54)Alnwick, while his numerous, but barbarous and  
(4-54)undisciplined army, were spread throughout the  
(4-54)country, burning and destroying wherever they  
(Tg4-54)came. Some gallant Yorkshire barons marched to  
(4-54)the aid of their neighbours of Northumberland.  
(Tg4-54)They assembled four hundred men-at-arms, and  
(4-54)made a forced march of twenty-four miles from  
(4-54)Newcastle towards Alnwick, without being discovered.  
(Tg4-54)On the morning a thick mist fell --  
(4-54)they became uncertain of their road-and some  
(Tg4-54)proposed to turn back. "If you should all turn  
(4-54)back," said one of their leaders, named Bernard de  
(Tg4-54)Baliol, "I would go forward alone." The others  
(4-54)adopted the same resolution, and, concealed by the  
(Tg4-54)mist, they rode forward towards Alnwick. In their  
(4-54)way they suddenly encountered the Scottish King,  
(4-54)at the head of a small party of only sixty men.  
(Tg4-54)William so little expected a sudden attack of this  
(4-54)nature, that at first he thought the body of cavalry  
(4-54)which he saw advancing was a part of his own  
(Tg4-54)army. When he was undeceived, he had too much  
(Tg4-54)of the lion about him to fear. "Now shall we see,"  
(4-54)he said, "which of us are good knights;" and

[TG4-55, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 4, p. 55]

(4-55)instantly charged the Yorkshire barons, with the  
(Tg4-55)handful of men who attended him. But sixty men-  
(4-55)at-arms could make no impression on four hundred,  
(4-55)and as the rest of William's army were too distant  
(4-55)to give him assistance, he was, after defending  
(4-55)himself with the utmost gallantry, unhorsed and  
(Tg4-55)made prisoner. The English immediately retreated  
(4-55)with their royal captive, after this bold and successful  
(Tg4-55)adventure. They carried William to New-  
(4-55)castle, and from that town to Northampton, where  
(4-55)he was conducted to the presence of Henry II.,  
(4-55)King of England, with his legs tied under his  
(4-55)horse's belly, as if he had been a common malefactor  
(4-55)or felon.

(Tg4-55)This was a great abuse of the advantage which  
(4-55)fortune had given to Henry, and was in fact more  
(Tg4-55)disgraceful to himself than to his prisoner. But the  
(4-55)English King's subsequent conduct was equally  
(Tg4-55)harsh and ungenerous. He would not release his  
(4-55)unfortunate captive until he had agreed to do homage  
(4-55)to the King of England, not only for his  
(4-55)English possessions, but also for Scotland, and all  
(Tg4-55)his other dominions. The Scottish Parliament were  
(4-55)brought to acquiesce in this treaty; and thus, in  
(4-55)order to recover the liberty of their King, they  
(4-55)sacrificed the independence of their country, which  
(4-55)remained for a time subject to the English claim  
(Tg4-55)of paramount sovereignty. This dishonourable  
(4-55)treaty was made on the 8th of December. 1174.

[TG4-56, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 4, p. 56]

(4-56)Thus the great national question of supremacy  
(4-56)was for a time abandoned by the Scots; but this  
(4-56)state of things did not last long. In 1189, Henry

(4-56)II died, and was succeeded by his son, Richard  
(4-56)the First, one of the most remarkable men in  
(4-56)English history. He was so brave, that he was  
(4-56)generally known by the name of Coeur de Lion,  
(4-56)that is, the Lion-hearted; and he was as generous  
(4-56)as he was brave. Nothing was so much at his  
(4-56)heart, as what was then called the Holy War, that  
(4-56)is, a war undertaken to drive the Saracens out of  
(4-56)Palestine. For this he resolved to go to Palestine  
(4-56)with a large army; but it was first necessary that  
(4-56)he should place his affairs at home in such a condition  
(4-56)as might ensure the quiet of his dominions  
(4-56)during his absence upon the expedition. This  
(4-56)point could not be accomplished without his making  
(4-56)a solid peace with Scotland; and in order to obtain  
(4-56)it, King Richard resolved to renounce the claim  
(4-56)for homage, which had been extorted from William  
(4-56)the Lion. By a charter, dated 5th December of  
(4-56)the same year (1189), he restored to the King of  
(4-56)Scots the castles of Berwick and Roxburgh, and  
(4-56)granted an acquittance to him of all obligations  
(4-56)which Henry II had extorted from him in consequence  
(4-56)of his captivity, reserving only Richard's  
(4-56)title to such homage as was anciently rendered by  
(4-56)Malcolm Canmore. For this renunciation William  
(4-56)paid ten thousand merks; a sum which probably  
(4-56)assisted in furnishing the expenses of Richard's  
(4-56)expedition to Palestine.  
(4-56)Thus was Scotland again restored to the dignity

[TG4-57, Tales of a grandfather, chap. 4, p. 57]

(4-57)of an independent nation, and her monarchs were  
(4-57)declared liable only to the homage due for the  
(4-57)lands which the King of Scotland held beyond the  
(4-57)boundaries of his own kingdom, and within those

(4-57)of England. The period of Scottish subjection  
(4-57)lasted only fifteen years.  
(4-57)This generous behaviour of Richard of England  
(4-57)was attended with such good effects, that it almost  
(4-57)put an end to all wars and quarrels betwixt England  
(4-57)and Scotland for more than a hundred years,  
(4-57)during which time, with one or two brief interruptions,  
(4-57)the nations lived in great harmony together.  
(4-57)This was much to the happiness of both, and might  
(4-57)in time have led to their becoming one people, for  
(4-57)which Nature, which placed them both in the same  
(4-57)island, seemed to have designed them. Intercourse  
(4-57)for the purpose of traffic became more frequent.  
(4-57)Some of the Scottish and English families formed  
(4-57)marriages and friendships together, and several  
(4-57)powerful lords and barons had lands both in England  
(4-57)and Scotland. All seemed to promise peace  
(4-57)and tranquillity betwixt the two kingdoms, until a  
(4-57)course of melancholy accidents having nearly  
(4-57)extinguished the Scottish royal family, tempted  
(4-57)the English monarch again to set up his unjust  
(4-57)pretensions to be sovereign of Scotland, and gave  
(4-57)occasion to a series of wars, fiercer and more  
(4-57)bloody than any which had ever before taken place  
(4-57)betwixt the countries.

[TG5-58, Tales of a grandfather, Chap.5, p. 58]

(5-58)William the Lion died [at Stirling, in December  
(5-58)1214], and was succeeded by his son, Alexander  
(5-58)II, a youth in years, but remarkable for prudence  
(5-58)and for firmness. In his days there was some war  
(5-58)with England, as he espoused the cause of the  
(5-58)disaffected barons, against King John. But no  
(5-58)disastrous consequences having arisen, the peace  
(5-58)betwixt the two kingdoms was so effectually



(5-58)restored, that Henry III, of England, having  
(5-58)occasion to visit his French dominions, committed  
(5-58)the care of the northern frontiers of his kingdom  
(5-58)to Alexander of Scotland, the prince who was most  
(5-58)likely to have seized the opportunity of disturbing  
(5-58)them. Alexander II repaid with fidelity the  
(5-58)great and honourable trust which his brother  
(5-58)sovereign had reposed in him.  
(5-58)Relieved from the cares of an English war,  
(5-58)Alexander endeavoured to civilize the savage  
(5-58)manners of his own people. These were disorderly  
(5-58)to a great degree.

[TG5-59, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 5, p. 59]

(5-59)For example, one Adam, Bishop of Caithness,  
(5-59)proved extremely rigorous in enforcing the demand  
(5-59)of tithes,--the tenth part, that is, of the produce  
(5-59)of the ground, which the church claimed for support  
(5-59)of the clergy. The people of Caithness  
(5-59)assembled to consider what should be done in this  
(5-59)dilemma, when one of them exclaimed, "Short  
(5-59)rede, good rede, slay we the bishop!" which means,  
(5-59)"Few words are best, let us kill the bishop." They  
(5-59)ran instantly to the bishop's house, assaulted it  
(5-59)with fury, set it on fire, and burned the prelate  
(5-59)alive in his own palace. [A.D. 1222.]  
(5-59)While this tragedy was going on, some of the  
(5-59)bishop's servants applied for protection for their  
(5-59)master to the Earl of Orkney and Caithness. This  
(5-59)nobleman, who probably favoured the conspiracy,  
(5-59)answered hypocritically, that the bishop had only  
(5-59)to come to him, and he would assure him of protection;  
(5-59)--as if it had been possible for the unhappy  
(5-59)bishop to escape from his blazing palace, and  
(5-59)through his raging enemies, and to make his way

(5-59)to the earl's residence.  
(5-59)The tidings of this cruel action were brought to  
(5-59)Alexander II, when he was upon a journey towards  
(5-59)England. He immediately turned back,  
(5-59)marched into Caithness with an army, and put to  
(5-59)death four hundred of those who had been concerned  
(5-59)in the murder of the bishop. The hard-hearted  
(5-59)earl was soon afterwards slain, and his  
(5-59)castle burned, in revenge of that odious crime.  
(5-59)By the prompt administration of justice, Alexander  
(5-59)both became obeyed and dreaded. He was

[TG5-60, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 5, p.60]

(5-60)a sovereign of considerable power, beloved both  
(5-60)by English and Scots. He had a brave and not  
(5-60)ill-disciplined army; but his cavalry, which  
(5-60)amounted only to a thousand spears, were not very  
(5-60)well mounted, and bore no proportion to one hundred  
(5-60)thousand of infantry, strong, good, and  
(5-60)resolute men.  
(5-60)ALEXANDER III, then only in his eighth year,  
(5-60)succeeded to his father in 1249. Yet, when only  
(5-60)two years older, he went to York to meet with the  
(5-60)English King, and to marry his daughter, the  
(5-60)Princess Margaret. On this occasion Henry endeavoured  
(5-60)to revive the old claim of homage,  
(5-60)which he insisted should be rendered to him by  
(5-60)the boy-bridegroom for all his dominions. Alexander  
(5-60)answered, with wisdom beyond his years,  
(5-60)that he was come to marry the Princess of England,  
(5-60)and not to treat of affairs of state; and that  
(5-60)he could not, and would not, enter upon the subject  
(5-60)proposed, without advice of his Parliament.  
(5-60)Upon another occasion, when visiting his father-  
(5-60)in-law at London, Alexander made it a condition

(5-60)of his journey, that he should not be called upon  
(5-60)to discuss any state affairs. In this, and on other  
(5-60)occasions, Alexander showed great willingness to  
(5-60)be on good terms with England, qualified by a  
(5-60)sincere resolution that he would not sacrifice any  
(5-60)part of the rights and independence of his own  
(5-60)dominions.

(5-60)In the days of Alexander III Scotland was  
(5-60)threatened with a great danger, from the invasion  
(5-60)of the Danes and the Norwegians. I have told

[TG5-61, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 5, p.61]

(5-61)you before, that these northern people were at this  
(5-61)time wont to scour the seas with their vessels, and  
(5-61)to make descents and conquests where it suited  
(5-61)them to settle. England had been at one time  
(5-61)conquered by them, and France had been compelled  
(5-61)to yield up to them the fine provinces which, after  
(5-61)their name, were called Normandy. The Scots,  
(5-61)whose country was at once poor and mountainous,  
(5-61)had hitherto held these rovers at defiance. But in  
(5-61)the year 1263, Haco, King of Norway, at the  
(5-61)head of a powerful fleet and army, came to invade  
(5-61)and conquer the kingdom of Scotland. Alexander,  
(5-61)on his part, lost no time in assembling a great army,  
(5-61)and preparing for the defence of the country, in  
(5-61)which he was zealously seconded by most of his  
(5-61)nobles. They were not all, however, equally faithful,  
(5-61)some of them had encouraged the attempt of  
(5-61)the invaders,

(5-61)On the 1st October, 1263, Haco, having arrived  
(5-61)on the western coast, commenced hostilities by  
(5-61)making himself master of the Islands of Bute and  
(5-61)Arran, lying in the mouth of the frith of Clyde,  
(5-61)and then appeared with his great navy off the village

(5-61)of Largs, in Cunninghame. The Scots were  
(5-61)in arms to defend the shore, but Haco disembarked  
(5-61)a great part of his troops, and obtained some advantages  
(5-61)over them. On the next day, more Scottish  
(5-61)troops having come up, the battle was renewed with  
(5-61)great fury. Alexander, fighting in person at the  
(5-61)head of his troops, was wounded in the face by an  
(5-61)arrow. Alexander, the Steward, a high officer in  
(5-61)the Scottish court was killed. But the Danes lost

[TG5-62, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 5, p. 62]

(5-62)the nephew of their King, one of the most renowned  
(5-62)champions in their host. While the battle was  
(5-62)still raging on shore, a furious tempest arose, which  
(5-62)drove the ships of the Danes and Norwegians from  
(5-62)their anchorage; many were shipwrecked on the  
(5-62)coast, and the crews were destroyed by the Scots,  
(5-62)when they attempted to get upon land. The soldiers,  
(5-62)who had been disembarked, lost courage,  
(5-62)and retired before the Scots, who were hourly reinforced  
(5-62)by their countrymen, coming from all quarters.  
(5-62)It was with the utmost difficulty that Haco  
(5-62)got the remnant of his scattered forces on board of  
(5-62)such vessels as remained. He retired to the Orkney  
(5-62)islands, and there died, full of shame and sorrow  
(5-62)for the loss of his army, and the inglorious  
(5-62)conclusion of his formidable invasion.  
(5-62)The consequence of this victory was, that the  
(5-62)King of the island of Man, who had been tributary  
(5-62)to Haco, now submitted himself to the King of  
(5-62)Scotland; and negotiations took place betwixt  
(5-62)Alexander III and Magnus, who had succeeded  
(5-62)Haco in the throne of Norway, by which the latter  
(5-62)resigned to the King of Scotland (1266) all right to  
(5-62)the islands on the western side of Scotland, called

(5-62)the Hebrides.

(5-62)The traces of the battle of Largs, a victory of so  
(5-62)much consequence to Scotland, are still to be found  
(5-62)on the shores where the action was fought. There  
(5-62)are visible great rocks and heaps of stones, beneath  
(5-62)which lie interred the remains of the slain. Human  
(5-62)bones are found in great quantities, and also warlike  
(5-62)weapons, particularly axes, and swords, which

[TG5-63, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 5, p. 63]

(5-63)being made of brass, remain longer unconsumed  
(5-63)than if they had been of iron or steel like those  
(5-63)now used.  
(5-63)Thus you see, Master Littlejohn, that down to  
(5-63)the period of which we speak, Scotland had been a  
(5-63)powerful and victorious nation, maintaining a more  
(5-63)equal rank with England than could have been  
(5-63)expected from the different size and strength of the  
(5-63)two kingdoms, and repelling by force of arms those  
(5-63)Northern people who had so long been the terror  
(5-63)of Europe.

[TG6-64, Tales a Grandfather, Chap. 6, p. 64]

(6-64)Seven kings of Scotland, omitting one or two  
(6-64)temporary occupants of the throne, had reigned in  
(6-64)succession, after Malcolm Canmore, the son of  
(6-64)Duncan, who recovered the kingdom from Macbeth.  
(6-64)Their reigns occupied a period of nearly two hundred  
(6-64)years. Some of them were very able men; all  
(6-64)of them were well-disposed, good sovereigns, and  
(6-64)inclined to discharge their duty towards their subjects.  
(6-64)They made good laws; and, considering the  
(6-64)barbarous and ignorant times they lived in, they  
(6-64)appear to have been men as deserving of praise as

(6-64)any race of kings who reigned in Europe during  
(6-64)that period. Alexander, the third of that name, and  
(6-64)the last of these seven princes, was an excellent  
(6-64)sovereign. He married, as I told you in the last  
(6-64)chapter, Margaret, daughter of Henry III. of England;  
(6-64)but unhappily all the children who were born  
(6-64)of that marriage died before their father. After the  
(6-64)death of Queen Margaret, Alexander married  
(6-64)another wife; but he did not live to have any family

[TG6-65, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 6, p. 65]

(6-65)by her. As he was riding in the dusk of the  
(6-65)evening, along the sea-coast of Fife, betwixt Burnt-  
(6-65)island and Kinghorn, he approached too near the  
(6-65)brink of the precipice, and his horse starting or  
(6-65)stumbling, he was thrown over the rock, and killed  
(6-65)on the spot. It is now no less than five hundred and  
(6-65)forty-two years since Alexander's death, yet the  
(6-65)people of the country still point out the very spot  
(6-65)where it happened, and which is called the King's  
(6-65)Crag. The very melancholy consequences which  
(6-65)followed Alexander's decease, made the manner of  
(6-65)it long remembered. A sort of elegy is also preserved,  
(6-65)in which his virtues, and the misfortunes  
(6-65)that followed his death, are recorded. It is the oldest  
(6-65)specimen of the Scottish language which is  
(6-65)known to remain in existence; but as you would  
(6-65)not understand it, I am obliged to alter it a little:-

(6-65) When Alexander our king was dead,  
(6-65) Who Scotland led in love and le,  
(6-65) Away was wealth of ale and bread,  
(6-65) Of wine and wax, of game and glee.  
(6-65) Then pray to God, since only he  
(6-65) Can succour Scotland in her need,

(6-65) That placed is in perplexity!

(6-65) Another legend says, that a wise man who is  
(6-65) called Thomas the Rhymer, and about whom many

[TG6-66, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 6, p. 66]

(6-66) stories are told, had said to a great Scottish noble  
(6-66) man, called the Earl of March, that the sixteenth  
(6-66) day of March should be the stormiest day that ever  
(6-66) was witnessed in Scotland. The day came, and  
(6-66) was remarkably clear, mild, and temperate. But  
(6-66) while they were all laughing at Thomas the  
(6-66) Rhymer on account of his false prophecy, an express  
(6-66) brought the news of the King's death.  
(6-66) "There," said Thomas, "that is the storm which  
(6-66) I meant; and there was never tempest which will  
(6-66) bring more ill luck to Scotland." This story may  
(6-66) very possibly be false; but the general belief in it  
(6-66) serves to show, that the death of Alexander the  
(6-66) Third was looked upon as an event of the most  
(6-66) threatening and calamitous nature.  
(6-66) The full consequences of the evil were not visible  
(6-66) at first; for, although all Alexander's children had,  
(6-66) as we have already said, died before him, yet one  
(6-66) of them, who had been married to Eric, King of  
(6-66) Norway, had left a daughter named Margaret,  
(6-66) upon whom, as the grand-daughter and nearest heir  
(6-66) of the deceased prince, the crown of Scotland devolved.  
(6-66) The young princess, called by our historians  
(6-66) the Maid of Norway, was residing at her  
(6-66) father's court.  
(6-66) While the crown of Scotland thus passed to a  
(6-66) young girl, the King of England began to consider  
(6-66) by what means he could so avail himself of circumstances,  
(6-66) as to unite it with his own. This King

(6-66)was Edward, called the First, because he was the  
(6-66)first of the Norman line of princes so named. He  
(6-66)was a very brave man, and a good soldier,--wise,

[TG6-67, Tales of a grandfather, Chap. 6, p. 67]

(6-67)skilful, and prudent but unhappily very ambitious,  
(6-67)and desirous of extending his royal authority, without  
(6-67)caring much whether he did so by right means  
(6-67)or by those which were unjust. And although it  
(6-67)is a great sin to covet that which does not belong  
(6-67)to you, and a still greater to endeavour to possess  
(6-67)yourself of it by any unfair practices, yet his desire  
(6-67)of adding the kingdom of Scotland to that of England  
(6-67)was so great, that Edward was unable to  
(6-67)resist it.

(6-67)The mode by which the English King at first  
(6-67)endeavoured to accomplish his object was a very  
(6-67)just one. He proposed a marriage betwixt the  
(6-67)Maiden of Norway, the young Queen of Scotland,  
(6-67)and his own eldest son, called Edward, after himself.  
(6-67)A treaty was entered into for this purpose;  
(6-67)and had the marriage been effected, and been  
(6-67)followed by children, the union of England and  
(6-67)Scotland might have taken place more than three  
(6-67)hundred years sooner than it did, and immeasurable  
(6-67)quantity of money and bloodshed would  
(6-67)probably have been saved. But it was not the will  
(6-67)of Heaven that this desirable union should be  
(6-67)accomplished till many long years of war and distress  
(6-67)had afflicted both these nations. The young  
(6-67)Queen of Scotland sickened and died, and the  
(6-67)treaty for the marriage was ended with her life.  
(6-67)The kingdom of Scotland was troubled, and its  
(6-67)inhabitants sunk into despair, at the death of their  
(6-67)young princess. There was not any descendant of



(6-67)[She landed in Orkney, on her way to take possession of  
(6-67)her crown, and died there, Sep. 1290.]

[TG6-68, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 6, p. 68]

(6-68)Alexander III remaining, who could be considered  
(6-68)as his direct and undeniable heir: and many of the  
(6-68)great nobles, who were more or less distantly related  
(6-68)to the royal family, prepared each of them to  
(6-68)assert a right to the crown, began to assemble forces  
(6-68)and form parties, and threatened the country with  
(6-68)a civil war, which is the greatest of all misfortunes.  
(6-68)The number of persons who set up claims to the  
(6-68)crown was no fewer than twelve, all of them forming  
(6-68)pretensions on some relationship, more or less  
(6-68)distant, to the royal family. These claimants were  
(6-68)most of them powerful, from their rank and the  
(6-68)number of their followers; and, if they should  
(6-68)dispute the question of right by the sword, it was  
(6-68)evident that the whole country would be at war  
(6-68)from one sea to the other.  
(6-68)To prevent this great dilemma, it is said the  
(6-68)Scottish nobility resolved to submit the question  
(6-68)respecting the succession of their kingdom to  
(6-68)Edward I of England, who was one of the wisest  
(6-68)princes of his time, and to request of him to settle,  
(6-68)as umpire, which of the persons claiming the throne  
(6-68)of Scotland had best right to be preferred to the  
(6-68)others. The people of Scotland are said to have  
(6-68)sent ambassadors to Edward, to request his interference  
(6-68)as judge; but he had already determined  
(6-68)to regulate the succession of the kingdom, not as  
(6-68)a mere umpire, having no authority but from the  
(6-68)desire of the parties, but as himself a person principally  
(6-68)concerned; and for this purpose he resolved  
(6-68)to revive the old pretext of his having right to the

(6-68)feudal sovereignty of Scotland, which, as we have

[TG6-69, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 6, p. 69]

(6-69)before seen, had been deliberately renounced by

(6-69)his generous predecessor Richard I.

(6-69)With this secret and unjust purpose, Edward

(6-69)of England summoned the nobility and clergy of

(6-69)Scotland to meet him at the castle of Norham, a

(6-69)large and strong fortress, which stands on the English

(6-69)side of the Tweed, on the line where that

(6-69)river divides England from Scotland. They met

(6-69)there on the 10th May, 1291, and were presented

(6-69)to the King of England, who received them in

(6-69)great state, surrounded by the high officers of his

(6-69)court. He was a very handsome man, and so tall,

(6-69)that he was popularly known by the name of

(6-69)Longshanks, that is, long legs. The Justiciary of

(6-69)England then informed the nobility and clergy of

(6-69)Scotland, in King Edward's name, that before he

(6-69)could proceed to decide who should be the vassal

(6-69)King of Scotland, it was necessary that they should

(6-69)acknowledge the King of England's right as Lord

(6-69)Paramount, or Sovereign of that kingdom.

(6-69)The nobles and churchmen of Scotland were

(6-69)surprised to hear the King of England propose a

(6-69)claim which had never been admitted, except for

(6-69)a short time, in order to procure the freedom of

(6-69)King William the Lion, and which had been afterwards

(6-69)renounced for ever by Richard I. They

(6-69)refused to give any answer until they should consult

(6-69)together by themselves. "By St Edward!"

(6-69)said the King, "whose crown I wear, I will make

(6-69)good my just rights, or perish in the attempt!"

(6-69)He then dismissed the assembly, allowing the Scots

[TG6-70, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 6, p. 70]

(6-70) a delay of three weeks, however, to accede to his  
(6-70) terms.  
(6-70) The Scottish nobility being thus made aware of  
(6-70) King Edward's selfish and ambitious designs,  
(6-70) ought to have assembled their forces together, and  
(6-70) declared that they would defend the rights and independence  
(6-70) of their country. But they were  
(6-70) much divided among themselves, and without any  
(6-70) leader; and the competitors who laid claim to the  
(6-70) crown, were mean-spirited enough to desire to  
(6-70) make favour with King Edward, in expectation  
(6-70) that he would raise to the throne him whom he  
(6-70) should find most willing to subscribe to his own  
(6-70) claims of paramount superiority.  
(6-70) Accordingly, the second assembly of the Scottish  
(6-70) nobility and clergy took place without any one  
(6-70) having dared to state any objection to what the  
(6-70) King of England proposed, however unreasonable  
(6-70) they knew his pretensions to be. They were  
(6-70) assembled in a large open plain, called Upsettlington,  
(6-70) opposite to the castle of Norham, but on the  
(6-70) northern or Scottish side of the river. The Chancellor  
(6-70) of England then demanded of such of the  
(6-70) candidates as were present, whether they acknowledged  
(6-70) the King of England as Lord Paramount  
(6-70) of Scotland, and whether they were willing to  
(6-70) receive and hold the crown of Scotland, as awarded  
(6-70) by Edward in that character. They all answered  
(6-70) that they were willing to do so; and thus, rather  
(6-70) than hazard their own claims by offending King  
(6-70) Edward, these unworthy candidates consented to

[TG6-71, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 6, p. 71]

(6-71)resign the independence of their country, which had  
(6-71)been so long and so bravely defended.  
(6-71)Upon examining the claims of the candidates,  
(6-71)the right of succession to the throne of Scotland  
(6-71)was found to lie chiefly betwixt Robert Bruce, the  
(6-71)Lord of Annandale, and John Baliol, who was the  
(6-71)Lord of Galloway. Both were great and powerful  
(6-71)barons; both were of Norman descent, and had  
(6-71)great estates in England as well as Scotland;  
(6-71)lastly, both were descended from the Scottish royal  
(6-71)family, and each by a daughter of David, Earl of  
(6-71)Huntingdon, brother of William the Lion. Edward,  
(6-71)upon due consideration, declared Baliol to  
(6-71)be King of Scotland, as being son of Margaret,  
(6-71)the eldest of the two sisters. But he declared that  
(6-71)the kingdom was always to be held under him as  
(6-71)the lord paramount, or sovereign thereof. John  
(6-71)Baliol closed the disgraceful scene by doing homage  
(6-71)to the King of England, and acknowledging that  
(6-71)he was his liege vassal and subject. This remarkable  
(6-71)event took place on 20th November, 1292.  
(6-71)Soon after this remarkable, and to Scotland most  
(6-71)shameful transaction, King Edward began to show  
(6-71)to Baliol that it was not his purpose to be satisfied  
(6-71)with a bare acknowledgment of his right of sovereignty,  
(6-71)but that he was determined to exercise it  
(6-71)with severity on every possible occasion. He did  
(6-71)this, no doubt, on purpose to provoke the dependent  
(6-71)King to some act of resistance, which should  
(6-71)give him a pretext for depriving him of the kingdom  
(6-71)altogether as a disobedient subject, and taking  
(6-71)it under his own government in his usurped character

[TG6-72, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 6, p. 72]

(6-72)of lord paramount. The King of England,

(6-72)therefore, encouraged the Scottish subjects to  
(6-72)appeal from the courts of Baliol to his own; and  
(6-72)as Baliol declined making appearance in the English  
(6-72)tribunals, or answering there for the sentences  
(6-72)which he had pronounced in his capacity of King  
(6-72)of Scotland, Edward insisted upon having possession  
(6-72)of three principal fortresses of Scotland ---  
(6-72)Berwick, Roxburgh, and Jedburgh.  
(6-72)Baliol surrendered, or at least agreed to surrender,  
(6-72)these castles; but the people murmured  
(6-72)against this base compliance, and Baliol himself,  
(6-72)perceiving that it was Edward's intention gradually  
(6-72)to destroy his power, was stung at once with  
(6-72)shame and fear, and entering into a league with  
(6-72)France, raised a great army, for the purpose of  
(6-72)invading England, the dominions of the prince  
(6-72)whom he had so lately acknowledged his lord  
(6-72)paramount, or sovereign. At the same time he  
(6-72)sent a letter to Edward, formally renouncing his  
(6-72)dependence upon him. Edward replied, in Norman  
(6-72)French, "Ha!--dares this idiot commit such  
(6-72)folly? Since he will not attend on us, as is his  
(6-72)duty, we will go to him."  
(6-72)The King of England accordingly assembled a

[TG6-73, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 6, p. 73]

(6-73)powerful army, amongst which came Bruce, who  
(6-73)had formerly contended for the crown of Scotland  
(6-73)with Baliol, and who now hoped to gain it upon his  
(6-73)forfeiture. Edward defeated the Scottish  
(6-73)army in a great battle near Dunbar  
(6-73)and Baliol, who appears to have been a  
(6-73)mean-spirited man, gave up the contest. He came  
(6-73)before Edward in the castle of Roxburgh, and there  
(6-73)made a most humiliating submission. He appeared

(6-73)in a mean dress, without sword, royal robes, or arms  
(6-73)of any kind, and bearing in his hand a white wand.  
(6-73)He there confessed, that through bad counsel and  
(6-73)folly he had rebelled against his liege lord, and, in  
(6-73)atonement, he resigned the kingdom of Scotland,  
(6-73)with the inhabitants, and all right which he possessed  
(6-73)to their obedience and duty, to their liege  
(6-73)lord King Edward. He was then permitted to  
(6-73)retire uninjured.  
(6-73)Baliol being thus removed, Bruce expressed his  
(6-73)hopes of being allowed to supply his place, as  
(6-73)tributary or dependent King of Scotland. But  
(6-73)Edward answered him sternly, "Have we nothing,  
(6-73)think you, to do, but to conquer kingdoms for  
(6-73)you?" By which words the English King plainly  
(6-73)expressed, that he intended to keep Scotland to  
(6-73)himself; and he proceeded to take such measures  
(6-73)as made his purpose still more evident.  
(6-73)Edward marched through Scotland at the head  
(6-73)of a powerful army, compelling all ranks of people  
(6-73)to submit to him. He removed to London the  
(6-73)records of the kingdom of Scotland, and was at the  
(6-73)pains to transport to the Abbey Church at Westminster

[TG6-74, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 6, p. 74]

(6-74)a great stone, upon which it had been the  
(6-74)national custom to place the King of Scotland when  
(6-74)he was crowned for the first time. He did this to  
(6-74)show that he was absolute master of Scotland, and  
(6-74)that the country was in future to have no other  
(6-74)king but himself, and his descendants the Kings  
(6-74)of England. The stone is still preserved, and to  
(6-74)this day the King's throne is placed upon it at the  
(6-74)time when he is crowned. Last of all, King  
(6-74)Edward placed the government of Scotland in the

(6-74)hands of John de Warenne, Earl of Surrey, a brave  
(6-74)nobleman; of Hugh Cressingham, a clergyman,  
(6-74)whom he named chief treasurer; and of William  
(6-74)Ormesby, whom he appointed the chief judge of  
(6-74)the kingdom. He placed English soldiers in all

[TG6-75, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 6, P. 75]

(6-75)the castles and strongholds of Scotland, from the  
(6-75)one end of the kingdom to the other; and not  
(6-75)trusting the Scots themselves, he appointed English  
(6-75)governors in most of the provinces of the  
(6-75)kingdom.

(6-75)We may here remark, my dear child, that a  
(6-75)little before he thus subdued Scotland, this same  
(6-75)Edward I. had made conquest of Wales, that  
(6-75)mountainous part of the island of Britain into  
(6-75)which the Britons had retreated from the Saxons,  
(6-75)and where, until the reign of this artful and ambitious  
(6-75)prince, they had been able to maintain their  
(6-75)independence. In subduing Wales, Edward had  
(6-75)acted as treacherously, and more cruelly, than he  
(6-75)had done in Scotland; since he had hanged the  
(6-75)last Prince of Wales, when he became his prisoner,  
(6-75)for no other crime than because he defended his  
(6-75)country against the English, who had no right to  
(6-75)it. Perhaps Edward thought to himself, that, by  
(6-75)uniting the whole island of Britain under one  
(6-75)king and one government, he would do so much  
(6-75)good by preventing future wars, as might be an  
(6-75)excuse for the force and fraud which he made use  
(6-75)of to bring about his purpose. But, my dear child,  
(6-75)God, who sees into our hearts, will not bless those  
(6-75)measures which are wicked in themselves, because  
(6-75)they are used under a pretence of bringing about  
(6-75)that which is good. We must not do evil even

(6-75)that good may come of it; and the happy prospect  
(6-75)that England and Scotland would be united under  
(6-75)one government, was so far from being brought  
(6-75)nearer by Edward's unprincipled usurpation, that

[TG6-76, Tales of a grandfather, Chap. 6, p. 76]

(6-76)the hatred and violence of national antipathy which  
(6-76)arose betwixt the sister countries, removed to a  
(6-76)distance almost incalculable, the prospect of their  
(6-76)becoming one people, for which nature seemed to  
(6-76)design them.

[TG7-77, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 77]

(7-77)I TOLD you, my dear Hugh, that Edward I of  
(7-77)England had reduced Scotland almost entirely to  
(7-77)the condition of a conquered country, although he  
(7-77)had obtained possession of the kingdom less by his  
(7-77)bravery, than by cunningly taking advantage of  
(7-77)the disputes and divisions that followed amongst  
(7-77)the Scots themselves after the death of Alexander  
(7-77)III.

(7-77)The English, however, had in point of fact  
(7-77)obtained possession of the country, and governed  
(7-77)it with much rigour. The Lord High Justice  
(7-77)Ormesby called all men to account, who would  
(7-77)not take the oath of allegiance to King Edward.  
(7-77)Many of the Scots refused this, as what the English  
(7-77)King had no right to demand from them.  
(7-77)Such persons were called into the courts of justice,  
(7-77)fined, deprived of their estates, and otherwise  
(7-77)severely punished. Then Hugh Cressingham, the  
(7-77)English Treasurer, tormented the Scottish nation,  
(7-77)by collecting money from them under various  
(7-77)pretexts. The Scots were always a poor people,



[TG7-78, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 7, p. 78]

(7-78)and their native kings had treated them with much  
(7-78)kindness, and seldom required them to pay any  
(7-78)taxes. They were, therefore, extremely enraged  
(7-78)at finding themselves obliged to pay to the English  
(7-78)treasurer much larger sums of money than their  
(7-78)own good kings had ever demanded from them;  
(7-78)and they became exceedingly dissatisfied.  
(7-78)Besides these modes of oppression, the English  
(7-78)soldiers, who, I told you, had been placed in garrison  
(7-78)in the different castles of Scotland, thought  
(7-78)themselves masters of the country, treated the Scots  
(7-78)with great contempt, took from them by main force  
(7-78)whatever they had a fancy to, and if the owners  
(7-78)offered to resist, abused them, beat and wounded  
(7-78)and sometimes killed them; for which acts of  
(7-78)violence the English officers did not check or  
(7-78)punish their soldiers. Scotland was, therefore, in  
(7-78)great distress, and the inhabitants, exceedingly  
(7-78)enraged, only wanted some leader to command  
(7-78)them, to rise up in a body against the English  
(7-78)or Southern men, as they called them, and recover  
(7-78)the liberty and independence of their country,  
(7-78)Such a leader arose in the person of WILLIAM  
(7-78)WALLACE, whose name is still so often mentioned  
(7-78)exactly the history of this brave man; for at the  
(7-78)that there was no person to write down the history  
(7-78)of what took place; and afterwards, when there  
(7-78)was more leisure for composition, the truths that  
(7-78)were collected were greatly mingled with falsehood.

[TG7-79, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 79]

(7-79)What I shall tell you of him, is generally

(7-79)believed to be true.

(7-79)William Wallace was none of the high nobles  
(7-79)of Scotland, but the son of a private gentleman,  
(7-79)called Wallace of Ellerslie, in Renfrewshire, near  
(7-79)Paisley. He was very tall and handsome, and  
(7-79)one of the strongest and bravest men that ever  
(7-79)lived. He had a very fine countenance, with a  
(7-79)quantity of fair hair, and was particularly dexterous  
(7-79)in the use of all weapons which were then  
(7-79)employed in battle. Wallace, like all Scotsmen  
(7-79)of high spirit, had looked with great indignation  
(7-79)upon the usurpation of the crown by Edward, and  
(7-79)upon the insolences which the English soldiers  
(7-79)committed on his countrymen. It is said, that  
(7-79)when he was very young, he went a fishing for  
(7-79)sport in the river of Irvine, near Ayr. He had  
(7-79)caught a good many trouts, which were carried by  
(7-79)a boy, who attended him with a fishing-basket, as  
(7-79)is usual with anglers. Two or three English  
(7-79)soldiers, who belonged to the garrison of Ayr,  
(7-79)came up to Wallace, and insisted, with their usual  
(7-79)insolence, on taking the fish from the boy. Wallace  
(7-79)was contented to allow them a part of the trouts,  
(7-79)but he refused to part with the whole basketful.

[TG7-80, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 7, p. 80]

(7-80)The soldiers insisted, and from words came to  
(7-80)blows. Wallace had no better weapon than the  
(7-80)but-end of his fishing-rod; but he struck the  
(7-80)foremost of the Englishmen so hard under the  
(7-80)ear with it, that he killed him on the spot; and  
(7-80)getting possession of the slain man's sword, he  
(7-80)fought with so much fury that he put the others to  
(7-80)flight, and brought home his fish safe and sound.  
(7-80)The English governor of Ayr sought for him, to

(7-80)punish him with death for this action; but Wallace  
(7-80)lay concealed among the hills and great woods  
(7-80)till the matter was forgotten, and then appeared in  
(7-80)another part of the country. He is said to have  
(7-80)had other adventures of the same kind, in which  
(7-80)he gallantly defended himself, sometimes when  
(7-80)alone, sometimes with very few companions, against  
(7-80)superior numbers of the English, until at last his  
(7-80)name became generally known as a terror to them.  
(7-80)But the action which occasioned his finally rising  
(7-80)in arms, is believed to have happened in the town  
(7-80)of Lanark. Wallace was at this time married to  
(7-80)a lady of that place, and residing there with his  
(7-80)wife. It chanced, as he walked in the market-  
(7-80)place, dressed in a green garment, with a rich  
(7-80)dagger by his side, that an Englishman came up  
(7-80)and insulted him on account of his finery, saying, a  
(7-80)Scotsman had no business to wear so gay a dress,  
(7-80)or carry so handsome a weapon. It soon came to  
(7-80)a quarrel, as on many former occasions; and Wallace,  
(7-80)having killed the Englishman, fled to his own

[TG7-81, Tales of a grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 81]

(7-81)house, which was speedily assaulted by all the  
(7-81)English soldiers. While they were endeavouring  
(7-81)to force their way in at the front of the house,  
(7-81)Wallace escaped by a back-door, and got in safety  
(7-81)to a rugged and rocky glen, near Lanark, called  
(7-81)the Cartland crags, all covered with bushes and  
(7-81)trees, and full of high precipices, where he knew  
(7-81)he should be safe from the pursuit of the English  
(7-81)soldiers. In the mean time, the governor of Lanark,  
(7-81)whose name was Hazelrigg, burned Wallace's  
(7-81)house, and put his wife and servants to death; and  
(7-81)by committing this cruelty increased to the highest

(7-81)pitch, as you may well believe, the hatred which  
(7-81)the champion had always borne against the English  
(7-81)usurper. Hazelrigg also proclaimed Wallace an  
(7-81)outlaw, and offered a reward to any one who should  
(7-81)bring him to an English garrison, alive, or dead.  
(7-81)On the other hand, Wallace soon collected a  
(7-81)body of men, outlawed like himself, or willing to  
(7-81)become so, rather than any longer endure the  
(7-81)oppression of the English. One of his earliest  
(7-81)expeditions was directed against Hazelrigg, whom  
(7-81)he killed, and thus avenged the death of his wife.  
(7-81)He fought skirmishes with the soldiers who were  
(7-81)sent against him, and often defeated them; and in  
(7-81)time became so well known and so formidable, that  
(7-81)multitudes began to resort to his standard, until at  
(7-81)length he was at the head of a considerable army,

[TG7-82, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 82]

(7-82)with which he proposed to restore his country to  
(7-82)independence.  
(7-82)About this time is said to have taken place a  
(7-82)memorable event, which the Scottish people called  
(7-82)the Barns of Ayr. It is alleged that the English  
(7-82)governor of Ayr had invited the greater part of  
(7-82)the Scottish nobility and gentry in the western  
(7-82)parts, to meet him at some large buildings called  
(7-82)the barns of Ayr, for the purpose of friendly conference  
(7-82)upon the affairs of the nation. But the  
(7-82)English earl entertained the treacherous purpose  
(7-82)of putting the Scottish gentlemen to death. The  
(7-82)English soldiers had halters with running nooses  
(7-82)ready prepared, and hung upon the beams which  
(7-82)supported the roof; and as the Scottish gentlemen  
(7-82)were admitted by two and two at a time, the nooses  
(7-82)were thrown over their heads, and they were pulled

(7-82)up by the neck, and thus hanged or strangled to  
(7-82)death. Among those who were slain in this base  
(7-82)and treacherous manner, was, it is said, Sir Reginald  
(7-82)Crawford, Sheriff of the county of Ayr, and  
(7-82)uncle to William Wallace.  
(7-82)When Wallace heard of what had befallen, he  
(7-82)was dreadfully enraged, and collecting his men in  
(7-82)a wood near the town of Ayr, he resolved to be  
(7-82)revenged on the authors of this great crime. The  
(7-82)English in the mean while made much feasting,  
(7-82)and when they had eaten and drunk plentifully,  
(7-82)they lay down to sleep in the same large barns in

[TG7-83, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 83]

(7-83)which they had. murdered the Scottish gentlemen.  
(7-83)But Wallace, learning that they kept no guard or  
(7-83)watch, not suspecting there were any enemies so  
(7-83)near them, directed a woman who knew the place,  
(7-83)to mark with chalk the doors of the lodgings where  
(7-83)the Englishmen lay. Then he sent a party of men,  
(7-83)who, with strong ropes, made all the doors so fast  
(7-83)on the outside, that those within could not open  
(7-83)them. On the outside the Scots had prepared  
(7-83)heaps of straw, to which they set fire, and the barns  
(7-83)of Ayr, being themselves made of wood, were soon  
(7-83)burning in a bright flame. Then the English were  
(7-83)awakened, and endeavoured to get out to save their  
(7-83)lives. But the doors, as I told you, were secured  
(7-83)on the outside, and bound fast with ropes; and,  
(7-83)besides, the blazing houses were surrounded by the  
(7-83)Scots, who forced those who got out to run back  
(7-83)into the fire, or else put them to death on the spot;  
(7-83)and thus great numbers perished miserably. Many  
(7-83)of the English were lodged in a convent, but they  
(7-83)had no better fortune than the others; for the prior

(7-83)of the convent caused all the friars to arm themselves,  
(7-83)and, attacking the English guests, they put  
(7-83)most of them to the sword. This was called the  
(7-83)"Friar of Ayr's Blessing." -- We cannot tell if this  
(7-83)story of the Barns of Ayr be exactly true; but it  
(7-83)is probable there is some foundation for it, as it is  
(7-83)universally believed in that country.

[TG7-84, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 84]

(7-84)Thus Wallace's party grew daily stronger and  
(7-84)stronger, and many of the Scottish nobles joined  
(7-84)with him. Among these were Sir William Douglas,  
(7-84)the Lord of Douglas-dale, and the head of a  
(7-84)great family often mentioned in Scottish history.  
(7-84)There was also Sir John the Grahame, who be-  
(7-84)came Wallace's bosom friend and greatest confident.  
(7-84)Many of these great noblemen, however,  
(7-84)deserted the cause of the country on the approach  
(7-84)of John de Warenne, Earl of Surrey, the English  
(7-84)governor, at the head of a numerous and well-  
(7-84)appointed army. They thought that Wallace  
(7-84)would be unable to withstand the attack of so many  
(7-84)disciplined soldiers, and hastened to submit themselves  
(7-84)to the English, for fear of losing their  
(7-84)estates. Wallace, however, remained undismayed,  
(7-84)and at the head of a considerable army. He had  
(7-84)taken up his camp upon the northern side of the  
(7-84)river Forth, near the town of Stirling. The river  
(7-84)was there crossed by a long wooden bridge, about  
(7-84)a mile above the spot where the present bridge is  
(7-84)situated.  
(7-84)The English general approached the banks of  
(7-84)the river on the southern side. He sent two clergymen  
(7-84)to offer a pardon to Wallace and his followers,  
(7-84)on condition that they should lay down

(7-84)their arms. But such was not the purpose of the  
(7-84)high-minded champion of Scotland.  
(7-84)"Go back to Warenne," said Wallace, "and  
(7-84)tell him we value not the pardon of the King of  
(7-84)England. We are not here for the purpose of

[TG7-85, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 85]

(7-85)treating of peace, but of abiding battle, and  
(7-85)restoring freedom to our country. Let the English  
(7-85)come on;-- we defy them to their very beards!"  
(7-85)The English, upon hearing this haughty answer,  
(7-85)called loudly to be led to the attack. Their leader,  
(7-85)Sir Richard Lundin, a Scottish knight, who had  
(7-85)gone over to the enemy at Irvine, hesitated, for he  
(7-85)was a skilful soldier, and he saw that, to approach  
(7-85)the Scottish army, his troops must pass over the  
(7-85)long, narrow wooden bridge; so that those who  
(7-85)should get over first might be attacked by Wallace  
(7-85)with all his forces, before those who remained  
(7-85)behind could possibly come to their assistance. He  
(7-85)therefore inclined to delay the battle. But Cressingham  
(7-85)the treasurer, who was ignorant and presumptuous,  
(7-85)insisted that it was their duty to fight,  
(7-85)and put an end to the war at once; and Lundin  
(7-85)gave way to his opinion, although Cressingham,  
(7-85)being a churchman, could not be so good a judge  
(7-85)of what was fitting as he himself, an experienced  
(7-85)officer.  
(7-85)The English army began to cross the bridge,  
(7-85)Cressingham leading the van, or foremost division  
(7-85)of the army; for, in those military days, even clergymen  
(7-85)wore armour and fought in battle. That  
(7-85)took place Which Sir Richard Lundin had foreseen.  
(7-85)Wallace suffered a considerable part of the English  
(7-85)army to pass the bridge, without offering any opposition;

(7-85)but when about one-half were over, and the  
(7-85)bridge was crowded with those who were following,  
(7-85)he charged those who had crossed with his  
(7-85)whole strength, slew a very great number, and

[TG7-86, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 86]

(7-86)drove the rest into the river Forth, where the  
(7-86)greater part were drowned. The remainder of  
(7-86)the English army, who were left on the southern  
(7-86)bank of the river, fled in great confusion, having  
(7-86)first set fire to the wooden bridge, that the Scots  
(7-86)might not pursue them. Cressingham was killed  
(7-86)in the very beginning of the battle; and the Scots  
(7-86)detested him so much that they flayed the skin  
(7-86)from his dead body, and kept pieces of it, in memory  
(7-86)of the revenge they had taken upon the  
(7-86)English treasurer. Some say they made saddle-  
(7-86)girths of this same skin; a purpose for which I do  
(7-86)not think it could be very fit. It must be owned  
(7-86)to have been a dishonourable thing of the Scots to  
(7-86)insult thus the dead body of their enemy, and  
(7-86)shows that they must have been then a ferocious  
(7-86)and barbarous people.  
(7-86)The remains of Surrey's great army fled out of  
(7-86)Scotland after this defeat; and the Scots,  
(7-86)taking arms on all sides, attacked the  
(7-86)castles in which the English soldiers continued  
(7-86)to shelter themselves, and took most of them by  
(7-86)force or stratagem. Many wonderful stories are  
(7-86)told of Wallace's exploits on these occasions; some  
(7-86)of which are no doubt true, while others are either  
(7-86)invented, or very much exaggerated. It seems  
(7-86)certain, however, that he defeated the English in  
(7-86)several combats, chased them almost entirely out  
(7-86)of Scotland, regained the towns and castles of



(7-86)which they had possessed themselves, and recovered  
(7-86)for a time the complete freedom of the country.  
(7-86)He even marched into England, and laid Cumberland

[TG7-87, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 87]

(7-87)and Northumberland waste, where the Scottish  
(7-87)soldiers, in revenge for the mischief which the  
(7-87)English had done in their country, committed great  
(7-87)cruelties. Wallace did not approve of their killing  
(7-87)the people who were not in arms, and he endeavoured  
(7-87)to protect the clergymen and others, who  
(7-87)were not able to defend themselves. "Remain  
(7-87)with me," he said to the priests of Hexham, a large  
(7-87)town in Northumberland, "for I cannot protect  
(7-87)you from my soldiers when you are out of my presence."  
(7-87)The troops who followed Wallace received  
(7-87)no pay, because he had no money to give them;  
(7-87)and that was one great reason why he could not  
(7-87)keep them under restraint, or prevent their doing  
(7-87)much harm to the defenceless country people. He  
(7-87)remained in England more than three weeks, and  
(7-87)did a great deal of mischief to the country.  
(7-87)Indeed, it appears, that, though Wallace disapproved  
(7-87)of slaying priests, women, and children, he  
(7-87)partook of the ferocity of the times so much, as to  
(7-87)put to death without quarter all whom he found in  
(7-87)arms. In the north of Scotland, the English had  
(7-87)placed a garrison in the strong castle of Dunnottar,  
(7-87)which built on a large and precipitous rock, overhangs  
(7-87)the raging sea. Though the place is almost  
(7-87)inaccessible, Wallace and his followers found their  
(7-87)way into the castle, while the garrison in great  
(7-87)terror fled into the church or chapel, which was  
(7-87)built on the very verge of the precipice. This did  
(7-87)not save them, for Wallace caused the church to

(7-87)be set on fire. The terrified garrison, involved in  
(7-87)the flames, ran some of them upon the points of

[TG7-88, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 88]

(7-88)the Scottish swords, while others threw themselves  
(7-88)from the precipice into the sea, and swam along to  
(7-88)the cliffs, where they hung like sea-fowl, screaming  
(7-88)in vain for mercy and assistance.

(7-88)The followers of Wallace were frightened at  
(7-88)this dreadful scene, and falling on their knees before  
(7-88)the priests who chanced to be in the army, they  
(7-88)asked forgiveness for having committed so much  
(7-88)slaughter, within the limits of a church dedicated  
(7-88)to the service of God. But Wallace had so deep  
(7-88)a sense of the injuries which the English had done  
(7-88)to his country, that he only laughed at the contrition  
(7-88)of his soldiers -- "I will absolve you all,  
(7-88)myself," he said. "Are you Scottish soldiers, and  
(7-88)do you repent for a trifle like this, which is not  
(7-88)half what the invaders deserved at our hands?"  
(7-88)So deep-seated was Wallace's feeling of national  
(7-88)resentment, that it seems to have overcome, in  
(7-88)such instances, the scruples of a temper which was  
(7-88)naturally humane.

(7-88)Edward I was in Flanders when all these events  
(7-88)took place. You may suppose he was very angry  
(7-88)when he learned that Scotland, which he thought  
(7-88)completely subdued, had risen into a great insurrection  
(7-88)against him, defeated his armies, killed his  
(7-88)treasurer, chased his soldiers out of their country,  
(7-88)and invaded England with a great force. He came  
(7-88)back from Flanders in a mighty rage, and determined  
(7-88)not to leave that rebellious country until it  
(7-88)was finally conquered; for which purpose he assembled  
(7-88)a very fine army, and marched into Scotland.

(7-88)In the mean time the Scots prepared to defend

[TG7-89, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p.89]

(7-89)themselves, and chose Wallace to be Governor  
(7-89)or Protector of the kingdom, because they had no  
(7-89)King at the time. He was now titled Sir William  
(7-89)Wallace, Protector, or Governor, of the Scottish  
(7-89)nation. But although Wallace, as we have seen,  
(7-89)was the best soldier and bravest man in Scotland,  
(7-89)and therefore the most fit to be placed in command  
(7-89)at this critical period, when the King of England  
(7-89)was coming against them with such great forces,  
(7-89)yet the nobles of Scotland envied him this important  
(7-89)situation, because he was not a man born in  
(7-89)high rank, or enjoying a large estate. So great  
(7-89)was their jealousy of Sir William Wallace, that  
(7-89)many of these great barons did not seem very  
(7-89)willing to bring forward their forces, or fight  
(7-89)against the English, because they would not have  
(7-89)a man of inferior condition to be general. This  
(7-89)was base and mean conduct, and it was attended  
(7-89)with great disasters to Scotland. Yet, notwithstanding  
(7-89)this unwillingness of the great nobility to  
(7-89)support him, Wallace assembled a large army; for  
(7-89)the middling, but especially the lower classes, were  
(7-89)very much attached to him. He marched boldly  
(7-89)against the King of England, and met him near  
(7-89)the town of Falkirk. Most of the Scottish army

[TG7-90, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 90]

(7-90)were on foot, because, as I already told you, in  
(7-90)those days only the nobility and great men of Scotland  
(7-90)fought on horseback. The English King, on  
(7-90)the contrary, had a very large body of the finest

(7-90)cavalry in the world, Normans and English, all  
(7-90)clothed in complete armour. He had also the celebrated  
(7-90)archers of England, each of whom was said  
(7-90)to carry twelve Scotsmen's lives under his girdle;  
(7-90)because every archer had twelve arrows stuck in  
(7-90)his belt, and was expected to kill a man with every  
(7-90)arrow.

(7-90)The Scots had some good archers from the Forest  
(7-90)of Ettrick, who fought under command of  
(7-90)Sir John Stewart of Bonkill; but they were not  
(7-90)nearly equal in number to the English. The greater  
(7-90)part of the Scottish army were on foot, armed with  
(7-90)long spears; they were placed thick and close  
(7-90)together, and laid all their spears so close, point  
(7-90)over point, that it seemed as difficult to break  
(7-90)through them, as through the wall of a strong  
(7-90)castle. When the two armies were drawn up  
(7-90)facing each other, Wallace said to his soldiers,  
(7-90)"I have brought you to the ring, let me see how  
(7-90)you can dance," meaning, I have brought you to  
(7-90)the decisive field of battle, let me see how bravely  
(7-90)you can fight.

(7-90)The English made the attack. King Edward,  
(7-90)though he saw the close ranks, and undaunted  
(7-90)appearance, of the Scottish infantry, resolved nevertheless  
(7-90)to try whether he could not ride them down  
(7-90)with his fine cavalry. He therefore gave his horsemen  
(7-90)orders to advance. They charged accordingly,

[TG7-91, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 91]

(7-91)at full gallop. It must have been a terrible thing  
(7-91)to have seen these fine horses riding as hard as  
(7-91)they could against the long lances, which were held  
(7-91)out by the Scots to keep them back; and a dreadful  
(7-91)cry arose when they came against each other.

(7-91)The first line of cavalry was commanded by the  
(7-91)Earl Marshal of England, whose progress was  
(7-91)checked by a morass. The second line of English  
(7-91)horse was commanded by Antony Beck, the Bishop  
(7-91)of Durham, who' nevertheless, wore armour, and  
(7-91)fought like a lay baron. He wheeled round the  
(7-91)morass; but when he saw the deep and firm order  
(7-91)of the Scots, his heart failed, and he proposed to  
(7-91)Sir Ralph Basset of Drayton, who commanded  
(7-91)under him, to halt till Edward himself brought up  
(7-91)the reserve. "Go say your mass, bishop," answered  
(7-91)Basset contemptuously, and advanced at full  
(7-91)gallop with the second line. However, the Scots  
(7-91)stood their ground with their long spears; many of  
(7-91)the foremost of the English horses were thrown  
(7-91)down, and the riders were killed as they lay rolling,  
(7-91)unable to rise, owing to the weight of their  
(7-91)heavy armour. But the Scottish horse did not  
(7-91)come to the assistance of their infantry, but on the  
(7-91)contrary, fled away from the battle. It is supposed  
(7-91)that this was owing to the treachery or ill-will of  
(7-91)the nobility, who were jealous of Wallace. )But it  
(7-91)must be considered that the Scottish cavalry were  
(7-91)few in number; and that they had much worse  
(7-91)arms, and weaker horses, than their enemies. The  
(7-91)English cavalry attempted again and again to disperse  
(7-91)the deep and solid ranks in which Wallace

[TG7-92, Tales of A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 7, p.92]

(7-92)had stationed his foot soldiers. But they were  
(7-92)repeatedly beaten off with loss, nor could they make  
(7-92)their way through that wood of spears, as it is  
(7-92)called by one of the English historians. King  
(7-92)Edward then commanded his archers to advance;  
(7-92)and these approaching within arrow-shot of the

(7-92)Scottish ranks, poured on them such close and  
(7-92)dreadful volleys of arrows, that it was impossible  
(7-92)to sustain the discharge. It happened at the same  
(7-92)time, that Sir John Stewart was killed by a fall  
(7-92)from his horse; and the archers of Ettrick Forest,  
(7-92)whom he was bringing forward to oppose those of  
(7-92)King Edward, were slain in great numbers around  
(7-92)him. Their bodies were afterwards distinguished  
(7-92)among the slain, as being the tallest and handsomest  
(7-92)men of the army.

(7-92)The Scottish spearmen being thus thrown into  
(7-92)some degree of confusion, by the loss of those who  
(7-92)were slain by the arrows of the English, the heavy  
(7-92)cavalry of Edward again charged with more success  
(7-92)than formerly, and broke through the ranks,  
(7-92)which were already disordered. Sir John Grahame,  
(7-92)Wallace's great friend and companion, was  
(7-92)slain, with many other brave soldiers; and the  
(7-92)Scots, having lost a very great number of men,  
(7-92)were at length obliged to take to flight.

(7-92)This fatal battle was fought upon 22d July,  
(7-92)1298. Sir John the Grahame lies buried in the  
(7-92)churchyard of Falkirk. A tombstone was laid  
(7-92)over him, which has been three times renewed  
(7-92)since his death. The inscription bears, "That Sir  
(7-92)John the Grahame, equally remarkable for wisdom

[TG7-93, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 93]

(7-93)and courage, and the faithful friend of Wallace,  
(7-93)being slain in battle by the English, lies buried in  
(7-93)this place." A large oak-tree in the adjoining  
(7-93)forest was long shown as marking the spot where  
(7-93)Wallace slept before the battle, or, as others said,  
(7-93)in which he hid himself after the defeat. Nearly  
(7-93)forty years ago Grandpapa saw some of its roots;

(7-93)but the body of the tree was even then entirely  
(7-93)decayed, and there is not now, and has not been  
(7-93)for many years, the least vestige of it to be seen.  
(7-93)After this fatal defeat of Falkirk, Sir William  
(7-93)Wallace seems to have resigned his office of Governor  
(7-93)of Scotland. Several nobles were named  
(7-93)guardians in his place, and continued to make  
(7-93)resistance to the English armies; and they gained  
(7-93)some advantages, particularly near Roslin, where  
(7-93)a body of Scots, commanded by John Comyn of  
(7-93)Badenoch, who was one of the guardians of the  
(7-93)kingdom, and another distinguished commander,  
(7-93)called Simon Fraser, defeated three armies, or  
(7-93)detachments, of English in one day.  
(7-93)Nevertheless, the King of England possessed so  
(7-93)much wealth, and so many means of raising soldiers,  
(7-93)that he sent army after army into the poor

[TG7-94, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 7, p. 94]

(7-94)oppressed country of Scotland, and obliged all its  
(7-94)nobles and great men, one after another, to submit  
(7-94)themselves once more to his yoke. Sir William  
(7-94)Wallace, alone, or with a very small band of followers,  
(7-94)refused either to acknowledge the usurper  
(7-94)Edward, or to lay down his arms. He continued  
(7-94)to maintain himself among the woods and mountains  
(7-94)of his native country for no less than seven  
(7-94)years after his defeat at Falkirk, and for more than  
(7-94)one year after all the other defenders of Scottish  
(7-94)liberty had laid down their arms. Many proclamations  
(7-94)were sent out against him by the English,  
(7-94)and a great reward was set upon his head; for  
(7-94)Edward did not think he could have any secure  
(7-94)possession of his usurped kingdom of Scotland  
(7-94)while Wallace lived. At length he was taken

(7-94)prisoner; and, shame it is to say, a Scotsman  
(7-94)called Sir John Menteith, was the person by whom  
(7-94)he was seized and delivered to the English. It is  
(7-94)generally said that he was made prisoner at Robroyston,  
(7-94)near Glasgow; and the tradition of the  
(7-94)country bears, that the signal made for rushing  
(7-94)upon him and taking him at unawares, was, when  
(7-94)one of his pretended friends, who betrayed him,  
(7-94)should turn a loaf, which was placed on the table,  
(7-94)with its bottom or flat side uppermost. And in  
(7-94)after times it was reckoned ill-breeding to turn a  
(7-94)loaf in that manner, if there was a person named  
(7-94)Menteith in company; since it was as much as to  
(7-94)remind him, that his namesake had betrayed Sir  
(7-94)William Wallace, the Champion of Scotland.  
(7-94)Whether Sir John Menteith was actually the

[TG7-95, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p.95]

(7-95)person by whom Wallace was betrayed, is not  
(7-95)perfectly certain. He was, however, the individual  
(7-95)by whom the patriot was made prisoner, and  
(7-95)delivered up to the English, for which his name  
(7-95)and his memory have been long loaded with  
(7-95)disgrace.  
(7-95)Edward having thus obtained possession of the  
(7-95)person whom he considered as the greatest obstacle  
(7-95)to his complete conquest of Scotland, resolved  
(7-95)to make Wallace an example to all Scottish patriots  
(7-95)who should in future venture to oppose his ambitious  
(7-95)projects. He caused this gallant defender of  
(7-95)his country to be brought to trial in Westminster  
(7-95)hall, before the English judges, and produced him  
(7-95)there, crowned, in mockery, with a green garland,  
(7-95)because they said he had been king of outlaws and  
(7-95)robbers among the Scottish woods. Wallace was



(7-95)accused of having been a traitor to the English  
(7-95)crown; to which he answered, "I could not be a  
(7-95)traitor to Edward, for I was never his subject."  
(7-95)He was then charged with having taken and burnt  
(7-95)towns and castles, with having killed many men  
(7-95)and done much violence. He replied, with the  
(7-95)same calm resolution, "that it was true he had  
(7-95)killed very many Englishmen, but it was because  
(7-95)they had come to subdue and oppress his native  
(7-95)country of Scotland; and far from repenting what  
(7-95)he had done, he declared he was only sorry that  
(7-95)he had not put to death many more of them."  
(7-95)Notwithstanding that Wallace's defence was a  
(7-95)good one, both in law and in common sense (for  
(7-95)surely every one has not only a right to fight in

[TG7-96, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 7, p. 96]

(7-96)defence of his native country, but is bound in duty  
(7-96)to do so), the English judges condemned him to  
(7-96)be executed. So this brave patriot was dragged  
(7-96)upon a sledge to the place of execution, where his  
(7-96)head was struck off, and his body divided into four  
(7-96)quarters, which, according to the cruel custom of  
(7-96)the time, were exposed upon spikes of  
(7-96)iron on London Bridge, and were termed  
(7-96)the limbs of a traitor.  
(7-96)No doubt King Edward thought, that by exercising  
(7-96)this great severity towards so distinguished  
(7-96)a patriot as Sir William Wallace, he should terrify  
(7-96)all the Scots into obedience, and so be able in future  
(7-96)to reign over their country without resistance.  
(7-96)But though Edward was a powerful, a brave, and  
(7-96)a wise king, and though he took the most cautious,  
(7-96)as well as the most strict measures, to preserve the  
(7-96)obedience of Scotland, yet his claim being founded  
(7-96)in injustice and usurpation, was not permitted by

(7-96)Providence to be established in security or peace.  
(7-96)Sir William Wallace, that immortal supporter of  
(7-96)the independence of his country, was no sooner deprived  
(7-96)of his life, in the cruel and unjust manner I  
(7-96)have told you, than other patriots arose to assert  
(7-96)the cause of Scottish liberty.

[TG8-97, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 97]

(8-97)I HOPE, my dear child, that you have not forgotten  
(8-97)that all the cruel wars in Scotland arose out  
(8-97)of the debate between the great lords who claimed  
(8-97)the throne after King Alexander the Third's death,  
(8-97)which induced the Scottish nobility rashly to submit  
(8-97)the decision of that matter to King Edward of  
(8-97)England, and thus opened the way to his endeavouring  
(8-97)to seize the kingdom of Scotland to himself.  
(8-97)You recollect also, that Edward had dethroned  
(8-97)John Baliol, on account of his attempting  
(8-97)to restore the independence of Scotland, and that  
(8-97)Baliol had resigned the crown of Scotland into the  
(8-97)hands of Edward as lord paramount. This John  
(8-97)Baliol, therefore, was very little respected in Scotland;  
(8-97)he had renounced the kingdom, and had been  
(8-97)absent from it for fifteen years, during the greater  
(8-97)part of which time he remained a prisoner in the  
(8-97)hands of the King of England.  
(8-97)It was therefore natural that such of the people  
(8-97)of Scotland as were still determined to fight for the  
(8-97)deliverance of their country from the English yoke,  
(8-97)should look around for some other king, under

[TG8-98, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 98]

(8-98)whom they might unite themselves, to combat the  
(8-98)power of England. The feeling was universal in

(8-98)Scotland, that they would not any longer endure  
(8-98)the English government; and therefore such great  
(8-98)Scottish nobles as believed they had right to the  
(8-98)crown, began to think of standing forward to claim it.  
(8-98)Amongst these, the principal candidates (supposing  
(8-98)John Baliol, by his renunciation and captivity,  
(8-98)to have lost all right to the kingdom) were two  
(8-98)powerful noblemen. The first was ROBERT BRUCE,  
(8-98)Earl of Carrick, the grandson of that elder Robert  
(8-98)Bruce, who, as you have heard, disputed the throne  
(8-98)with John Baliol. The other was John Comyn, or  
(8-98)Cumming, of Badenoch, usually called the Red  
(8-98)Comyn, to distinguish him from his kinsman, the  
(8-98)Black Comyn, so named from his swarthy complexion.  
(8-98)These two great and powerful barons had  
(8-98)taken part with Sir William Wallace in the wars  
(8-98)against England; but, after the defeat of Falkirk,  
(8-98)being fearful of losing their great estates, and considering  
(8-98)the freedom of Scotland as beyond the possibility  
(8-98)of being recovered, both Bruce and Comyn  
(8-98)had not only submitted themselves to Edward, and  
(8-98)acknowledged his title as King of Scotland, but even  
(8-98)borne arms, along with the English, against such of  
(8-98)their countrymen as still continued to resist the  
(8-98)usurper. But the feelings of Bruce concerning the  
(8-98)baseness of this conduct, are said, by the old traditions

[TG8-99, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 99]

(8-99)of Scotland, to have been awakened by the  
(8-99)following incident. In one of the numerous battles,  
(8-99)or skirmishes, which took place at the time between  
(8-99)the English and their adherents on the one side,  
(8-99)and the insurgent or patriotic Scots upon the other,  
(8-99)Robert the Bruce was present, and assisted the  
(8-99)English to gain the victory. After the battle was

(8-99)over, he sat down to dinner among his southern  
(8-99)friends and allies without washing his hands, on  
(8-99)which there still remained spots of the blood which  
(8-99)he had shed during the action. The English lords,  
(8-99)observing this, whispered to each other in mockery,  
(8-99)"Look at that Scotsman, who is eating his  
(8-99)own blood!" Bruce heard what they said, and  
(8-99)began to reflect, that the blood upon his hands  
(8-99)might be indeed called his own, since it was that of  
(8-99)his brave countrymen, who were fighting for the  
(8-99)independence of Scotland, whilst he was assisting  
(8-99)its oppressors, who only laughed at and mocked  
(8-99)him for his unnatural conduct. He was so much  
(8-99)shocked and disgusted, that he arose from table,  
(8-99)and, going into a neighbouring chapel, shed many  
(8-99)tears, and asking pardon of God for the great crime  
(8-99)he had been guilty of, made a solemn vow that he  
(8-99)would atone for it, by doing all in his power to deliver  
(8-99)Scotland from the foreign yoke. Accordingly,  
(8-99)he left, it is said, the English army, and never  
(8-99)joined it again, but remained watching all opportunity  
(8-99)for restoring the freedom of his country.  
(8-99)Now, this Robert the Bruce was a remarkably  
(8-99)brave and strong man: there was no man in Scotland  
(8-99)that was thought a match for him except Sir

[TG8-100, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 8, p. 100]

(8-100)William Wallace; and now that Wallace was dead,  
(8-100)Bruce was held the best warrior in Scotland. He  
(8-100)was very wise and prudent, and an excellent general:  
(8-100)that is, he knew how to conduct an army, and  
(8-100)place them in order for battle, as well or better  
(8-100)than any great man of his time. He was generous,  
(8-100)too, and courteous by nature; but he had some  
(8-100)faults, which perhaps belonged as much to the

(8-100)fierce period in which he lived as to his own character.  
(8-100)He was rash and passionate, and in his  
(8-100)passion, he was sometimes relentless and cruel.  
(8-100)Robert the Bruce had fixed his purpose, as I  
(8-100)told you, to attempt once again to drive the English  
(8-100)out of Scotland, and he desired to prevail upon  
(8-100)Sir John the Red Comyn, who was his rival in his  
(8-100)pretensions to the throne, to join with him in expelling  
(8-100)the foreign enemy by their common efforts.  
(8-100)With this purpose, Bruce posted down from London  
(8-100)to Dumfries, on the borders of Scotland, and  
(8-100)requested an interview with John Comyn. They  
(8-100)met in the church of the Minorites in that town,  
(8-100)before the high altar. What passed betwixt them  
(8-100)is not known with certainty; but they quarrelled,  
(8-100)either concerning their mutual pretensions to the  
(8-100)crown, or because Comyn refused to join Bruce in  
(8-100)the proposed insurrection against the English; or,  
(8-100)as many writers say, because Bruce charged Comyn  
(8-100)with having betrayed to the English his purpose of  
(8-100)rising up against King Edward. It is, however,  
(8-100)certain, that these two haughty barons came to high  
(8-100)and abusive words, until at length Bruce, who I  
(8-100)told you was extremely passionate, forgot the

[TG8-101, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 101]

(8-101)sacred character of the place in which they stood,  
(8-101)and struck Comyn a blow with his dagger. Having  
(8-101)done this rash deed, he instantly ran out of  
(8-101)the church and called for his horse. Two gentlemen  
(8-101)of the country, Lindesay and Kirkpatrick,  
(8-101)friends of Bruce, were then in attendance on him.  
(8-101)Seeing him pale, bloody, and in much agitation,  
(8-101)they eagerly enquired what was the matter.  
(8-101)"I doubt," said Bruce, "that I have slain the

(8-101)Red Comyn."  
(8-101)"Do you leave such a matter in doubt?" said  
(8-101)Kirkpatrick. "I will make sicker!"-- that is, I  
(8-101)will make certain.  
(8-101)Accordingly, he and his companion Lindesay  
(8-101)rushed into the church, and made the matter certain  
(8-101)with a vengeance, by despatching the wounded  
(8-101)Comyn with their daggers. His uncle, Sir Robert  
(8-101)Comyn, was slain at the same time.  
(8-101)This slaughter of Comyn was a rash and cruel  
(8-101)action; and the historian of Bruce observes, that it  
(8-101)was followed by the displeasure of Heaven; for no  
(8-101)man ever went through more misfortunes than  
(8-101)Robert Bruce, although he at length rose to great  
(8-101)honour.  
(8-101)After the deed was done, Bruce might be called  
(8-101)desperate. He had committed an action which  
(8-101)was sure to bring down upon him the vengeance of  
(8-101)all Comyn's relations, the resentment of the King  
(8-101)of England, and the displeasure of the Church, on  
(8-101)account of having slain his enemy within consecrated  
(8-101)ground. He determined, therefore, to bid them  
(8-101)all defiance at once, and to assert his pretensions to  
(8-101)the throne of Scotland. He drew his own followers

[TG8-102, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 8, p. 102]

(8-102)together, summoned to meet him such barons  
(8-102)as still entertained hopes of the freedom of the  
(8-102)country, and was crowned King at the Abbey of  
(8-102)Scone, the usual place where the Kings of Scotland  
(8-102)assumed their authority.  
(8-102)Every thing relating to the ceremony was hastily  
(8-102)performed. A small circlet of gold was hurriedly  
(8-102)made, to represent the ancient crown of Scotland,  
(8-102)which Edward had carried off to England. The

(8-102)Earl of Fife, descendant of the brave Macduff,  
(8-102)whose duty it was to have placed the crown on the  
(8-102)King's head, would not give his attendance. But  
(8-102)the ceremonial was performed by his sister, Isabella,  
(8-102)Countess of Buchan, though without the  
(8-102)consent either of her brother or husband. A few  
(8-102)barons, whose names ought to be dear to their  
(8-102)country, joined Bruce in his attempt to vindicate  
(8-102)the independence of Scotland.  
(8-102)Edward was dreadfully incensed when he heard  
(8-102)that, after all the pains which he had taken, and all  
(8-102)the blood which had been spilled, the Scots were  
(8-102)making this new attempt to shake off his authority.  
(8-102)Though now old, feeble, and sickly, he made a  
(8-102)solemn vow, at a great festival, in presence of all  
(8-102)his court, that he would take the most ample vengeance  
(8-102)upon Robert the Bruce and his adherents;  
(8-102)after which he would never again draw his sword  
(8-102)upon a Christian, but would only fight against the  
(8-102)unbelieving Saracens for the recovery of the Holy  
(8-102)Land. He marched against Bruce accordingly, at  
(8-102)the head of a powerful army.  
(8-102)The commencement of Bruce's undertaking was  
(8-102)most disastrous. He was crowned on 29th March,

[TG8-103, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 8, p. 103]

(8-103)1306. On the 18th May he was excommunicated  
(8-103)by the Pope, on account of the murder of Comyn  
(8-103)within consecrated ground, a sentence which excluded  
(8-103)him from all the benefits of religion, and  
(8-103)authorized any one to kill him. Finally, on the  
(8-103)19th June the new King was completely defeated  
(8-103)near Methven by the English Earl of Pembroke.  
(8-103)Robert's horse was killed under him in the action,  
(8-103)and he was for a moment a prisoner. But he had

(8-103)fallen into the power of a Scottish knight, who,  
(8-103)though he served in the English army, did not  
(8-103)choose to be the instrument of putting Bruce into  
(8-103)their hands, and allowed him to escape. The conquerors  
(8-103)executed their prisoners with their usual  
(8-103)cruelty. Among these were some gallant young  
(8-103)men of the first Scottish families--Hay, ancestor  
(8-103)of the Earls of Errol, Somerville, Fraser, and  
(8-103)others, who were mercilessly put to death.  
(8-103)Bruce, with a few brave adherents, among whom  
(8-103)was the young Lord of Douglas, who was afterwards  
(8-103)called the Good Lord James, retired into  
(8-103)the Highland mountains, where they were chased  
(8-103)from one place of refuge to another, often in great  
(8-103)danger, and suffering many hardships. The Bruce's  
(8-103)wife, now Queen of Scotland, with several other  
(8-103)ladies, accompanied her husband and his few followers  
(8-103)during their wanderings. There was no  
(8-103)other way of providing for them save by hunting  
(8-103)and fishing. It was remarked, that Douglas was  
(8-103)the most active and successful in procuring for the  
(8-103)unfortunate ladies such supplies, as his dexterity in  
(8-103)fishing or in killing deer could furnish to them.

[TG8-104, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, Chap. 8, p. 104]

(8-104)Driven from one place in the Highlands to  
(8-104)another, starved out of some districts, and forced  
(8-104)from others by the opposition of the inhabitants,  
(8-104)Bruce attempted to force his way into Lorn; but  
(8-104)he found enemies every where. The M'Dougals,  
(8-104)a powerful family, then called Lords of Lorn, were  
(8-104)friendly to the English, and putting their men in  
(8-104)arms, attacked Bruce and his wandering companions  
(8-104)as soon as they attempted to enter their  
(8-104)territory. The chief of these M'Dougals, called



(8-104)John of Lorn, hated Bruce on account of his  
(8-104)having slain the Red Comyn in the church at  
(8-104)Dumfries, to whom this M'Dougal was nearly  
(8-104)related. Bruce was again defeated by this chief,  
(8-104)through force of numbers, at a place called Dalry;  
(8-104)but he showed, amidst his misfortunes, the greatness  
(8-104)of his strength and courage. He directed his  
(8-104)men to retreat through a narrow pass, and placing  
(8-104)himself last of the party, he fought with and slew  
(8-104)such of the enemy as attempted to press hard on  
(8-104)them. Three followers of M'Dougal, a father and  
(8-104)two sons, called M'Androsser, all very strong men,  
(8-104)when they saw Bruce thus protecting the retreat  
(8-104)of his followers, made a vow that they would  
(8-104)either kill this redoubted champion, or make him  
(8-104)prisoner. The whole three rushed on the King  
(8-104)at once. Bruce was on horseback, in the strait  
(8-104)pass we have described, betwixt a precipitous rock  
(8-104)and a deep lake. He struck the first man who  
(8-104)came up, and seized his horse's rein, such a blow

[TG8-105, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 105]

(8-105)with his sword, as cut off his hand and freed the  
(8-105)bridle. The man bled to death. The other brother  
(8-105)had grasped Bruce in the mean time by the  
(8-105)leg, and was attempting to throw him from horseback.  
(8-105)The King, setting spurs to his horse, made  
(8-105)the animal suddenly spring forward, so that the  
(8-105)Highlander fell under the horse's feet; and, as he  
(8-105)was endeavouring to rise again, Bruce cleft his  
(8-105)head in two with his sword. The father, seeing  
(8-105)his two sons thus slain, flew desperately at the  
(8-105)King, and grasped him by the mantle so close to  
(8-105)his body, that he could not have room to wield his  
(8-105)long sword. But with the heavy pommel of that

(8-105)weapon, or, as others say with an iron hammer  
(8-105)which hung at his saddle-bow the King struck  
(8-105)this third assailant so dreadful a blow, that he  
(8-105)dashed out his brains. Still, however, the Highlander  
(8-105)kept his dying grasp on the King's mantle;  
(8-105)so that, to be free of the dead body, Bruce was  
(8-105)obliged to undo the brooch, or clasp, by which it  
(8-105)was fastened, and leave that, and the mantle itself,  
(8-105)behind him. The brooch, which fell thus into the  
(8-105)possession of M'Dougal of Lorn, is still preserved  
(8-105)in that ancient family, as a memorial that the celebrated  
(8-105)Robert Bruce once narrowly escaped falling  
(8-105)into the hands of their ancestor. Robert greatly

[TG8-106, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 8, p.106]

(8-106)resented this attack upon him; and when he was  
(8-106)in happier circumstances, did not fail to take his  
(8-106)revenge on M'Dougal, or, as he is usually called,  
(8-106)John of Lorn.  
(8-106)The King met with many such encounters amidst  
(8-106)his dangerous and dismal wanderings; yet, though  
(8-106)almost always defeated by the superior numbers of  
(8-106)the English, and of such Scots as sided with them,  
(8-106)he still kept up his own spirits and those of his  
(8-106)followers. He was a better scholar than was usual  
(8-106)in those days, when, except clergymen, few people  
(8-106)learned to read and write. But King Robert could  
(8-106)do both very well; and we are told that he sometimes  
(8-106)read aloud to his companions, to amuse them  
(8-106)when they were crossing the great Highland lakes  
(8-106)in such wretched leaky boats as they could find for  
(8-106)that purpose. Loch Lomond, in particular, is said  
(8-106)to have been the scene of such a lecture. You may  
(8-106)see by this how useful it is to possess knowledge  
(8-106)and accomplishments. If Bruce could not have read

(8-106)to his associates, and diverted their thoughts from  
(8-106)their dangers and sufferings, he might not perhaps  
(8-106)have been able to keep up their spirits, or secure  
(8-106)their continued attachment.  
(8-106)At last dangers increased so much around the  
(8-106)brave King Robert, that he was obliged to separate  
(8-106)himself from his Queen and her ladies; for the  
(8-106)winter was coming on, and it would be impossible

[TG8-107, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 107]

(8-107)for the women to endure this wandering sort of life  
(8-107)when the frost and snow should set in. So Bruce  
(8-107)left his queen with the Countess of Buchan and  
(8-107)others, in the only castle which remained to him,  
(8-107)which was called Kildrummie, and is situated near  
(8-107)the head of the river Don in Aberdeenshire. The  
(8-107)King also left his youngest brother, Nigel Bruce,  
(8-107)to defend the castle against the English; and he  
(8-107)himself, with his second brother Edward, who was  
(8-107)a very brave man, but still more rash and passionate  
(8-107)than Robert himself, went over to an island  
(8-107)called Rachrin, on the coast of Ireland, where  
(8-107)Bruce and the few men that followed his fortunes  
(8-107)passed the winter of 1306. In the mean time, ill  
(8-107)luck seemed to pursue all his friends in Scotland.  
(8-107)The castle of Kildrummie was taken by the English,  
(8-107)and Nigel Bruce, a beautiful and brave youth,  
(8-107)was cruelly put to death by the victors. The ladies  
(8-107)who had attended on Robert's Queen, as well as  
(8-107)the queen herself, and the Countess of Buchan,  
(8-107)were thrown into strict confinement, and treated  
(8-107)with the utmost severity.  
(8-107)The Countess of Buchan, as I before told you,  
(8-107)had given Edward great offence by being the person  
(8-107)who placed the crown on the head of Robert

(8-107)Bruce. She was imprisoned within the castle of  
(8-107)Berwick, in a cage made on purpose. Some Scottish  
(8-107)authors have pretended that this cage was hung  
(8-107)over the walls with the poor countess, like a  
(8-107)parrot's cage out at a window. But this is their own  
(8-107)ignorant idea. The cage of the Lady Buchan was

[TG8-108, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 8, p. 108]

(8-108)a strong wooden and iron piece of frame-work,  
(8-108)placed within an apartment, and resembling one of  
(8-108)those places in which wild-beasts are confined.  
(8-108)There were such cages in most old prisons to which  
(8-108)captives were consigned, who, either for mutiny, or  
(8-108)any other reason, were to be confined with peculiar  
(8-108)rigour.  
(8-108)The news of the taking of Kildrummie, the captivity  
(8-108)of his wife, and the execution of his brother,  
(8-108)reached Bruce while he was residing in a miserable  
(8-108)dwelling at Rachrin, and reduced him to the point  
(8-108)of despair.  
(8-108)It was about this time that an incident took place,  
(8-108)which, although it rests only on tradition in families  
(8-108)of the name of Bruce, is rendered probable by  
(8-108)the manners of the times. After receiving the last  
(8-108)unpleasing intelligence from Scotland, Bruce was  
(8-108)lying one morning on his wretched bed, and deliberating  
(8-108)with himself whether he had not better  
(8-108)resign all thoughts of again attempting to make  
(8-108)good his right to the Scottish crown, and, dismissing  
(8-108)his followers, transport himself and his brothers  
(8-108)to the Holy Land, and spend the rest of his  
(8-108)life in fighting against the Saracens; by which he  
(8-108)thought, perhaps. He might deserve the forgiveness  
(8-108)of Heaven for the great sin of stabbing Comyn in  
(8-108)the church at Dumfries. But then, on the other

(8-108)hand, he thought it would be both criminal and  
(8-108)cowardly to give up his attempts to restore freedom  
(8-108)to Scotland, while there yet remained the least  
(8-108)chance of his being successful in an undertaking

[TG8-109, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 109]

(8-109)which, rightly considered, was much more his duty  
(8-109)than to drive the infidels out of Palestine, though  
(8-109)the superstition of his age might think otherwise.  
(8-109)While he was divided betwixt these reflections,  
(8-109)and doubtful of what he should do, Bruce was  
(8-109)looking upward to the roof of the cabin in which  
(8-109)he lay; and his eye was attracted by a spider,  
(8-109)which, hanging at the end of a long thread of its  
(8-109)own spinning, was endeavouring, as is the fashion  
(8-109)of that creature, to swing itself from one beam in  
(8-109)the roof to another, for the purpose of fixing the  
(8-109)line on which it meant to stretch its web. The insect  
(8-109)made the attempt again and again without  
(8-109)success; and at length Bruce counted that it had  
(8-109)tried to carry its point six times, and been as often  
(8-109)unable to do so. It came into his head that he had  
(8-109)himself fought just six battles against the English  
(8-109)and their allies, and that the poor persevering spider  
(8-109)was exactly in the same situation with himself,  
(8-109)having made as many trials, and been as often  
(8-109)disappointed in what it aimed at. "Now," thought  
(8-109)Bruce, "as I have no means of knowing what is  
(8-109)best to be done, I will be guided by the luck which  
(8-109)shall attend this spider. If the insect shall make  
(8-109)another effort to fix its thread, and shall be successful,  
(8-109)I will venture a seventh time to try my  
(8-109)fortune in Scotland; but if the spider shall fail I  
(8-109)will go to the wars in Palestine, and never return  
(8-109)to my native country more."

(8-109)While Bruce was forming this resolution, the  
(8-109)spider made another exertion with all the force it  
(8-109)could muster, and fairly succeeded in fastening its

[TG8-110, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 8, p. 110]

(8-110)thread to the beam which it had so often in vain  
(8-110)attempted to reach. Bruce, seeing the success of  
(8-110)the spider, resolved to try his own fortune; and as  
(8-110)he had never before gained a victory, so he never  
(8-110)afterwards sustained any considerable or decisive  
(8-110)check or defeat. I have often met with people of  
(8-110)the name of Bruce, so completely persuaded of the  
(8-110)truth of this story, that they would not on any  
(8-110)account kill a spider; because it was that insect  
(8-110)which had shown the example of perseverance, and  
(8-110)given a signal of good luck to their great name-  
(8-110)sake.

(8-110)Having determined to renew his efforts to obtain  
(8-110)possession of Scotland, notwithstanding the smallness  
(8-110)of the means which he had for accomplishing  
(8-110)so great a purpose, the Bruce removed himself and  
(8-110)his followers from Rachrin to the island of Arran,  
(8-110)which lies in the mouth of the Clyde. The King  
(8-110)landed, and enquired of the first woman he met,  
(8-110)what armed men were in the island. She returned  
(8-110)for answer, that there had arrived there very  
(8-110)lately a body of armed strangers, who had defeated  
(8-110)an English officer, the governor of the castle of  
(8-110)Brathwick, had killed him and most of his men,  
(8-110)and were now amusing themselves with hunting  
(8-110)about the island. The King, having caused himself  
(8-110)to be guided to the woods which these strangers  
(8-110)most frequented, there blew his horn repeatedly.  
(8-110)Now, the chief of the strangers who had taken the  
(8-110)castle, was James Douglas, whom we have already

[TG8-111, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 111]

(8-111)mentioned as one of the best of Bruce's friends,  
(8-111)and he was accompanied by some of the bravest of  
(8-111)that patriotic band. When he heard Robert  
(8-111)Bruce's horn, he knew the sound well, and cried  
(8-111)out, that yonder was the King, he knew by his  
(8-111)manner of blowing. So he and his companions  
(8-111)hastened to meet King Robert, and there was  
(8-111)great joy on both sides; whilst at the same time  
(8-111)they could not help weeping when they considered  
(8-111)their own forlorn condition, and the great loss that  
(8-111)had taken place among their friends since they had  
(8-111)last parted. But they were stout-hearted men,  
(8-111)and looked forward to freeing their country, in  
(8-111)spite of all that had yet happened.  
(8-111)The Bruce was now within sight of Scotland,  
(8-111)and not distant from his own family possessions,  
(8-111)where the people were most likely to be attached  
(8-111)to him. He began immediately to form plans  
(8-111)with Douglas, how they might best renew their  
(8-111)enterprise against the English. The Douglas  
(8-111)resolved to go disguised to his own country, and  
(8-111)raise his followers, in order to begin their enterprise  
(8-111)by taking revenge on an English nobleman  
(8-111)called Lord Clifford, upon whom Edward had  
(8-111)conferred his estates, and who had taken up his  
(8-111)residence in the castle of Douglas.

[TG8-112, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 8, p. 112]

(8-112)Bruce, on his part, opened a communication with  
(8-112)the opposite coast of Carrick, by means of one of  
(8-112)his followers called Cuthbert. This person had  
(8-112)directions, that if he should find the countrymen in

(8-112)Carrick disposed to take up arms against the English,  
(8-112)he was to make a fire on a headland, or lofty  
(8-112)cape, called Turnberry, on the coast of Ayrshire,  
(8-112)opposite to the island of Arran. The appearance  
(8-112)of a fire on this place was to be a signal for Bruce  
(8-112)to put to sea with such men as he had, who were  
(8-112)not more than three hundred in number, for the  
(8-112)purpose of landing in Carrick and joining the  
(8-112)insurgents.  
(8-112)Bruce and his men watched eagerly for the signal,  
(8-112)but for some time in vain. At length a fire  
(8-112)on Turnberry-head became visible, and the King  
(8-112)and his followers merrily betook themselves to  
(8-112)their ships and galleys, concluding their Carrick  
(8-112)friends were all in arms, and ready to join with  
(8-112)them. They landed on the beach at midnight,  
(8-112)where they found their spy Cuthbert alone in waiting  
(8-112)for them, with very bad news. Lord Percy,  
(8-112)he said, was in the country, with two or three  
(8-112)hundred Englishmen, and had terrified the people  
(8-112)so much, both by threats and actions, that none of  
(8-112)them dared to think of rebelling against King  
(8-112)Edward.  
(8-112)"Traitor!" said Bruce "why, then, did you  
(8-112)make the signal?"  
(8-112)"Alas," replied Cuthbert, "the fire was not  
(8-112)made by me, but by some other person, for what  
(8-112)purpose I know not; but as soon as I saw it burning,

[TG8-113, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 113]

(8-113)I knew that you would come over, thinking it  
(8-113)my signal, and therefore I came down to wait for  
(8-113)you on the beach, to tell you how the matter  
(8-113)stood."  
(8-113)King Robert's first idea was to return to Arran



(8-113)after this disappointment; but his brother Edward  
(8-113)refused to go back. He was, as I have told you,  
(8-113)a man daring even to rashness." I will not leave  
(8-113)my native land." He said, "now that I am so unexpectedly  
(8-113)restored to it. I will give freedom to  
(8-113)Scotland, or leave my carcass on the surface of the  
(8-113)land which gave me birth."  
(8-113)Bruce, also, after some hesitation, determined  
(8-113)that since he had been thus brought to the mainland  
(8-113)of Scotland, he would remain there, and take  
(8-113)such adventure and fortune as Heaven should send  
(8-113)him.  
(8-113)Accordingly, he began to skirmish with the  
(8-113)English so successfully, as obliged the Lord Percy  
(8-113)to quit Carrick. Bruce then dispersed his men  
(8-113)upon various adventures against the enemy, in  
(8-113)which they were generally successful. But then,  
(8-113)on the other hand, the King, being left with small  
(8-113)attendance, or sometimes almost alone, run great  
(8-113)risk of losing his life by treachery, or by open  
(8-113)violence. Several of these incidents are very interesting.  
(8-113)I will tell you some of them.  
(8-113)At one time, a near relation of Bruce's, in whom  
(8-113)he entirely confided, was induced by the bribes of  
(8-113)the English to attempt to put him to death. This  
(8-113)villain, with his two sons, watched the King one  
(8-113)morning, till he saw him separated from all his

[TG8-114, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 8, p. 114]

(8-114)men, excepting a little boy, who waited on him as  
(8-114)a page. The father had a sword in his hand, one  
(8-114)of the sons had a sword and a spear, the other had  
(8-114)a sword and a battle-axe. Now, when the King  
(8-114)saw them so well armed, when there were no enemies  
(8-114)near, he began to call to mind some hints

(8-114)which had been given to him, that these men intended  
(8-114)to murder him. He had no weapons excepting  
(8-114)his sword; but his page had a bow and  
(8-114)arrow. He took them both from the little boy,  
(8-114)and bade him stand at a distance; "for," said the  
(8-114)King, "if I overcome these traitors, thou shalt  
(8-114)have enough of weapons; but if I am slain by them,  
(8-114)you may make your escape, and tell Douglas and  
(8-114)my brother to revenge my death," The boy was  
(8-114)very sorry, for he loved his master; but he was  
(8-114)obliged to do as he was bidden.  
(8-114)In the mean time the traitors came forward upon  
(8-114)Bruce, that they might assault him at once. The  
(8-114)King called out to them, and commanded them to  
(8-114)come no nearer, upon peril of their lives; but the  
(8-114)father answered with flattering words, pretending  
(8-114)great kindness, and still continuing to approach his  
(8-114)person. Then the King again called to them to  
(8-114)stand. "Traitors," said he, "ye have sold my  
(8-114)life for English gold; but you shall die if you come  
(8-114)one foot nearer to me." With that he bent the  
(8-114)page's bow; and as the old conspirator continued  
(8-114)to advance, he let the arrow fly at him. Bruce was  
(8-114)an excellent archer; he aimed his arrow so well,  
(8-114)that it hit the father in the eye, and penetrated from  
(8-114)that into his brain, so that he fell down dead. Then  
(8-114)the two sons rushed on the King. One of them

[TG8-115, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 115]

(8-115)etched a blow at him with an axe, but missed his  
(8-115)stroke, and stumbled, so that the King with his  
(8-115)great sword cut him down before he could recover  
(8-115)his feet. The remaining traitor ran on Bruce with  
(8-115)his spear; but the King, with a sweep of his sword,  
(8-115)cut the steel head off the villain's weapon, and then

(8-115)killed him before he had time to draw his sword.  
(8-115)Then the little page came running, very joyful of  
(8-115)his master's victory; and the King wiped his  
(8-115)bloody sword, and looking upon the dead bodies,  
(8-115)said, "These might have been reputed three gallant  
(8-115)men, if they could have resisted the temptation  
(8-115)of covetousness."  
(8-115)In the present day, it is not necessary that  
(8-115)generals, or great officers, should fight with their  
(8-115)own hand, because it is only their duty to direct  
(8-115)the movements and exertions of their followers.  
(8-115)The artillery and the soldiers shoot at the enemy;  
(8-115)and men seldom mingle together, and fight hand to  
(8-115)hand. But in ancient times, kings, and great  
(8-115)lords were obliged to put themselves into the very  
(8-115)front of the battle, and fight like ordinary men,  
(8-115)with the lance and other weapons. It was, therefore,  
(8-115)of great consequence that they should be  
(8-115)strong men, and dexterous in the use of their arms.  
(8-115)Robert Bruce was so remarkably active and powerful  
(8-115)that he came through a great many personal  
(8-115)dangers, in which he must otherwise have been  
(8-115)slain. I will tell you another of his adventures,  
(8-115)which I think will amuse you.  
(8-115)After the death of these three traitors, Robert  
(8-115)the Bruce continued to keep himself concealed in

[TG8-116, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 8, p. 116]

(8-116)his own earldom of Carrick, and in the neighbouring  
(8-116)country of Galloway, until he should have  
(8-116)matters ready for a general attack upon the English.  
(8-116)He was obliged, in the mean time, to keep  
(8-116)very few men with him, both for the sake of secrecy,  
(8-116)and from the difficulty of finding provisions. Now,  
(8-116)many of the people of Galloway were unfriendly

(8-116)to Bruce. They lived under the government of  
(8-116)one M'Dougal, related to the Lord of Lorn, who,  
(8-116)as I before told you, had defeated Bruce at Dalry,  
(8-116)and very nearly killed or made him prisoner. These  
(8-116)Galloway men had heard that Bruce was in their  
(8-116)country, having no more than sixty men with him;  
(8-116)so they resolved to attack him by surprise, and for  
(8-116)this purpose they got two hundred men together,  
(8-116)and brought with them two or three bloodhounds.  
(8-116)These animals were trained to chase a man by the  
(8-116)scent of his footsteps, as foxhounds chase a fox, or  
(8-116)as beagles and harriers chase a hare. Although  
(8-116)the dog does not see the person whose trace he is  
(8-116)put upon, he follows him over every step he has  
(8-116)taken. At that time these bloodhounds, or sleuth-  
(8-116)hounds (so called from slot, or sleut, a word which  
(8-116)signifies the scent left by an animal of chase), were  
(8-116)used for the purpose of pursuing great criminals.  
(8-116)The men of Galloway thought themselves secure,  
(8-116)that if they missed taking Bruce, or killing him at  
(8-116)the first onset, and if he should escape into the  
(8-116)woods, they would find him out by means of these  
(8-116)bloodhounds.  
(8-116)The good King Robert Bruce, who was always  
(8-116)watchful and vigilant, had received some information

[TG8-117, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 117]

(8-117)of the intention of this party to come upon  
(8-117)him suddenly and by night. Accordingly, he  
(8-117)quartered his little troop of sixty men on the side  
(8-117)of a deep and swift-running river, that had very  
(8-117)steep and rocky banks. There was but one ford  
(8-117)by which this river could be crossed in that neighbourhood,  
(8-117)and that ford was deep and narrow, so  
(8-117)that two men could scarcely get through abreast;

(8-117)the ground on which they were to land on the side  
(8-117)where the King was, was steep, and the path which  
(8-117)led upwards from the water's edge to the top of  
(8-117)the bank, extremely narrow and difficult.  
(8-117)Bruce caused his men to lie down to take some  
(8-117)sleep, at a place about half a mile distant from the  
(8-117)river, while he himself, with two attendants, went  
(8-117)down to watch the ford, through which the enemy  
(8-117)must needs pass before they could come to the place  
(8-117)where King Robert's men were lying. He stood  
(8-117)for some time looking at the ford, and thinking how  
(8-117)easily the enemy might be kept from passing there,  
(8-117)providing it was bravely defended, when he heard  
(8-117)at a distance the baying of a hound, which was  
(8-117)always coming nearer and nearer. This was the  
(8-117)bloodhound which was tracing the King's steps to  
(8-117)the ford where he had crossed, and the two hundred  
(8-117)Galloway men were along with the animal,  
(8-117)and guided by it. Bruce at first thought of going  
(8-117)back to awaken his men; but then he reflected that  
(8-117)it might be only some shepherd's dog. "My men,"  
(8-117)he said, "are sorely tired; I will not disturb their  
(8-117)sleep for the yelping of a cur, till I know something  
(8-117)more of the matter." So he stood and

[TG8-118, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 118]

(8-118)listened; and by and by, as the cry of the hound  
(8-118)came nearer, he began to hear a trampling of horses,  
(8-118)and the voices of men, and the ringing and clattering  
(8-118)of armour, and then he was sure the enemy  
(8-118)were coming to the river side. Then the King  
(8-118)thought, "If I go back to give my men the alarm,  
(8-118)these Galloway men will get through the ford without  
(8-118)opposition; and that would be a pity, since it  
(8-118)is a place so advantageous to make defence against

(8-118)them." So he looked again at the steep path, and  
(8-118)the deep river, and he thought that they gave him  
(8-118)so much advantage, that he himself could defend  
(8-118)the passage with his own hand, until his men came  
(8-118)to assist him. His armour was so good and strong,  
(8-118)that he had no fear of arrows, and therefore the  
(8-118)combat was not so very unequal as it must have  
(8-118)otherwise been. He therefore sent his followers  
(8-118)to waken his men, and remained alone by the bank  
(8-118)of the river,  
(8-118)In the mean while, the noise and trampling of  
(8-118)the horses increased; and the moon being bright,  
(8-118)Bruce beheld the glancing arms of about two hundred  
(8-118)men, who came down to the opposite bank of  
(8-118)the river. The men of Galloway, on their part,  
(8-118)saw but one solitary figure, guarding the ford, and  
(8-118)the foremost of them plunged into the river without  
(8-118)minding him. But as they could only pass the  
(8-118)ford one by one, the Bruce, who stood high above  
(8-118)them on the bank where they were to land, killed  
(8-118)the foremost man with a thrust of his long spear,  
(8-118)and with a second thrust stabbed the horse, which  
(8-118)fell down, kicking and plunging in his agonies, on

[TG8-119, Tales of a grandfather, chap. 8, p. 119]

(8-119)the narrow path, and so prevented the others who  
(8-119)were following from getting out of the river(8-119).  
(8-119)Bruce had thus an opportunity of dealing his  
(8-119)blows at pleasure among them, while they could  
(8-119)not strike at him again. In the confusion, five or  
(8-119)six of the enemy were slain, or, having been borne  
(8-119)down the current, were drowned in the river. The  
(8-119)rest were terrified, and drew back.  
(8-119)But when the Galloway men looked again,  
(8-119)and saw they were opposed by only one man, they

(8-119)themselves being so many, they cried out, that  
(8-119)their honour would be lost for ever if they did not  
(8-119)force their way; and encouraged each other, with  
(8-119)loud cries, to plunge through, and assault him.  
(8-119)But by this time the King's soldiers came up to  
(8-119)his assistance, and the Galloway men retreated,  
(8-119)and gave up their enterprise.  
(8-119)I will tell you another story of this brave Robert  
(8-119)Bruce during his wanderings. His adventures are  
(8-119)as curious and entertaining as those which men  
(8-119)invent for story books, with this advantage, that  
(8-119)they are all true.  
(8-119>About the time when the Bruce was yet at the  
(8-119)head of but few men, Sir Aymer de Valence, who  
(8-119)was Earl of Pembroke, together with John of Lorn,  
(8-119)came into Galloway, each of them being at the  
(8-119)head of a large body of men. John of Lorn had a  
(8-119)bloodhound with him, which it was said had

[TG8-120, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 120]

(8-120)formerly belonged to Robert Bruce himself; and  
(8-120)having been fed by the King with his own hands,  
(8-120)it became attached to him, and would follow his  
(8-120)footsteps any where, as dogs are well known to  
(8-120)trace their master's steps, whether they be blood-  
(8-120)hounds or not. By means of this hound, John of  
(8-120)Lorn thought he should certainly find out Bruce,  
(8-120)and take revenge on him for the death of his relation  
(8-120)Comyn.  
(8-120)When these two armies advanced upon King  
(8-120)Robert, he at first thought of fighting with the  
(8-120)English earl; but becoming aware that John of  
(8-120)Lorn was moving round with another large body  
(8-120)to attack him in the rear, he resolved to avoid  
(8-120)fighting at that time, lest he should be oppressed

(8-120)by numbers. For this purpose, the King divided  
(8-120)the men he had with him into three bodies, and  
(8-120)commanded them to retreat by three different  
(8-120)ways, thinking the enemy would not know which  
(8-120)party to pursue. He also appointed a place at  
(8-120)which they were to assemble again. But when  
(8-120)John of Lorn came to the place where the army  
(8-120)of Bruce had been thus divided, the bloodhound  
(8-120)took his course after one of these divisions, neglecting  
(8-120)the other two, and then John of Lorn knew  
(8-120)that the King must be in that party; so he also  
(8-120)made no pursuit after the two other divisions of  
(8-120)the Scots, but followed that which the dog pointed  
(8-120)out, with all his men.  
(8-120)The King again saw that he was followed by a  
(8-120)large body, and being determined to escape from  
(8-120)them, if possible, he made all the people who were

[TG8-121, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 121]

(8-121)with him disperse themselves different ways,  
(8-121)thinking thus that the enemy must needs lose trace  
(8-121)of him. He kept only one man along with him,  
(8-121)and that was his own foster-brother, or the son of  
(8-121)his nurse. When John of Lorn came to the place  
(8-121)where Bruce's companions had dispersed themselves,  
(8-121)the bloodhound, after it had snuffed up and  
(8-121)down for a little, quitted the footsteps of all the  
(8-121)other fugitives, and ran barking upon the track of  
(8-121)two men out of the whole number. Then John  
(8-121)of Lorn knew that one of these two must needs be  
(8-121)King Robert. Accordingly, he commanded five  
(8-121)of his men that were speedy of foot to chase after  
(8-121)him, and either make him prisoner, or slay him.  
(8-121)The Highlanders started off accordingly, and ran  
(8-121)so fast, that they gained sight of Robert and his



(8-121)foster-brother. The King asked his companion  
(8-121)what help he could give him, and his foster-brother  
(8-121)answered he was ready to do his best. So these  
(8-121)two turned on the five men of John of Lorn, and  
(8-121)killed them all. It is to be supposed they were  
(8-121)better armed than the others were, as well as  
(8-121)stronger and more desperate.  
(8-121)But by this time Bruce was very much fatigued,  
(8-121)and yet they dared not sit down to take any rest;  
(8-121)for whenever they stopt for an instant, they heard  
(8-121)the cry of the blood-hound behind them, and knew  
(8-121)by that, that their enemies were coming up fast  
(8-121)after them. At length, they came to a wood,  
(8-121)through which ran a small river. Then Bruce  
(8-121)said to his foster-brother, "Let us wade down this  
(8-121)stream for a great way, instead of going straight

[TG8-122, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 8, p. 122]

(8-122)across, and so this unhappy hound will lose the  
(8-122)scent; for if we were once clear of him, I should  
(8-122)not be afraid of getting away from the pursuers."  
(8-122)Accordingly the King and his attendant walked a  
(8-122)great way down the stream, taking care to keep  
(8-122)their feet in the water, which could not retain any  
(8-122)scent where they had stepped. Then they came  
(8-122)ashore on the farther side from the enemy, and  
(8-122)went deep into the wood before they stopped to  
(8-122)rest themselves. In the mean while, the hound  
(8-122)led John of Lorn straight to the place where the  
(8-122)King went into the water, but there the dog began  
(8-122)to be puzzled, not knowing where to go next; for  
(8-122)you are well aware that the running water could  
(8-122)not retain the scent of a man's foot, like that which  
(8-122)remains on turf. So, John of Lorn seeing the dog  
(8-122)was at fault, as it is called, that is, had lost the track

(8-122)of that which he pursued, he gave up the chase,  
(8-122)and returned to join with Aymer de Valance.  
(8-122)But King Robert's adventures were not yet  
(8-122)ended. His foster-brother and he had rested them-  
(8-122)selves in the wood, but they had got no food, and  
(8-122)were become extremely hungry. They walked on,  
(8-122)however, in hopes of coming to some habitation.  
(8-122)At length, in the midst of the forest, they met with  
(8-122)three men who looked like thieves or ruffians.  
(8-122)They were well armed, and one of them bore a  
(8-122)sheep on his back, which it seemed as if they had  
(8-122)just stolen. They saluted the King civilly; and  
(8-122)he, replying to their salutation, asked them where  
(8-122)they were going. The men answered, they were  
(8-122)seeking for Robert Bruce, for that they intended

[TG8-123, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 123]

(8-123)to join with him. The King answered, that if they  
(8-123)would go with him, he would conduct them where  
(8-123)they would find the Scottish King. Then the man  
(8-123)who had spoken, changed countenance, and Bruce,  
(8-123)who looked sharply at him, began to suspect that  
(8-123)the ruffian guessed who he was, and that he and  
(8-123)his companions had some design against his person,  
(8-123)in order to gain the reward which had been offered  
(8-123)for his life.  
(8-123)So he said to them, "My good friends, as we  
(8-123)are not well acquainted with each other, you must  
(8-123)go before us, and we will follow near to you."  
(8-123)"You have no occasion to suspect any harm  
(8-123)from us," answered the man.  
(8-123)"Neither do I suspect any," said Bruce; "but  
(8-123)this is the way in which I choose to travel."  
(8-123)The men did as he commanded, and thus they  
(8-123)travelled till they came together to a waste and

(8-123)ruinous cottage, where the men proposed to dress  
(8-123)some part of the sheep, which their companion was  
(8-123)carrying. The King was glad to hear of food; but  
(8-123)he insisted that there should be two fires kindled,  
(8-123)one for himself and his foster-brother, at one end of  
(8-123)the house, the other at the other end for their three  
(8-123)companions. The men did as he desired. They  
(8-123)broiled a quarter of mutton for themselves, and  
(8-123)gave another to the King and his attendant. They  
(8-123)were obliged to eat it without bread or salt; but  
(8-123)as they were very hungry, they were glad to get  
(8-123)food in any shape, and partook of it very heartily.  
(8-123)Then so heavy a drowsiness fell on King Robert,  
(8-123)that, for all the danger he was in, he could

[TG8-124, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p.124]

(8-124)not resist an inclination to sleep. But first, he desired  
(8-124)his foster-brother to watch while he slept, for  
(8-124)he had great suspicion of their new acquaintances.  
(8-124)His foster-brother promised to keep awake, and  
(8-124)did his best to keep his word. But the King had  
(8-124)not been long asleep ere his foster-brother fell into  
(8-124)a deep slumber also, for he had undergone as much  
(8-124)fatigue as the King. When the three villains saw  
(8-124)the King and his attendant asleep, they made signs  
(8-124)to each other, and rising up at once, drew their  
(8-124)swords with the purpose to kill them both. But  
(8-124)the King slept but lightly, and for as little noise as  
(8-124)the traitors made in rising, he was awakened by it,  
(8-124)and starting up, drew his sword, and went to meet  
(8-124)them. (8-124)At the same moment he pushed his foster-  
(8-124)brother with his foot, to awaken him, and he got on  
(8-124)his feet; but ere he got his eyes cleared to see  
(8-124)what was about to happen, one of the ruffians that  
(8-124)were advancing to slay the King, killed him with

(8-124)a stroke of his sword. The King was now alone,  
(8-124)one man against three, and in the greatest danger  
(8-124)of his life; but his amazing strength, and the good  
(8-124)armour which he wore, freed him once more from  
(8-124)this great peril, and he killed the three men, one  
(8-124)after another. He then left the cottage, very sorrowful  
(8-124)for the death of his faithful foster-brother,  
(8-124)and took his direction towards the place where he  
(8-124)had appointed his men to assemble after their dispersion.  
(8-124)It was now near night, and the place of  
(8-124)meeting being a farm-house, he went boldly into it,  
(8-124)where he found the mistress, an old true-hearted  
(8-124)Scotswoman, sitting alone. Upon seeing a stranger

[TG8-125, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 8, p. 125]

(8-125)enter, she asked him who and what he was.  
(8-125)The King answered that he was a traveller, who  
(8-125)was journeying through the country.  
(8-125)"All travellers," answered the good woman, are  
(8-125)welcome here, for the sake of one."  
(8-125)"And who is that one," said the King, "for  
(8-125)whose sake you make all travellers welcome?"  
(8-125)"It is our rightful king, Robert the Bruce,"  
(8-125)answered the mistress, "who is the lawful lord of  
(8-125)this country; and although he is now pursued and  
(8-125)hunted after with hounds and horns, I hope to live  
(8-125)to see him King over all Scotland."  
(8-125)"Since you love him so well, dame," said the  
(8-125)King, "know that you see him before you. I am  
(8-125)Robert the Bruce."  
(8-125)"You!" said the good woman, in great surprise;  
(8-125)"and wherefore are you thus alone? -- where  
(8-125)are all your men?"  
(8-125)"I have none with me at this moment," answered  
(8-125)Bruce, "and therefore I must travel alone."

(8-125)"But that shall not be," said the brave old dame,  
(8-125)"for I have two stout sons, gallant and trusty men,  
(8-125)who shall be your servants for life and death."  
(8-125)So she brought her two sons, and though she  
(8-125)well knew the dangers to which she exposed them,  
(8-125)she made them swear fidelity to the King; and  
(8-125)they afterwards became high officers in his service.  
(8-125)Now, the loyal old woman was getting every  
(8-125)thing ready for the King's supper, when suddenly  
(8-125)there was a great trampling of horses heard round  
(8-125)the house. They thought it must be some of the  
(8-125)English, or John of Lorn's men, and the good wife

[TG8-126, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 8, p. 126]

(8-126)called upon her sons to fight to the last for King  
(8-126)Robert. But shortly after, they heard the voice  
(8-126)of the Good Lord James of Douglas, and of Edward  
(8-126)Bruce, the King's brother, who had come  
(8-126)with a hundred and fifty horsemen to this farm-  
(8-126)house, according to the instructions that the King  
(8-126)had left with them at parting.  
(8-126)Robert the Bruce was right joyful to meet his  
(8-126)brother, and his faithful friend Lord James; and  
(8-126)had no sooner found himself once more at the head  
(8-126)of such a considerable body of followers, than, forgetting  
(8-126)hunger and weariness, he began to enquire  
(8-126)where the enemy who had pursued them so long  
(8-126)had taken up their abode for the night; "for," said  
(8-126)he, "as they must suppose us totally scattered and  
(8-126)fled, it is likely that they will think themselves  
(8-126)quite secure, and disperse themselves into distant  
(8-126)quarters, and keep careless watch."  
(8-126)"That is very true," answered James of Douglas,  
(8-126)"for I passed a village where there are two  
(8-126)hundred of them quartered, who had placed no

(8-126)sentinels; and if you have a mind to make haste,  
(8-126)we may surprise them this very night, and do them  
(8-126)more mischief than they have been able to do us  
(8-126)during all this day's chase."  
(8-126)Then there was nothing but mount and ride;  
(8-126)and as the Scots came by surprise on the body of  
(8-126)English whom Douglas had mentioned, and rushed  
(8-126)suddenly into the village where they were quartered,  
(8-126)they easily dispersed and cut them to pieces;  
(8-126)thus, as Douglas had said, doing their pursuers  
(8-126)more injury than they themselves had received

[TG8-127, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 8, p. 127]

(8-127)during the long and severe pursuit of the preceding  
(8-127)day.  
(8-127)consequence of these successes of King  
(8-127)Robert was, that soldiers came to join him on all  
(8-127)sides, and that he obtained several victories both  
(8-127)over Sir Aymer de Valence, Lord Clifford, and  
(8-127)other English commanders; until at length the  
(8-127)English were afraid to venture into the open country  
(8-127)as formerly, unless when they could assemble  
(8-127)themselves in considerable bodies. They thought  
(8-127)it safer to lie still in the towns and castles which  
(8-127)they had garrisoned, and wait till the King of  
(8-127)England should once more come to their assistance  
(8-127)with a powerful army.

[TG9-128, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 9, p. 128]

(9-128)When King Edward the First heard that  
(9-128)Scotland was again in arms against him, he marched  
(9-128)down to the Borders, as I have already told you,  
(9-128)with many threats of what he would do to avenge  
(9-128)himself on Bruce and his party, whom he called

(9-128)rebels. But he was now old and feeble, and while  
(9-128)he was making his preparations, he was taken very  
(9-128)ill, and after lingering a long time, at length died  
(9-128)on the 6th July, 1307, at a place in Cumberland  
(9-128)called Burgh upon the Sands, in full sight of  
(9-128)Scotland, and not three miles from its frontier.  
(9-128)His hatred to that country was so inveterate, that  
(9-128)his thoughts of revenge seemed to occupy his  
(9-128)mind on his deathbed. He made his son promise  
(9-128)never to make peace with Scotland until the nation  
(9-128)was subdued. He gave also very singular directions  
(9-128)concerning the disposal of his dead body.  
(9-128)He ordered that it should be boiled in a cauldron  
(9-128)till the flesh parted from the bones, and that then  
(9-128)the bones should be wrapped up in a bull's hide,  
(9-128)and carried at the head of the English army, as

[TG9-129, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 9, p. 129]

(9-129)often as the Scots attempted to recover their  
(9-129)freedom. He thought that he had inflicted such  
(9-129)distresses on the Scots, and invaded and defeated  
(9-129)them so often, that his very dead bones would  
(9-129)terrify them. His son, Edward the Second, did  
(9-129)not choose to execute this strange injunction, but  
(9-129)caused his father to be buried in Westminster  
(9-129)Abbey; where his tomb is still to be seen, bearing  
(9-129)for an inscription, HERE LIES THE MANNER OF THE  
(9-129)SCOTTISH NATION. And, indeed, it true, that  
(9-129)during his life he did them as much injury as a  
(9-129)hammer does to the substances which it dashes to  
(9-129)pieces.  
(9-129)Edward the Second was neither so brave nor so  
(9-129)wise as his father; on the contrary, he was a weak  
(9-129)prince, fond of idle amusements, and worthless  
(9-129)favourites. It was lucky for Scotland that such

(9-129)was his disposition. He marched a little way into  
(9-129)Scotland with the large army which Edward the  
(9-129)First had collected, but went back again without  
(9-129)fighting; which gave great encouragement to  
(9-129)Bruce's party.  
(9-129)Several of the Scottish nobility now took arms  
(9-129)in different parts of the country, declared for King  
(9-129)Robert, and fought against the English troops and  
(9-129)garrisons. The most distinguished of these was  
(9-129)the Good Lord James of Douglas, whom we have  
(9-129)often mentioned before. Some of his most memorable  
(9-129)exploits respected his own castle of Douglas,  
(9-129)in which, being an important fortress, and strongly

[TG9-130, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 130]

(9-130)situated, the English had placed a large garrison.  
(9-130)James of Douglas saw, with great displeasure, his  
(9-130)castle filled with English soldiers, and stored with  
(9-130)great quantities of corn, and cattle, and wine, and  
(9-130)ale, and other supplies which they were preparing,  
(9-130)to enable them to assist the English army with  
(9-130)provisions. So he resolved, if possible, to be revenged  
(9-130)upon the captain of the garrison and his  
(9-130)soldiers.  
(9-130)For this purpose, Douglas went in disguise to  
(9-130)the house of one of his old servants, called Thomas  
(9-130)Dickson, a strong, faithful, and bold man, and laid  
(9-130)a scheme for taking the castle. A holiday was approaching,  
(9-130)called Palm Sunday. Upon this day,  
(9-130)it was common, in the Roman Catholic  
(9-130)times, that the people went  
(9-130)to church in procession, with green  
(9-130)boughs in their hands. Just as the English soldiers,  
(9-130)who had marched down from the castle, got  
(9-130)into church, one of Lord James's followers raised



(9-130)the cry of Douglas! Douglas!, which was the  
(9-130)shout with which that family always began battle.  
(9-130)Thomas Dickson, and some friends whom he had  
(9-130)collected, instantly drew their swords, and killed  
(9-130)the first Englishman whom they met. But as the  
(9-130)signal had been given too soon, Dickson was borne  
(9-130)down and slain. Douglas and his men presently  
(9-130)after forced their way into the church. The English  
(9-130)soldiers attempted to defend themselves; but,  
(9-130)being taken by surprise and unprepared, they were,  
(9-130)for the greater part, killed or made prisoners, and  
(9-130)that so suddenly, and with so little noise, that their

[TG9-131, Tales of a Grandfather, Chap. 9, p. 131]

(9-131)companions in the castle never heard of it. So that  
(9-131)when Douglas and his men approached the castle  
(9-131)gate, they found it open, and that part of the garrison  
(9-131)which were left at home, busied cooking provisions  
(9-131)for those that were at church. So Lord  
(9-131)James got possession of his own castle without  
(9-131)difficulty, and he and his men eat up all the good  
(9-131)dinner which the English had made ready. But  
(9-131)Douglas dared not stay there, lest the English  
(9-131)should come in great force and besiege him; and  
(9-131)therefore he resolved to destroy all the provisions  
(9-131)which the English had stored up in the castle, and  
(9-131)to render the place unavailing to them.  
(9-131)It must be owned he executed this purpose in  
(9-131)a very cruel and shocking manner, for he was  
(9-131)much enraged at the death of Thomas Dickson.  
(9-131)He caused all the barrels containing flour, meal,  
(9-131)wheat, and malt, to be knocked in pieces, and their  
(9-131)contents mixed on the floor; then he staved the  
(9-131)great hogsheads of wine and ale, and mixed the  
(9-131)liquor with the stores; and, last of all, he killed

(9-131)his prisoners, and flung the dead bodies among this  
(9-131)disgusting heap, which his men called, in derision  
(9-131)of the English, the Douglas Larder. Then he flung  
(9-131)dead horses into the well to destroy it -- after  
(9-131)which he set fire to the castle; and finally marched  
(9-131)away, and took refuge with his followers in the hills  
(9-131)and forests. "He loved better," he said, "to hear  
(9-131)the lark sing than the mouse squeak." That is, he  
(9-131)loved better to keep in the open field with his men,  
(9-131)than to shut himself and them up in castles.  
(9-131)When Clifford, the English general, heard what

[TG9-132, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 9, p. 132]

(9-132)had happened, he came to Douglas Castle with a  
(9-132)great body of men, and rebuilt all the defences  
(9-132)which Lord James had destroyed, and cleared out  
(9-132)the well, and put a good soldier, named Thirlwall,  
(9-132)to command the garrison, and desired him to be on  
(9-132)his guard, for he suspected that Lord James would  
(9-132)again attack him. And, indeed, Douglas, who did  
(9-132)not like to see the English in his father's castle,  
(9-132)was resolved to take the first opportunity of destroying  
(9-132)this garrison, as he had done the former.  
(9-132)For this purpose he again had recourse to stratagem.  
(9-132)He laid a part of his followers in ambush  
(9-132)in the wood, and sent fourteen men, disguised like  
(9-132)countrymen, driving cattle past the gates of the  
(9-132)castle. As soon as Thirlwall saw this, he swore  
(9-132)that he would plunder the Scots drovers of their  
(9-132)cattle, and came out with a considerable part of his  
(9-132)garrison, for that purpose. He had followed the  
(9-132)cattle past the place where Douglas was lying concealed,  
(9-132)when all of a sudden the Scotsmen threw  
(9-132)off their carriers' cloaks, and appearing in armour,  
(9-132)cried the cry of Douglas, and, turning back suddenly,

(9-132)ran to meet the pursuers; and before Thirlwall  
(9-132)could make any defence, he heard the same  
(9-132)war-cry behind him, and saw Douglas coming up  
(9-132)with those Scots who had been lying in ambush.  
(9-132)Thirlwall himself was killed, fighting bravely in the  
(9-132)middle of his enemies, and only a very few of his  
(9-132)men found their way back to the castle.  
(9-132)When Lord James had thus slain two English  
(9-132)commanders or governors of his castle, and was  
(9-132)known to have made a vow that he would be

[TG9-133, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 9, p. 133]

(9-133)revenged on any one who should dare to take possession  
(9-133)of his father's house, men became afraid;  
(9-133)and the fortress was called, both in England and  
(9-133)Scotland, the Perilous Castle of Douglas, because  
(9-133)it proved so dangerous to any Englishman who was  
(9-133)stationed there. Now, in those warlike times,  
(9-133)Master Littlejohn, you must know, that the ladies  
(9-133)would not marry any man who was not very brave  
(9-133)and valiant, so that a coward, let him be ever so  
(9-133)rich or high-born, was held in universal contempt.  
(9-133)And thus it became the fashion for the ladies to  
(9-133)demand proofs of the courage of their lovers, and  
(9-133)for those knights who desired to please the ladies,  
(9-133)to try some extraordinary deed of arms, to show  
(9-133)their bravery and deserve their favour.  
(9-133)At this time we speak of, there was a young lady  
(9-133)in England, whom many knights and noblemen  
(9-133)asked in marriage, because she was extremely  
(9-133)wealthy, and very beautiful. Once upon a holiday  
(9-133)she made a great feast, to which she asked all her  
(9-133)lovers, and numerous other gallant knights; and  
(9-133)after the feast she arose, and told them that she  
(9-133)was much obliged to them for their good opinion

(9-133)of her, but as she desired to have for her husband  
(9-133)a man of the most incontestable bravery, she had  
(9-133)formed her resolution not to marry any one, save  
(9-133)one who should show his courage by defending the  
(9-133)Perilous Castle of Douglas against the Scots for a  
(9-133)year and a day. Now this made some silence  
(9-133)among the gentlemen present; for although the  
(9-133)lady was rich and beautiful, yet there was great  
(9-133)danger in placing themselves within the reach of

[TG9-134, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 134]

(9-134)the Good Lord James of Douglas. At last a brave  
(9-134)young knight started up and said, that for the love  
(9-134)of that lady he was willing to keep the Perilous  
(9-134)Castle for a year and a day, if the King pleased to  
(9-134)give him leave. The King of England was satisfied,  
(9-134)and well pleased to get a brave man to hold a  
(9-134)place so dangerous. Sir John Wilton was the  
(9-134)name of this gallant knight. He kept the castle  
(9-134)very safely for some time; but Douglas at last, by a  
(9-134)stratagem, induced him to venture out with a part  
(9-134)of the garrison, and then set upon them and slew  
(9-134)them. Sir John Wilton himself was killed, and a  
(9-134)letter from the lady was found in his pocket.  
(9-134)Douglas was sorry for his unhappy end, and did  
(9-134)not put to death any of the prisoners as he had  
(9-134)formerly done, but dismissed them in safety to the  
(9-134)next English garrison.  
(9-134)Other great lords, besides Douglas, were now  
(9-134)exerting themselves to attack and destroy the  
(9-134)English. Amongst those was Sir Thomas Randolph,  
(9-134)whose mother was a sister of King Robert.  
(9-134)He had joined with the Bruce when he first took  
(9-134)up arms. Afterwards being made prisoner by the  
(9-134)English, when the King was defeated at Methven,

(9-134)as I told you, Sir Thomas Randolph was obliged  
(9-134)to join the English to save his life. He remained

[TG9-135, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 9, p. 135]

(9-135)so constant to them, that he was in company with  
(9-135)Aymer de Valence and John of Lorn, when they  
(9-135)forced the Bruce to disperse his little band; and  
(9-135)he followed the pursuit so close, that he made his  
(9-135)uncle's standard-bearer prisoner, and took his banner.  
(9-135)Afterwards, however, he was himself made  
(9-135)prisoner, at a solitary house of Lyne-water, by the  
(9-135)Good Lord James Douglas, who brought him  
(9-135)captive to the King. Robert reproached his  
(9-135)nephew for having deserted his cause; and Randolph,  
(9-135)who was very hot-tempered, answered insolently,  
(9-135)and was sent by King Robert to prison.  
(9-135)Shortly after, the uncle and nephew were reconciled,  
(9-135)and Sir Thomas Randolph, created Earl of  
(9-135)Murray by the King, was ever afterwards one of  
(9-135)Bruce's best supporters. There was a sort of  
(9-135)rivalry between Douglas and him, which should do  
(9-135)the boldest and most hazardous actions. I will  
(9-135)just mention one of two circumstances, which will  
(9-135)show you what awful dangers were to be encountered  
(9-135)by these brave men, in order to free Scotland  
(9-135)from its enemies and invaders.  
(9-135)While Robert Bruce was gradually getting possession  
(9-135)of the country, and driving out the English,  
(9-135)Edinburgh, the principal town of Scotland, remained,  
(9-135)with its strong castle, in possession of the  
(9-135)invaders. Sir Thomas Randolph was extremely  
(9-135)desirous to gain this important place; but, as you  
(9-135)well know, the castle is situated on a very steep  
(9-135)and lofty rock, so that it is difficult or almost

[TG9-136, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 136]

(9-136)impossible even to get up to the foot of the walls,  
(9-136)much more to climb over them.  
(9-136)So while Randolph was considering what was  
(9-136)to be done, there came to him a Scottish gentleman  
(9-136)named Francis, who had joined Bruce's standard,  
(9-136)and asked to speak with him in private. He then  
(9-136)told Randolph, that in his youth he had lived in  
(9-136)the castle of Edinburgh, and that his father had  
(9-136)then been keeper of the fortress. It happened at  
(9-136)that time that Francis was much in love with a  
(9-136)lady, who lived in a part of the town beneath the  
(9-136)castle, which is called the Grassmarket. Now, as  
(9-136)he could not get out of the castle by day to see his  
(9-136)mistress, he had practiced a way of clambering by  
(9-136)night down the castle rock on the south side, and  
(9-136)returning at his pleasure; when he came to the  
(9-136)foot of the wall, he made use of a ladder to get  
(9-136)over it, as it was not very high at that point, those  
(9-136)who built it having trusted to the steepness of the  
(9-136)crag; and, for the same reason, no watch was  
(9-136)placed there. Francis had gone and come so frequently  
(9-136)in this dangerous manner, that, though it  
(9-136)was now long ago, he told Randolph he knew the  
(9-136)road so well, that he would undertake to guide a  
(9-136)small party of men by night to the bottom of the  
(9-136)wall; and as they might bring ladders with them,  
(9-136)there would be no difficulty in scaling it. The  
(9-136)great risk was, that of their being discovered by  
(9-136)the watchmen while in the act of ascending the  
(9-136)cliff, in which case every man of them must have  
(9-136)perished.  
(9-136)Nevertheless, Randolph did not hesitate to

[TG9-137, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 137]

(9-137)attempt the adventure. He took with him only  
(9-137)thirty men (you may be sure they were chosen for  
(9-137)activity and courage), and came one dark night to  
(9-137)the foot of the rock, which they began to ascend  
(9-137)under the guidance of Francis, who went before  
(9-137)them, upon his hands and feet, up one cliff, down  
(9-137)another, and round another, where there was scarce  
(9-137)room to support themselves. All the while, these  
(9-137)thirty men were obliged to follow in a line, one  
(9-137)after the other, by a path that was fitter for a cat  
(9-137)than a man. The noise of a stone falling, or a  
(9-137)word spoken from one to another, would have  
(9-137)alarmed the watchmen. They were obliged, therefore,  
(9-137)to move with the greatest precaution. When  
(9-137)they were far up the crag, and near the foundation  
(9-137)of the wall, they heard the guards going their  
(9-137)rounds, to see that all was safe in and about the  
(9-137)castle. Randolph and his party had nothing for it  
(9-137)but to lie close and quiet each man under the crag,  
(9-137)as he happened to be placed, and trust that the  
(9-137)guards would pass by without noticing them. And  
(9-137)while they were waiting in breathless alarm, they  
(9-137)got a new cause of fright. One of the soldiers of  
(9-137)the castle, willing to startle his comrades, suddenly  
(9-137)threw a stone from the wall, and cried out, "Aha,  
(9-137)I see you well!" The stone came thundering  
(9-137)down over the heads of Randolph and his men,  
(9-137)who naturally thought themselves discovered. If  
(9-137)they had stirred, or made the slightest noise, they  
(9-137)would have been entirely destroyed; for the soldiers  
(9-137)above might have killed every man of them,  
(9-137)merely by rolling down stones. But being courageous

(9-138)and chosen men, they remained quiet, and  
(9-138)the English soldiers, who thought their comrade  
(9-138)was merely playing them a trick (as, indeed, he  
(9-138)had not other meaning in what he did and said),  
(9-138)passed on, without farther examination.  
(9-138)Then Randolph and his men got up, and came  
(9-138)in haste to the foot of the wall, which was not  
(9-138)above twice a man's height in that place. They  
(9-138)planted the ladders they had brought, and Francis  
(9-138)mounted first to show them the way; Sir Andrew  
(9-138)Grey, a brave knight, followed him, and Randolph  
(9-138)himself was the third man who got over. Then  
(9-138)the rest followed. When once they were within  
(9-138)the walls, there was not so much to do, for the  
(9-138)garrison were asleep and unarmed, excepting the  
(9-138)watch, who were speedily destroyed. Thus was  
(9-138)Edinburgh castle taken in March, 1312-13.  
(9-138)It was not, however, only by the exertion of  
(9-138)great and powerful barons, like Randolph and  
(9-138)Douglas, that the freedom of Scotland was to be  
(9-138)accomplished. The stout yeomanry, and the bold  
(9-138)peasantry of the land, who were as desirous to  
(9-138)enjoy their cottages in honourable independence,  
(9-138)as the nobles were to reclaim their castles and  
(9-138)estates from the English, contributed their full  
(9-138)share in the efforts which were made to deliver  
(9-138)their country from the invaders. I will give you  
(9-138)one instance among many.  
(9-138)There was a strong castle near Linlithgow, or  
(9-138)Lithgow, as the word is more generally pronounced,  
(9-138)where an English governor, with a powerful  
(9-138)garrison, lay in readiness to support the English

[TG9-139, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 139]

(9-139)cause, and used to exercise much severity upon the



(9-139)Scots in the neighbourhood. There lived at not  
(9-139)great distance from this stronghold, a farmer, a  
(9-139)bold and stout man, whose name was Binnock, or  
(9-139)as it is now pronounced, Binning. This man saw  
(9-139)with great joy the progress which the Scots were  
(9-139)making in recovering their country from the English,  
(9-139)and resolved to do something to help his countrymen,  
(9-139)by getting possession, if it were possible, of  
(9-139)the castle of Lithgow. But the place was very  
(9-139)strong, situated by the side of a lake, defended not  
(9-139)only by gates, which were usually kept shut against  
(9-139)strangers, but also by a portcullis. A portcullis is  
(9-139)a sort of door formed of cross-bars of iron, like a  
(9-139)grate. It has not hinges like a door, but is drawn  
(9-139)up by pulleys, and let down when any danger  
(9-139)approaches. It may be let go in a moment, and  
(9-139)then falls down into the door-way; and as it has  
(9-139)great iron spikes at the bottom, it crushed all that  
(9-139)it lights upon; thus in case of a sudden alarm, a  
(9-139)portcullis may be let suddenly fall to defend the  
(9-139)entrance, when it is not possible to shut the gates.  
(9-139)Binnock knew this very well, but he resolved to be  
(9-139)provided against this risk also when he attempted  
(9-139)to surprise the castle. So he spoke with some bold  
(9-139)courageous countrymen, and engaged them in his  
(9-139)enterprise, which he accomplished thus.  
(9-139)Binnock had been accustomed to supply the garrison  
(9-139)of Linlithgow with hay, and he had been  
(9-139)ordered by the English governor to furnish some  
(9-139)cart-loads, of which they were in want. He promised  
(9-139)to bring it accordingly; but the night before

[TG9-140, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 140]

(9-140)he drove the hay to the castle, he stationed a party  
(9-140)of his friends, as well armed as possible, near the

(9-140)entrance, where they could not be seen by the  
(9-140)garrison, and gave them directions that they should  
(9-140)come to his assistance as soon as they should hear  
(9-140)him cry a signal, which was to be, -- "Call all,  
(9-140)call all!" Then he loaded a great waggon with  
(9-140)hay, but in the waggon he placed eight strong  
(9-140)men, well armed, lying flat on their breasts, and  
(9-140)covered over with hay, so that they could not be  
(9-140)seen. He himself walked carelessly beside the  
(9-140)waggon; and he chose the stoutest and bravest of  
(9-140)his servants to be the driver, who carried at his belt  
(9-140)a strong axe or hatchet. In this way Binnock  
(9-140)approached the castle early in the morning; and  
(9-140)the watchman, who only saw two men, Binnock  
(9-140)being one of them, with a cart of hay, which they  
(9-140)expected, opened the gates, and raised up the  
(9-140)portcullis, to permit them to enter the castle.  
(9-140)But as soon as the cart had gotten under the gateway,  
(9-140)Binnock made a sign to his servant, who  
(9-140)with his axe suddenly cut asunder the soam, that  
(9-140)is, the yoke which fastens the horses to the cart, and  
(9-140)the horses finding themselves free, naturally started  
(9-140)forward, the cart remaining behind under the arch  
(9-140)of the gate. At the same moment, Binnock cried  
(9-140)as loud as he could, "Call all, call all!" and drawing  
(9-140)the sword, which he had under his country  
(9-140)habit, he killed the porter. The armed men then  
(9-140)jumped up from under the hay where they lay concealed,  
(9-140)and rushed on the English guard. The  
(9-140)Englishmen tried to shut the gates, but they could

[TG9-141, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 141]

(9-141)not, because the cart of hay remained in the gateway,  
(9-141)and prevented the folding-doors from being  
(9-141)closed. The portcullis was also let fall, but the

(9-141)grating was caught on the cart, and so could not  
(9-141)drop to the ground. The men who were in am-  
(9-141)bush near the gate, hearing the cry, "Call all, call  
(9-141)all," ran to assist those who had leaped out from  
(9-141)among the hay; the castle was taken, and all the  
(9-141)Englishmen killed or made prisoners. King Robert  
(9-141)rewarded Binnock by bestowing on him an  
(9-141)estate, which his posterity long afterwards enjoyed.  
(9-141)Perhaps you may be tired, my dear child, of  
(9-141)such stories; yet I will tell you how the great and  
(9-141)important castle of Roxburgh was taken from the  
(9-141)English, and then we will pass to other subjects.  
(9-141)You must know Roxburgh was then a very  
(9-141)large castle, situated near where two fine rivers,  
(9-141)the Tweed and the Teviot, join each other. Being  
(9-141)within five or six miles of England, the English  
(9-141)were extremely desirous of retaining it, and the  
(9-141)Scots equally eager to obtain possession of it. I  
(9-141)will tell you how it was taken.  
(9-141)It was upon the night of what is called Shrovetide,  
(9-141)a holiday which Roman Catholics paid great  
(9-141)respect to, and solemnized with much gaiety and  
(9-141)feasting. Most of the garrison of Roxburgh castle  
(9-141)were drinking and carousing, but still they had set  
(9-141)watches on the battlements of the castle, in case of  
(9-141)any sudden attack; for, as the Scots had succeeded  
(9-141)in so many enterprises of the kind, as Douglas  
(9-141)was known to be in the neighbourhood, they conceived

[TG9-142, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 142]

(9-142)themselves obliged to keep a very strict  
(9-142)guard.  
(9-142)An Englishwoman, the wife of one of the officers,  
(9-142)was sitting on the battlements with her child in her  
(9-142)arms; and looking out on the fields below, she saw

(9-142)some black objects, like a herd of cattle, straggling  
(9-142)near the foot of the wall, and approaching the ditch  
(9-142)or moat of the castle. She pointed them out to  
(9-142)the sentinel, and asked him what they were. ---  
(9-142)"Pooh, pooh," said the soldier, "it is farmer such  
(9-142)a one's cattle" (naming a man whose farm lay near  
(9-142)to the castle); "the good man is keeping a jolly  
(9-142)Shrovetide, and has forgot to shut up his bullocks  
(9-142)in their yard; but if the Douglas come across them  
(9-142)before morning, he is likely to rue his negligence."  
(9-142)Now these creeping objects which they saw from  
(9-142)the castle wall were no real cattle, but Douglas  
(9-142)himself and his soldiers, who had put black cloaks  
(9-142)above their armour, and were creeping about on  
(9-142)hands and feet, in order, without being observed,  
(9-142)to get so near to the foot of the castle wall as to be  
(9-142)able to set ladders to it. The poor woman, who  
(9-142)knew nothing of this, sat quietly on the wall, and  
(9-142)began to sing to her child. You must know that  
(9-142)the name of Douglas had become so terrible to the  
(9-142)English, that the women used to frighten their  
(9-142)children with it, and say to them when they behaved  
(9-142)ill, that they "would make the Black Douglas  
(9-142)take them." And this soldier's wife was singing  
(9-142)to her child,  
(9-142) "Hush ye, hush ye, little pet ye,  
(9-142) Hush ye, hush ye, do not fret ye,  
(9-142) The Black Douglas shall not get ye."

[TG9-143, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 143]

(9-143)"You are not so sure of that," said a voice close  
(9-143)beside her. She felt at the same time a heavy  
(9-143)hand, with an iron glove, laid on her shoulder, and  
(9-143)when she looked round, she saw the very Black  
(9-143)Douglas she had been singing about, standing close

(9-143)beside her, a tall, swarthy, strong man. At the  
(9-143)same time, another Scotsman was seen ascending  
(9-143)the walls, near to the sentinel. The soldier gave  
(9-143)the alarm, and rushed at the Scotsman, whose name  
(9-143)was Simon Ledehouse, with his lance; but Simon  
(9-143)parried the stroke, and closing with the sentinel,  
(9-143)struck him a deadly blow with his dagger. The  
(9-143)rest of the Scots followed up to assist Douglas and  
(9-143)Ledehouse, and the castle was taken. Many of  
(9-143)the soldiers were put to death, but Douglas  
(9-143)protected the woman and the child. I dare say she  
(9-143)made no more songs about the Black Douglas.  
(9-143)While Douglas, Randolph, and other true-hearted  
(9-143)patriots, were thus taking castles and strong-  
(9-143)holds from the English, King Robert, who had  
(9-143)now a considerable army under his command,  
(9-143)marched through the country, beating and dispersing  
(9-143)such bodies of English as he met on his  
(9-143)way. He went to the north country, where he  
(9-143)conquered the great and powerful family of Comyn,  
(9-143)who retained strong ill-will against him for having  
(9-143)slain their relation, the Red Comyn, in the church  
(9-143)at Dumfries. They had joined the English with  
(9-143)all their forces; but now, as the Scots began to  
(9-143)get the upperhand, they were very much distressed.  
(9-143)Bruce caused more than thirty of them  
(9-143)to be beheaded in one day, and the place where

[TG9-144, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 144]

(9-144)they are buried is called "the Grave of the headless  
(9-144)Comyns."  
(9-144)Neither did Bruce forget or forgive John  
(9-144)M'Dougal of Lorn, who had defeated him at Dalry,  
(9-144)and very nearly made him prisoner, or slain  
(9-144)him, by the hands of his vassals, the M'Androssers,

(9-144)and had afterwards pursued him with a blood-  
(9-144)hound. When John of Lorn heard that Bruce  
(9-144)was marching against him, he hoped to defend  
(9-144)himself by taking possession of a very strong pass  
(9-144)on the side of one of the largest mountains in  
(9-144)Scotland, Cruachen Ben. The ground was very  
(9-144)strait, having lofty rocks on the one hand, and on  
(9-144)the other deep precipices, sinking down on a great  
(9-144)lake called Lochawe; so that John of Lorn thought  
(9-144)himself perfectly secure, as he could not be attacked  
(9-144)except in front, and by a very difficult path. But  
(9-144)King Robert, when he saw how his enemies were  
(9-144)posted, sent a party of light-armed archers, under  
(9-144)command of Douglas, with directions to go, by a  
(9-144)distant and difficult road, around the northern side  
(9-144)of the hill, and thus to attack the men of Lorn in  
(9-144)the rear as well as in front; that is, behind, as well  
(9-144)as before. He had signals made when Douglas  
(9-144)arrived at the place appointed. The King then  
(9-144)advanced upon the Lorn men in front, when they  
(9-144)raised a shout of defiance, and began to shoot  
(9-144)arrows and roll stones down the path, with great  
(9-144)confidence in the security of their own position.  
(9-144)But when they were attacked by the Douglas and  
(9-144)his archers in the rear, the soldiers of M'Dougal  
(9-144)lost courage and fled. Many were slain among the

[TG9-145, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 145]

(9-145)rocks and precipices, and many were drowned in  
(9-145)the lake, and the great river which runs out of it.  
(9-145)John of Lorn only escaped by means of his boat,  
(9-145)which he had in readiness upon the lake. Thus  
(9-145)King Robert had full revenge upon him, and  
(9-145)deprived him of a great part of his territory.  
(9-145)The English now possessed scarcely any place of

(9-145)importance in Scotland, excepting Stirling, which  
(9-145)was besieged, or rather blockaded, by Edward  
(9-145)Bruce, the King's brother. To blockade a town or  
(9-145)castle, is to quarter an army around it, so as to prevent  
(9-145)those within from getting provisions. This was  
(9-145)done by the Scots before Stirling, till Sir Philip  
(9-145)Mowbray, who commanded the castle, finding that  
(9-145)he was like to be reduced to extremity for want of  
(9-145)provisions, made an agreement with Edward Bruce  
(9-145)that he would surrender the place, providing he  
(9-145)were not relieved by the king of England before  
(9-145)midsummer. Sir Edward agreed to these terms,  
(9-145)and allowed Mowbray to go to London, to tell King  
(9-145)Edward of the conditions he had made. But when  
(9-145)King Robert heard what his brother had done, he  
(9-145)thought it was too great a risk, since it obliged  
(9-145)him to venture a battle with the full strength of  
(9-145)Edward II, who had under him England, Ireland,  
(9-145)Wales, and great part of France, and could within  
(9-145)the time allowed assemble a much more powerful  
(9-145)army than the Scots could, even if all Scotland  
(9-145)were fully under the King's authority. Sir Edward  
(9-145)answered his brother with his naturally audacious  
(9-145)spirit, "Let Edward bring every man he has, we  
(9-145)will fight them, were they more." The King

[TG9-146, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 9, p. 146]

(9-146)admired his courage, though it was mingled with  
(9-146)rashness. --- "Since it is so, brother," he said, "we  
(9-146)will manfully abide battle, and assemble all who  
(9-146)love us, and value the freedom of Scotland, to  
(9-146)come with all the men they have, and help us to  
(9-146)oppose King Edward, should he come with his  
(9-146)army to rescue Stirling."

[TG10-147, Tales of Grandfather, chap. 10, p. 147]

(10-147)KING EDWARD II, as we have already said, was  
(10-147)not a wise and brave man like his father, but a foolish  
(10-147)prince, who was influenced by unworthy favourites,  
(10-147)and thought more of pleasure than of governing  
(10-147)his kingdom. His father Edward I. would  
(10-147)have entered Scotland at the head of a large army  
(10-147)before he had left Bruce time to conquer back so  
(10-147)much of the country. But we have seen, that,  
(10-147)very fortunately for the Scots, that wise and skilful,  
(10-147)though ambitious King, died when he was on  
(10-147)the point of marching into Scotland. His son  
(10-147)Edward had afterwards neglected the Scottish  
(10-147)war, and thus lost the opportunity of defeating  
(10-147)Bruce, when his force was small. But now when  
(10-147)Sir Philip Mowbray, the governor of Stirling, came  
(10-147)to London, to tell the King, that Stirling, the last  
(10-147)Scottish town of importance which remained in  
(10-147)possession of the English, was to be surrendered if  
(10-147)it were not relieved by force of arms before mid-  
(10-147)summer, then all the English nobles called out, it  
(10-147)would be a sin and shame to permit the fair conquest

[TG10-148, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 10, p. 148]

(10-148)which Edward I had made, to be forfeited  
(10-148)to the Scots for want of fighting. It was,  
(10-148)therefore, resolved, that the King should go himself to  
(10-148)Scotland, with as great forces as he could possibly  
(10-148)muster.  
(10-148)King Edward the Second, therefore, assembled  
(10-148)one of the greatest armies which a King of England  
(10-148)ever commanded. There were troops brought  
(10-148)from all his dominions. Many brave soldiers from  
(10-148)the French provinces which the King of England



(10-148)possessed in France, --- many Irish, many Welsh,--  
(10-148)and all the great English nobles and barons, with  
(10-148)their followers, were assembled in one great army.  
(10-148)The number was not less than one hundred thousand  
(10-148)men.  
(10-148)King Robert the Bruce summoned all his nobles  
(10-148)and barons to join him, when he heard of the great  
(10-148)preparation which the King of England was  
(10-148)making. They were not so numerous as the English  
(10-148)by many thousand men. In fact, his whole  
(10-148)army did not very much exceed thirty thousand,  
(10-148)and they were much worse armed than the wealthy  
(10-148)Englishmen; but then, Robert, who was at their  
(10-148)head, was one of the most expert generals of the  
(10-148)time; and the officers he had under him, were his  
(10-148)brother Edward, his nephew Randolph, his faithful  
(10-148)follower the Douglas, and other brave and experienced  
(10-148)leaders, who commanded the same men that  
(10-148)had been accustomed to fight and gain victories  
(10-148)under every disadvantage of situation and numbers.  
(10-148)The King on his part, studied how he might  
(10-148)supply, by address and stratagem, what he wanted

[TG10-149, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 10, p. 149]

(10-149)in numbers and strength. He knew the superiority  
(10-149)of the English, both in their heavy-armed  
(10-149)cavalry, which were much better mounted and  
(10-149)armed than that of the Scots, and in their archers,  
(10-149)who were better trained than any others in the  
(10-149)world. Both these advantages he resolved to provide  
(10-149)against. With this purpose, he led his army  
(10-149)down into a plain near Stirling, called the Park,  
(10-149)near which, and beneath it, the English army must  
(10-149)needs pass through a boggy country, broken with  
(10-149)water-courses, while the Scots occupied hard dry

(10-149)ground. He then caused all the ground upon the  
(10-149)front of his line of battle, where cavalry were likely  
(10-149)to act, to be dug full of holes, about as deep as a  
(10-149)man's knee. They were filled with light brushwood,  
(10-149)and the turf was laid on the top, so that it  
(10-149)appeared a plain field, while in reality it was all  
(10-149)full of these pits as a honeycomb is of holes. He  
(10-149)also, it is said, caused steel spikes, called calthrops,  
(10-149)to be scattered up and down in the plain, where  
(10-149)the English cavalry were most likely to advance,  
(10-149)trusting in that manner to lame and destroy their  
(10-149)horses.  
(10-149)When the Scottish army was drawn up, the line  
(10-149)stretched north and south. On the south, it was  
(10-149)terminated by the banks of the brook called Bannockburn,  
(10-149)which are so rocky, that no troops could  
(10-149)attack them there. On the left, the Scottish line  
(10-149)extended near to the town of Stirling. Bruce  
(10-149)reviewed his troops very carefully; all the useless  
(10-149)servants, drivers of carts, and such like, of whom  
(10-149)there were very many, he ordered to go behind a

[TG10-150, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 10, p. 150]

(10-150)height, afterwards, in memory of the event, called  
(10-150)the Gillies' hill, that is, the Servants' hill. He  
(10-150)then spoke to the soldiers, and expressed his determination  
(10-150)to gain the victory, or to lose his life on  
(10-150)the field of battle. He desired that all those who  
(10-150)did not propose to fight to the last, should leave  
(10-150)the field before the battle began, and that none  
(10-150)should remain except those who were determined  
(10-150)to take the issue of victory or death, as God should  
(10-150)send it.  
(10-150)When the main body of his army was thus placed  
(10-150)in order, the King posted Randolph, with a body of

(10-150)horse, near to the church of St Ninian's, commanding  
(10-150)him to use the utmost diligence to prevent any  
(10-150)succours from being thrown into Stirling castle.  
(10-150)He then despatched James of Douglas, and Sir  
(10-150)Robert Keith, the Mareschal of the Scottish army,  
(10-150)in order that they might survey, as nearly as they  
(10-150)could, the English force, which was now approaching  
(10-150)from Falkirk. They returned with information,  
(10-150)that the approach of that vast host was one of the  
(10-150)most beautiful and terrible sights which could be  
(10-150)seen, -- that the whole country seemed covered with  
(10-150)men-at-arms on horse and foot, -- that the number  
(10-150)of standards, banners, and pennons (all flags of different  
(10-150)kinds), made so gallant a show, that the bravest  
(10-150)and most numerous host in Christendom might  
(10-150)be alarmed to see King Edward moving against  
(10-150)them.  
(10-150)It was upon the 23d of June (1314) the King of  
(10-150)Scotland heard the news, that the English army  
(10-150)were approaching Stirling. He drew out his army,

[TG10-151, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 10, p. 151]

(10-151)therefore, in the order which he had before resolved  
(10-151)on. After a short time, Bruce, who was looking  
(10-151)out anxiously for the enemy, saw a body of English  
(10-151)cavalry trying to get into Stirling from the  
(10-151)eastward. This was the Lord Clifford, who, with a  
(10-151)chosen body of eight hundred horse, had been detached  
(10-151)to relieve the castle.

(10-151)"See, Randolph," said the King to his nephew,  
(10-151)"there is a rose fallen from your chaplet." By this  
(10-151)he meant, that Randolph had lost some honour, by  
(10-151)suffering the enemy to pass where he had been stationed  
(10-151)to hinder them. Randolph made no reply,  
(10-151)but rushed against Clifford with little more than

(10-151)half his number. The Scots were on foot. The  
(10-151)English turned to charge them with their lances, and  
(10-151)Randolph drew up his men in close order to receive  
(10-151)the onset. He seemed to be in so much danger, that  
(10-151)Douglas asked leave of the King to go and assist  
(10-151)him. The King refused him permission.  
(10-151)"Let Randolph," he said, "redeem his own  
(10-151)fault; I cannot break the order of battle for his  
(10-151)sake." Still the danger appeared greater, and the  
(10-151)English horse seemed entirely to encompass the  
(10-151)small handful of Scottish infantry. "So please  
(10-151)you," said Douglas to the King, "my heart will not  
(10-151)suffer me to stand idle and see Randolph perish --  
(10-151)I must go to his assistance." He rode off accordingly;  
(10-151)but long before they had reached the place  
(10-151)of combat, they saw the English horses galloping  
(10-151)off, many with empty saddles.  
(10-151)"Halt!" said Douglas to his men, "Randolph  
(10-151)has gained the day; since we were not soon enough

[TG10-152, Tales of a Grandfather, chap.10, p. 152]

(10-152)to help him in the battle, do not let us lessen his  
(10-152)glory by approaching the field." Now, that was  
(10-152)nobly done; especially as Douglas and Randolph  
(10-152)were always contending which should rise highest  
(10-152)in the good opinion of the King and the nation.  
(10-152)The van of the English army now came in sight,  
(10-152)and a number of their bravest knights drew near to  
(10-152)see what the Scots were doing. They saw King  
(10-152)Robert dressed in his armour, and distinguished by  
(10-152)a gold crown, which he wore over his helmet. He  
(10-152)was not mounted on his great war-horse, because  
(10-152)he did not expect to fight that evening. But he rode  
(10-152)on a little pony up and down the ranks of his army,  
(10-152)putting his men in order, and carried in his hand a

(10-152)sort of battle-axe made of steel. When the King  
(10-152)saw the English horsemen draw near, he advanced  
(10-152)a little before his own men, that he might look at  
(10-152)them more nearly.  
(10-152)There was a knight among the English, called  
(10-152)Sir Henry de Bohun, who thought this would be  
(10-152)a good opportunity to gain great fame to himself,  
(10-152)and put an end to the war, by killing King Robert.  
(10-152)The King being poorly mounted, and having no  
(10-152)lance, Bohun galloped on him suddenly and furiously,  
(10-152)thinking, with his long spear, and his tall  
(10-152)powerful horse, easily to bear him down to the  
(10-152)ground. King Robert saw him, and permitted him  
(10-152)to come very near, then suddenly turned his pony  
(10-152)a little to one side, so that Sir Henry missed him  
(10-152)with the lance-point, and was in the act of being  
(10-152)carried past him by the career of his horse. But  
(10-152)as he passed, King Robert rose up in his stirrups,

[TG10-153, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 10, p. 153]

(10-153)and struck Sir Henry on the head with his battle-axe  
(10-153)so terrible a blow, that it broke to pieces his  
(10-153)iron helmet as if it had been a nut-shell, and hurled  
(10-153)him from his saddle. He was dead before he  
(10-153)reached the ground. This gallant action was blamed  
(10-153)by the Scottish leaders, who thought Bruce ought  
(10-153)not to have exposed himself to so much danger  
(10-153)when the safety of the whole army depended on  
(10-153)him. The King only kept looking at his weapon,  
(10-153)which was injured by the force of the blow, and  
(10-153)said, "I have broken my good battle-axe."  
(10-153)The next morning, being the 24th June, at  
(10-153)break of day, the battle began in terrible earnest.  
(10-153)The English as they advanced saw the Scots getting  
(10-153)into line. The Abbot of Inchaffray walked

(10-153)through their ranks barefooted, and exhorted them  
(10-153)to fight for their freedom. They kneeled down as  
(10-153)he passed, and prayed to Heaven for victory.  
(10-153)King Edward, who saw this, called out, "They  
(10-153)kneel down--they are asking forgiveness." "Yes,"  
(10-153)said a celebrated English baron, called Ingelram  
(10-153)de Umphraville, "but they ask it from God,  
(10-153)not from us -- these men will conquer, or die upon the  
(10-153)field."  
(10-153)The English King ordered his men to begin  
(10-153)the battle. The archers then bent their bows, and  
(10-153)began to shoot so closely together, that the arrows  
(10-153)fell like flakes of snow on a Christmas day. They  
(10-153)killed many of the Scots, and might, as at Falkirk,  
(10-153)and other places, have decided the victory; but  
(10-153)Bruce, as I told you before, was prepared for  
(10-153)them. He had in readiness a body of men-at-arms,

[TG10-154, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 10, p. 154]

(10-154)well mounted, who rode at full gallop among the  
(10-154)archers, and as they had no weapons save their  
(10-154)bows and arrows, which they could not use when  
(10-154)they were attacked hand to hand, they were cut  
(10-154)down in great numbers by the Scottish horsemen,  
(10-154)and thrown into total confusion.  
(10-154)The fine English cavalry then advanced to support  
(10-154)their archers, and to attack the Scottish line.  
(10-154)But coming over the ground which was dug full of  
(10-154)pits, the horses fell into these holes, and the riders  
(10-154)lay tumbling about, without any means of defence,  
(10-154)and unable to rise, from the weight of their armour.  
(10-154)The Englishmen began to fall into general disorder;  
(10-154)and the Scottish King, bringing up more of his  
(10-154)forces, attacked and pressed them still more  
(10-154)closely.

(10-154)On a sudden, while the battle was obstinately  
(10-154)maintained on both sides, an event happened which  
(10-154)decided the victory. The servants and attendants  
(10-154)on the Scottish camp had, as I told you, been sent  
(10-154)behind the army to a place afterwards called the  
(10-154)Gillies' hill. But when they saw that their masters  
(10-154)were likely to gain the day, they rushed from  
(10-154)their place of concealment with such weapons as  
(10-154)they could get, that they might have their share in  
(10-154)the victory and in the spoil. The English, seeing  
(10-154)them come suddenly over the hill, mistook this  
(10-154)disorderly rabble for a new army coming up to  
(10-154)sustain the Scots, and, losing all heart, began to  
(10-154)shift every man for himself. Edward himself left  
(10-154)the field as fast as he could ride. A valiant knight,  
(10-154)Sir Giles de Argentine, much renowned in the

[TG10-155, Tales of a Grandfather, chap.10, p. 155]

(10-155)wars of Palestine, attended the King till he got  
(10-155)him out of the press of the combat. But he would  
(10-155)retreat no farther. "It is not my custom," he  
(10-155)said, "to fly." With that he took leave of the  
(10-155)King, set spurs to his horse, and calling out his  
(10-155)war-cry of Argentine! Argentine! he rushed into  
(10-155)the thickest of the Scottish ranks, and was killed.  
(10-155)The young Earl of Gloucester was also slain,  
(10-155)fighting valiantly. The Scots would have saved  
(10-155)him, but as he had not put on his armorial bearings,  
(10-155)they did not know him, and he was cut to pieces.  
(10-155)Edward first fled to Stirling castle, and entreated  
(10-155)admittance; but Sir Philip Mowbray, the governor,  
(10-155)reminded the fugitive Sovereign that he was obliged  
(10-155)to surrender the castle next day, so Edward was  
(10-155)fain to fly through the Torwood, closely pursued  
(10-155)by Douglas with a body of cavalry. An odd

(10-155)circumstance happened during the chase, which  
(10-155)showed how loosely some of the Scottish Barons  
(10-155)of that day held their political opinions. As Douglas  
(10-155)was riding furiously after Edward, he met a  
(10-155)Scottish knight, Sir Laurence Abernethy, with  
(10-155)twenty horse. Sir Laurence had hitherto owned  
(10-155)the English interest, and was bringing this band of  
(10-155)followers to serve King Edward's army. But  
(10-155)learning from Douglas that the English King was  
(10-155)entirely defeated, he changed sides on the spot  
(10-155)and was easily prevailed upon to join Douglas in  
(10-155)pursuing the unfortunate Edward, with the very  
(10-155)followers whom he had been leading to join his  
(10-155)standard.  
(10-155)Douglas and Abernethy continued the chase, not

[TG10-156, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 10, p. 156]

(10-156)giving King Edward time to alight from horse-back  
(10-156)even for an instant, and followed him as far as  
(10-156)Dunbar, where the English had still a friend, in the  
(10-156)governor, Patrick Earl of March. The earl received  
(10-156)Edward in his forlorn condition, and furnished  
(10-156)him with a fishing skiff, or small ship, in  
(10-156)which he escaped to England, having entirely lost  
(10-156)his fine army, and a great number of his bravest  
(10-156)nobles.  
(10-156)The English never before or afterwards, whether  
(10-156)in France or Scotland, lost so dreadful a battle as  
(10-156)that of Bannockburn, nor did the Scots ever gain one  
(10-156)of the same importance. Many of the best and  
(10-156)bravest of the English nobility and gentry, as I  
(10-156)have said, lay dead on the field; a great many more  
(10-156)were made prisoners; and the whole of King Edward's  
(10-156)immense army was dispersed or destroyed.  
(10-156)The English, after this great defeat, were no



(10-156)longer in a condition to support their pretensions to  
(10-156)be masters of Scotland, or to continue, as they had  
(10-156)done for nearly twenty years, to send armies into  
(10-156)that country to overcome it. On the contrary, they  
(10-156)became for a time scarce able to defend their own  
(10-156)frontiers against King Robert and his soldiers.  
(10-156)There were several battles fought within England  
(10-156)itself, in which the English had greatly the  
(10-156)worst. One of these took place near Mitton, in  
(10-156)Yorkshire. So many priests took part in the fight,  
(10-156)that the Scots called it the Chapter of Mitton, --

[TG10-157, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 10, p. 157]

(10-157)a meeting of the clergymen belonging to a cathedral  
(10-157)being called a Chapter. There was a great  
(10-157)slaughter in and after the action. The Scots laid  
(10-157)waste the country of England as far as the gates of  
(10-157)York, and enjoyed a considerable superiority over  
(10-157)their ancient enemies, who had so lately threatened  
(10-157)to make them subjects of England.  
(10-157)Thus did Robert Bruce arise from the condition  
(10-157)of an exile, hunted with bloodhounds like a stag or  
(10-157)beast of prey, to the rank of an independent sovereign,  
(10-157)universally acknowledged to be one of the  
(10-157)wisest and bravest kings who then lived. The nation  
(10-157)of Scotland was also raised once more from the  
(10-157)situation of a distressed and conquered province to  
(10-157)that of a free and independent state, governed by  
(10-157)its own laws, and subject to its own princes; and  
(10-157)although the country was, after the Bruce's death,  
(10-157)often subjected to great loss and distress, both by  
(10-157)the hostility of the English, and by the unhappy  
(10-157)civil wars among the Scots themselves, yet they  
(10-157)never afterwards lost the freedom for which Wallace  
(10-157)had laid down his life, and which King Robert

(10-157)had recovered, not less by his wisdom than by his  
(10-157)weapons. And therefore most just it is, that while  
(10-157)the country of Scotland retains any recollection of  
(10-157)its history, the memory of those brave warriors and  
(10-157)faithful patriots should be remembered with honour  
(10-157)and gratitude.

[TG11-159, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 11, p. 159]

(11-159)You will be naturally curious to hear what became  
(11-159)of Edward, the brother of Robert Bruce, who  
(11-159)was so courageous, and at the same time so rash.  
(11-159)You must know that the Irish, at that time, had  
(11-159)been almost fully conquered by the English; but  
(11-159)becoming weary of them, the Irish chiefs, or at least  
(11-159)a great many of them, invited Edward Bruce to  
(11-159)come over, drive out the English, and become their  
(11-159)king. He was willing enough to go, for he had  
(11-159)always a high courageous spirit, and desired to  
(11-159)obtain fame and dominion by fighting. Edward  
(11-159)Bruce was as good a soldier as his brother, but not  
(11-159)so prudent and cautious; for, except in the affair of  
(11-159)killing the Red Comyn, which was a wicked and  
(11-159)violent action, Robert Bruce, in his latter days,  
(11-159)showed himself as wise as he was courageous.  
(11-159)However, he was well contented that his brother  
(11-159)Edward, who had always fought so bravely for  
(11-159)him, should be raised. up to be King of Ireland

[TG11-160, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 11, p. 160]

(11-160)Therefore King Robert not only gave him an army  
(11-160)to assist in making the conquest, but passed over  
(11-160)the sea to Ireland himself in person, with a considerable  
(11-160)body of troops to assist him. The Bruces  
(11-160)gained several battles, and penetrated far into Ireland;

(11-160)but the English forces were too numerous  
(11-160)and so many of the Irish joined with them rather  
(11-160)than with Edward Bruce, that King Robert and  
(11-160)his brother were obliged to retreat before them.  
(11-160)The chief commander of the English was a great  
(11-160)soldier, called Sir Edmund Butler, and he had  
(11-160)assembled a much greater army than Edward  
(11-160)Bruce and his brother King Robert had to oppose  
(11-160)to him. The Scots were obliged to retreat every  
(11-160)morning, that they might not be forced to battle by  
(11-160)an army more numerous than their own.  
(11-160)I have often told you, that King Robert the  
(11-160)Bruce was a wise and a good prince. But a circumstance  
(11-160)happened during this retreat, which  
(11-160)showed he was also a kind and humane man. It  
(11-160)was one morning, when the English, and their Irish  
(11-160)auxiliaries, were pressing hard upon Bruce, who  
(11-160)had given his army orders to continue a hasty  
(11-160)retreat; for to have risked a battle with a much  
(11-160)more numerous army, and in the midst of a country  
(11-160)which favoured his enemies, would have been  
(11-160)extremely imprudent. On a sudden, just as King  
(11-160)Robert was about to mount his horse, he heard a  
(11-160)woman shrieking in despair. "What is the matter?"  
(11-160)said the King; and he was informed by his  
(11-160)attendants, that a poor woman, a laundress, or  
(11-160)washerwoman, mother of an infant who had just

[TG11-161, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 11, p. 161]

(11-161)been born, was about to be left behind the army,  
(11-161)as being too weak to travel. The mother was  
(11-161)shrieking for fear of falling into the hands of the  
(11-161)Irish, who were accounted very cruel, and there  
(11-161)were no carriages nor means of sending the woman  
(11-161)and her infant on in safety. They must needs be

(11-161)abandoned if the army retreated.  
(11-161)King Robert was silent for a moment when he  
(11-161)heard this story, being divided betwixt the feelings  
(11-161)of humanity, occasioned by the poor woman's distress,  
(11-161)and the danger to which a halt would expose  
(11-161)his army. At last he looked round on his officers,  
(11-161)with eyes which kindled like fire. "Ah, gentlemen,"  
(11-161)he said, "never let it be said that a man  
(11-161)who was born of a woman, and nursed by a  
(11-161)woman's tenderness, should leave a mother and an  
(11-161)infant to the mercy of barbarians! In the name  
(11-161)of God, let the odds and the risk be what they will,  
(11-161)I will fight Edmund Butler rather than leave these  
(11-161)poor creatures behind me. Let the army, therefore,  
(11-161)draw up in line of battle, instead of retreating."  
(11-161)The story had a singular conclusion; for the  
(11-161)English general, seeing that Robert the Bruce  
(11-161)halted and offered him battle, and knowing that  
(11-161)the Scottish King was one of the best generals then  
(11-161)living, conceived that he must have received some  
(11-161)large supply of forces, and was afraid to attack him.

[TG11-162, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 11, p. 162]

(11-162)And thus Bruce had an opportunity to send off the  
(11-162)poor woman and her child, and then to retreat at  
(11-162)his leisure, without suffering any inconvenience  
(11-162)from the halt.  
(11-162)But Robert was obliged to leave the conquest  
(11-162)of Ireland to his brother Edward, being reached  
(11-162)by pressing affairs to his own country. Edward,  
(11-162)who was rash as he was brave, engaged, against  
(11-162)the advice of his best officers, in battle with an  
(11-162)English general, called Sir Piers de Birmingham.  
(11-162)The Scots were surrounded on all sides, but continued  
(11-162)to defend themselves valiantly, and Edward

(11-162)Bruce showed the example by fighting in the very  
(11-162)front of the battle. At length a strong English  
(11-162)champion, called John Maupas, engaged Edward  
(11-162)hand to hand; and they fought till they killed each  
(11-162)other. Maupas was found lying after  
(11-162)the battle upon the body of Bruce; both  
(11-162)were dead men. After Edward Bruce's  
(11-162)death, the Scots gave up further attempts to conquer  
(11-162)Ireland.  
(11-162)Robert Bruce continued to reign gloriously for  
(11-162)several years, and was so constantly victorious over  
(11-162)the English, that the Scots seemed during his  
(11-162)government to have acquired a complete superiority  
(11-162)over their neighbours. But then we must

[TG11-163, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 11, p. 163]

(11-163)remember, that Edward II, who then reigned in  
(11-163)England, was a foolish prince, and listened to bad  
(11-163)counsels; so that it is no wonder that he was beaten  
(11-163)by so wise and experienced a general as Robert  
(11-163)Bruce, who had fought his way to the crown  
(11-163)through so many disasters, and acquired in consequence  
(11-163)so much renown, that, as I have often said,  
(11-163)he was generally accounted one of the best soldiers  
(11-163)and wisest sovereigns of his time.  
(11-163)In the last year of Robert the Bruce's reign, he  
(11-163)became extremely sickly and infirm, chiefly owing  
(11-163)to a disorder called the leprosy, which he had  
(11-163)caught during the hardships and misfortunes of his  
(11-163)youth, when he was so frequently obliged to hide  
(11-163)himself in woods and morasses, without a roof to  
(11-163)shelter him. He lived at a castle called Cardross,  
(11-163)on the beautiful banks of the river Clyde, near to  
(11-163)where it joins the sea; and his chief amusement  
(11-163)was to go upon the river, and down to the sea in a

(11-163)ship, which he kept for his pleasure. He was no  
(11-163)longer able to sit upon his war-horse, or to lead  
(11-163)his army to the field.

(11-163)While Bruce was in this feeble state, Edward II,  
(11-163)King of England, died, and was succeeded by his  
(11-163)son Edward III. He turned out, afterwards to  
(11-163)be one of the wisest and bravest kings whom  
(11-163)England ever had; but when he first mounted the  
(11-163)throne he was very young, and under the entire  
(11-163)management of his mother, who governed by means  
(11-163)of a wicked favourite called Mortimer.

(11-163)The war between the English and the Scots  
(11-163)still lasting at the time, Bruce sent his two great

[TG11-164, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 11, p. 164]

(11-164)commanders, the Good Lord James Douglas, and  
(11-164)Thomas Randolph Earl of Murray, to lay waste  
(11-164)the counties of Northumberland and Durham, and  
(11-164)distress the English as much as they could.  
(11-164)Their soldiers were about twenty thousand in  
(11-164)number, ah lightly armed, and mounted on horses  
(11-164)that were but small in height, but excessively  
(11-164)active. The men themselves carried no provision,  
(11-164)except a bag of oatmeal; and each had at his  
(11-164)saddle a small plate of iron called a girdle, on  
(11-164)which, when they pleased, they could bake the  
(11-164)oatmeal into cakes. They killed the cattle of the  
(11-164)English, as they travelled through the country,  
(11-164)roasted the flesh on wooden spits, or boiled it in  
(11-164)the skins of the animals themselves, putting in a  
(11-164)little water with the beef, to prevent the fire from  
(11-164)burning the hide to pieces. This was rough  
(11-164)cookery. They made their shoes, or rather sandals,  
(11-164)in as coarse a way; cutting them out of the raw  
(11-164)hides of the cattle, and fitting them to their ankles,

(11-164)like what are now called short gaiters. As this  
(11-164)sort of buskin had the hairy side of the hide outermost,  
(11-164)the English called those who wore them  
(11-164)rough-footed Scots, and sometimes, from the colour  
(11-164)of the hide, red-shanks.  
(11-164)As such forces needed to carry nothing with  
(11-164)them, either for provisions or ammunition, the  
(11-164)Scots moved with amazing speed, from mountain  
(11-164)to mountain, and from glen to glen, pillaging  
(11-164)and destroying the country wherever they came.  
(11-164)In the mean while, the young King of England  
(11-164)pursued them with a much larger army; but as it

[TG11-165, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 11, p. 165]

(11-165)was encumbered by the necessity of carrying  
(11-165)provisions in great quantities, and by the slow motions  
(11-165)of men in heavy armour, they could not come up  
(11-165)with the Scots, although they saw every day the  
(11-165)smoke of the houses and villages which they were  
(11-165)burning. The King of England was extremely  
(11-165)angry; for, though only a boy of sixteen years  
(11-165)old, he longed to fight the Scots, and to chastise  
(11-165)them for the mischief they were doing to his country;  
(11-165)and at length he grew so impatient, that he  
(11-165)offered a large reward to any one who would show  
(11-165)him where the Scottish army were.  
(11-165)At length, after the English host had suffered  
(11-165)severe hardships, from want of provisions, and  
(11-165)fatiguing journeys through fords, and swamps, and  
(11-165)morasses, a gentleman named Rokeby came into  
(11-165)the camp, and claimed the reward which the King  
(11-165)had offered. He told the King that he had been  
(11-165)made prisoner by the Scots, and that they had said  
(11-165)they should be as glad to meet the English King as  
(11-165)he to see them. Accordingly, Rokeby guided the

(11-165)English army to the place where the Scots lay  
(11-165)encamped.  
(11-165)But the English King was no nearer to the  
(11-165)battle which he desired; for Douglas and Randolph,  
(11-165)knowing the force and numbers of the English  
(11-165)army, had taken up their camp on a steep hill,  
(11-165)at the bottom of which ran a deep river, called the  
(11-165)Wear, having a channel filled with large stones, so  
(11-165)that there was no possibility for the English to  
(11-165)attack the Scots without crossing the water, and  
(11-165)then climbing up the steep hill in the very face of

[TG11-166, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 11, p. 166]

(11-166)their enemy; a risk which was too great to be  
(11-166)attempted.  
(11-166)Then the King sent a message of defiance to the  
(11-166)Scottish generals, inviting them either to draw  
(11-166)back their forces, allow him freedom to cross the  
(11-166)river, and time to place his army in order of battle  
(11-166)on the other side, that they might fight fairly, or  
(11-166)offering, if they liked it better, to permit them to  
(11-166)cross over to his side without opposition, that they  
(11-166)might join battle on a fair field. Randolph and  
(11-166)Douglas did nothing but laugh at this message.  
(11-166)They said, that when they fought, it should be at  
(11-166)their own pleasure, and not because the King of  
(11-166)England chose to ask for a battle. They reminded  
(11-166)him, insultingly, how they had been in his country  
(11-166)for many days, burning, taking spoil, and doing  
(11-166)what they thought fit. If the King was displeased  
(11-166)with this, they said, he must find his way across  
(11-166)the river to fight them, the best way he could.  
(11-166)The English King, determined not to quit sight  
(11-166)of the Scots, encamped on the opposite side of the  
(11-166)river to watch their motions, thinking that want of



(11-166)provisions would oblige them to quit their strong  
(11-166)position on the mountains. But the Scots once  
(11-166)more showed Edward their dexterity in marching.  
(11-166)by leaving their encampment, and taking up another  
(11-166)post, even stronger and more difficult to approach  
(11-166)than the first which they had occupied. King  
(11-166)Edward followed, and again encamped opposite to  
(11-166)his dexterous and troublesome enemies, desirous to  
(11-166)bring them to a battle, when he might hope to gain  
(11-166)an easy victory, having more than double the

[TG11-167, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 11, p. 167]

(11-167)number of the Scottish army, all troops of the very  
(11-167)best quality.  
(11-167)While the armies lay thus opposed to each other,  
(11-167)Douglas resolved to give the young King of England  
(11-167)a lesson in the art of war. At the dead of  
(11-167)night, he left the Scottish camp with a small body  
(11-167)of chosen horse, not above two hundred, well  
(11-167)armed. He crossed the river in deep silence, and  
(11-167)came to the English camp, which was but carelessly  
(11-167)guarded. Seeing this, Douglas rode past the  
(11-167)English sentinels as if he had been an officer of the  
(11-167)English army, saying, --, "Ha, Saint George! you  
(11-167)keep bad watch here." -- In those days, you must  
(11-167)know, the English used to swear by Saint George,  
(11-167)as the Scots did by Saint Andrew. Presently  
(11-167)after, Douglas heard an English soldier, who lay  
(11-167)stretched by the fire, say to his comrade, --"I  
(11-167)cannot tell what is to happen to us in this place;  
(11-167)but, for my part, I have a great fear of the Black  
(11-167)Douglas playing us some trick."  
(11-167)"You shah have cause to say so," said Douglas  
(11-167)to himself.  
(11-167)When he had thus got into the midst of the

(11-167)English camp without being discovered, he drew  
(11-167)his sword, and cut asunder the ropes of a tent,  
(11-167)calling out his usual war-cry,--"Douglas, Douglas!  
(11-167)English thieves, you are all dead men." His  
(11-167)followers immediately began to cut down and overturn  
(11-167)the tents, cutting and stabbing the English  
(11-167)soldiers as they endeavoured to get to arms.  
(11-167)Douglas forced his way to the pavilion of the

[TG11-168, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 11, p. 168]

(11-168)King himself, and very nearly carried that young  
(11-168)prince prisoner out of the middle of his great army.  
(11-168)Edward's chaplain' however, and many of his  
(11-168)household, stood to arms bravely in his defence,  
(11-168)while the young King escaped by creeping away  
(11-168)beneath the canvass of his tent. The chaplain and  
(11-168)several of the King's officers were slain; but the  
(11-168)whole camp was now alarmed and in arms, so that  
(11-168)Douglas was obliged to retreat, which he did by  
(11-168)bursting through the English at the side of the  
(11-168)camp opposite to that by which he had entered.  
(11-168)Being separated from his men in the confusion, he  
(11-168)was in great danger of being slain by an Englishman  
(11-168)who encountered him with a huge club. This  
(11-168)man he killed, but with considerable difficulty; and  
(11-168)then blowing his horn to collect his soldiers, who  
(11-168)soon gathered around him, he returned  
(11-168)to the Scottish camp, having sustained  
(11-168)very little loss.  
(11-168)Edward, much mortified at the insult which he  
(11-168)had received, became still more desirous of chastising  
(11-168)those audacious adversaries; and one of them  
(11-168)at least was not unwilling to afford him an opportunity  
(11-168)of revenge. This was Thomas Randolph,  
(11-168)Earl of Murray. He asked Douglas when he

(11-168)returned to the Scottish camp, "What he had  
(11-168)done?" -- "We have drawn some blood." -- "Ah,"  
(11-168)said the earl, "had we gone all together to the  
(11-168)night attack, we should have discomfited them."  
(11-168)"It might well have been so," said Douglas, "but  
(11-168)the risk would have been too great." -- "Then will

[TG11-169, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 11, p. 169]

(11-169)we fight them in open battle," said Randolph, "for  
(11-169)if we remain here, we shall in time be famished for  
(11-169)want of provisions." -- "Not so," replied Douglas;  
(11-169)"we will deal with this great army of the English  
(11-169)as the fox did with the fisherman in the fable."--  
(11-169)"And how was that?" said the Earl of Murray.  
(11-169)-- Hereupon the Douglas told him this story:--  
(11-169)"A fisherman," he said, "had made a hut by a  
(11-169)river side, that he might follow his occupation of  
(11-169)fishing. Now, one night he had gone out to look  
(11-169)after his nets, leaving a small fire in his hut; and  
(11-169)when he came back, behold there was a fox in the  
(11-169)cabin, taking the liberty to eat one of the finest  
(11-169)salmon he had taken. 'Ho, Mr Robber!' said the  
(11-169)fisherman, drawing his sword, and standing in the  
(11-169)door-way to prevent the fox's escape, 'you shall  
(11-169)presently die the death.' The poor fox looked for  
(11-169)some hole to get out at, but saw none; whereupon  
(11-169)he pulled down with his teeth a mantle, which was  
(11-169)lying on the bed, and dragged it across the fire.  
(11-169)The fisherman ran to snatch his mantle from the  
(11-169)fire-the fox flew out at the door with the salmon;  
(11-169)--and so," said Douglas, "shall we escape the great  
(11-169)English army by subtilty, and without risking battle  
(11-169)with so large a force."  
(11-169)Randolph agreed to act by Douglas's counsel, and  
(11-169)the Scottish army kindled great fires through their

(11-169)encampment, and made a noise and shouting, and  
(11-169)blowing of horns, as if they meant to remain all  
(11-169)night there, as before. But in the mean time, Douglas  
(11-169)had caused a road to be made through two  
(11-169)miles of a great morass which lay in their rear.

[TG11-170, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 11, p. 170]

(11-170)This was done by cutting down to the bottom of  
(11-170)the bog, and, filling the trench with faggots of wood.  
(11-170)Without this contrivance it would have been impossible  
(11-170)that the army could have crossed; and  
(11-170)through this passage, which the English never suspected,  
(11-170)Douglas and Randolph, and all their men,  
(11-170)moved at the dead of night. They did not leave so  
(11-170)much as an errand-boy behind, and so bent their  
(11-170)march towards Scotland, leaving the English  
(11-170)disappointed and affronted. Great was their wonder  
(11-170)in the morning, when they saw the Scottish camp  
(11-170)empty, and found no living men in it, but two or  
(11-170)three English prisoners tied to trees, whom they  
(11-170)had left with an insulting message to the King of  
(11-170)England, saying, " If he were displeased with what  
(11-170)they had done, he might come and revenge himself  
(11-170)in Scotland."

(11-170)The place where the Scots fixed this famous  
(11-170)encampment, was in the forest of Weardale, in the  
(11-170)bishopric of Durham; and the road which they cut  
(11-170)for the purpose of their retreat, is still called the  
(11-170)Shorn Moss.

(11-170)After this a peace was concluded with Robert  
(11-170)Bruce, on terms highly honourable to Scotland;  
(11-170)for the English King renounced all pretensions to  
(11-170)the sovereignty of the country, and, moreover, gave  
(11-170)his sister, a princess called Joanna, to be wife to  
(11-170)Robert Bruce's son, called David. This treaty was

(11-170)very advantageous for the Scots. It was called the  
(11-170)treaty of Northampton, because it was concluded at  
(11-170)that town in the year 1328.  
(11-170)Good King Robert did not long survive this

[TG11-171, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 11, p. 171]

(11-171)joyful event. He was not aged more than four-  
(11-171)and-fifty years, but, as I said before, his bad health  
(11-171)was caused by the hardships which he sustained  
(11-171)during his youth, and at length he became very ill.  
(11-171)Finding that he could not recover, he assembled  
(11-171)around his bedside the nobles and counsellors in  
(11-171)whom he most trusted. He told them, that now,  
(11-171)being on his deathbed, he sorely repented all his  
(11-171)misdeeds, and particularly, that he had, in his passion,  
(11-171)killed Comyn with his own hand, in the church  
(11-171)and before the altar. He said that if he had lived,  
(11-171)he had intended to go to Jerusalem, to make war  
(11-171)upon the Saracens who held the Holy Land, as  
(11-171)some expiation for the evil deeds he had done.  
(11-171)But since he was about to die, he requested of his  
(11-171)dearest friend and bravest warrior, and that was  
(11-171)the good Lord James Douglas, that he should  
(11-171)carry his heart to the Holy Land.  
(11-171)To make you understand the meaning of this  
(11-171)request, I must tell you, that at this time a people  
(11-171)called Saracens, who believed in the false prophet  
(11-171)Mahomet, had obtained by conquest possession of  
(11-171)Jerusalem, and the other cities and places which  
(11-171)are mentioned in the Holy Scripture; and the  
(11-171)Christians of Europe, who went thither as pilgrims  
(11-171)to worship at these places, where so many miracles  
(11-171)had been wrought, were insulted by these heathen  
(11-171)Saracens, Hence many armies of Christians went  
(11-171)from their own countries out of every kingdom of

(11-171)Europe, to fight against these Saracens; and believed  
(11-171)that they were doing a great service to  
(11-171)religion, and that what sins they had committed

[TG11-172, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 11, p. 172]

(11-172)would be pardoned by God Almighty, because  
(11-172)they had taken a part in this which they called a  
(11-172)holy warfare. You may remember that Bruce  
(11-172)thought of going upon this expedition when he was  
(11-172)in despair of recovering the crown of Scotland;  
(11-172)and now he desired his heart to be carried to Jerusalem  
(11-172)after his death, and requested Lord James  
(11-172)of Douglas to take the charge of it. Douglas wept  
(11-172)bitterly as he accepted this office, -- the last mark  
(11-172)of the Bruce's confidence and friendship.  
(11-172)The King soon afterwards expired [at Cardross];  
(11-172)and his heart was taken out from  
(11-172)his body and embalmed, that is, prepared  
(11-172)with spices and perfumes, that it might  
(11-172)remain a long time fresh and uncorrupted. Then  
(11-172)the Douglas caused a case of silver to be made, into  
(11-172)which he put the Bruce's heart, and wore it around  
(11-172)his neck, by a string of silk and gold. And he set  
(11-172)forward for the Holy Land, with a gallant train of  
(11-172)the bravest men in Scotland, who, to show their  
(11-172)value and sorrow for their brave King Robert  
(11-172)Bruce, resolved to attend his heart to the city of  
(11-172)Jerusalem. It had been much better for Scotland if  
(11-172)the Douglas and his companions had staid at home  
(11-172)to defend their own country, which was shortly  
(11-172)afterwards in great want of their assistance.  
(11-172)Neither did Douglas ever get to the end of his  
(11-172)journey. In going to Palestine, he landed in Spain,  
(11-172)where the Saracen King, or Sultan of Granada,  
(11-172)called Osmyn, was invading the realms of Alphonso,

(11-172)the Spanish King of Castile. King Alphonso  
(11-172)received Douglas with great honour and distinction,

[TG11-173, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 11, p. 173]

(11-173)and people came from all parts to see the great  
(11-173)soldier, whose fame was well known through every  
(11-173)part of the Christian world. King Alphonso easily  
(11-173)persuaded the Scottish earl, that he would do  
(11-173)good service to the Christian cause, by assisting  
(11-173)him to drive back the Saracens of Grenada, before  
(11-173)proceeding on his voyage to Jerusalem. Lord  
(11-173)Douglas and his followers went accordingly to a  
(11-173)great battle against Osmyn, and had little difficulty  
(11-173)in defeating the Saracens who were opposed to  
(11-173)them. But being ignorant of the mode of fighting  
(11-173)among the cavalry of the East, the Scots pursued  
(11-173)the chase too far, and the Moors, when they saw  
(11-173)them scattered and separated from each other,  
(11-173)turned suddenly back, with a loud cry of Allah  
(11-173)illah Allah, which is their shout of battle, and  
(11-173)surrounded such of the Scottish knights and squires  
(11-173)as had advanced too hastily, and were dispersed  
(11-173)from each other.  
(11-173)In this new skirmish, Douglas saw Sir William  
(11-173)St Clair of Roslyn fighting desperately, surrounded  
(11-173)by many Moors, who were hewing at him with  
(11-173)their sabres. "Yonder worthy knight will be  
(11-173)slain," Douglas said, "unless he have instant help."  
(11-173)With that he galloped to his rescue, but presently  
(11-173)was himself also surrounded by many Moors.  
(11-173)When he found the enemy press so thick round  
(11-173)him, as to leave him no chance of escaping, the  
(11-173)earl took from his neck the Bruce's heart, and  
(11-173)speaking to it, as he would have done to the King  
(11-173)had he been alive, --"Pass first in fight," he said,

(11-173)"as thou wert wont to do, and Douglas will follow

[TG11-174, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 11, p. 174]

(11-174)thee, or die." He then threw the King's heart  
(11-174)among the enemy, and rushing forward to the  
(11-174)place where it fell, was there slain. His body was  
(11-174)found lying above the silver case, as if it had been  
(11-174)his last object to defend the Bruce's heart.

(11-174)This Good Lord James of Douglas was one of  
(11-174)the best and wisest soldiers that ever drew a sword.  
(11-174)He was said to have fought in seventy battles, being  
(11-174)beaten in thirteen, and victorious in fifty-seven.  
(11-174)The English accused him of being cruel; and it is  
(11-174)said that he had such a hatred of the English archers,  
(11-174)that when he made one of them prisoner, he  
(11-174)would not dismiss him until he was either blinded  
(11-174)of his right eye, or had the first finger of his right  
(11-174)hand struck off. The Douglas's Larder also seems  
(11-174)a very cruel story; but the hatred at that time betwixt  
(11-174)the two countries was at a high pitch, and  
(11-174)Lord James was much irritated at the death of his  
(11-174)faithful servant Thomas Dickson; on ordinary occasions  
(11-174)he was mild and gentle to his prisoners. The  
(11-174)Scottish historians describe the Good Lord James  
(11-174)as one who was never dejected by bad fortune, or  
(11-174)unduly elated by that which was good. They say  
(11-174)he was modest and gentle in time of peace, but had  
(11-174)a very different countenance upon a day of battle.  
(11-174)He was tall, strong, and well made, of a swarthy  
(11-174)complexion, with dark hair, from which he was  
(11-174)called the Black Douglas. He lisped a little in his  
(11-174)speech, but in a manner which became him very  
(11-174)much. Notwithstanding the many battles in which  
(11-174)he had fought, his face had escaped without a wound.  
(11-174)A brave Spanish knight at the court of King Alphonso,



[TG11-175, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 11, p. 175]

(11-175)whose face was scarred by the marks of  
(11-175)Moorish sabres, expressed wonder that Douglas's  
(11-175)countenance should be unmarked with wounds  
(11-175)Douglas replied modestly, he thanked God, who  
(11-175)had always enabled his hands to guard and protect  
(11-175)his face.

(11-175)Many of Douglas's followers were slain in the  
(11-175)battle in which he himself fell. The rest resolved  
(11-175)not to proceed on their journey to Palestine, but to  
(11-175)return to Scotland. Since the time of the good  
(11-175)Lord James, the Douglasses have carried upon  
(11-175)their shields a bloody heart, with a crown upon it,  
(11-175)in memory of this expedition of Lord James to  
(11-175)Spain with the Bruce's heart. I formerly, when  
(11-175)speaking of William the Lion, explained to you,  
(11-175)that in ancient times men painted such emblems on  
(11-175)their shields that they might be known by them in  
(11-175)battle, for their helmet hid their face; and that  
(11-175)now, as men no longer wear armour in battle, the  
(11-175)devices, as they are called, belonging to particular  
(11-175)families, are engraved upon their seals, or upon  
(11-175)their silver plate, or painted upon their carriages.

(11-175)Thus, for example, there was one of the brave  
(11-175)knights who was in the company of Douglas, and  
(11-175)was appointed to take charge of the Bruce's heart  
(11-175)homewards again, who was called Sir Simon Lockhard  
(11-175)of Lee. He took afterwards for his device,  
(11-175)and painted on his shield, a man's heart, with a  
(11-175)padlock upon it, in memory of Bruce's heart, which  
(11-175)was padlocked in the silver case. For this reason,  
(11-175)men changed Sir Simon's name from Lockhard to  
(11-175)Lockheart, and all who are descended from Sir

[TG11-176, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 11, p. 176]

(11-176)Simon are called Lockhart to this day. Did you  
(11-176)ever hear of such a name, Master Hugh Littlejohn?

(11-176)Well, such of the Scottish knights as remained  
(11-176)alive returned to their own country. They brought  
(11-176)back the heart of the Bruce, and the bones of the  
(11-176)Good Lord James. These last were interred in the  
(11-176)church of St Bride, where Thomas Dickson and  
(11-176)Douglas held so terrible a Palm Sunday. The  
(11-176)Bruce's heart was buried below the high altar in  
(11-176)Melrose Abbey. As for his body, it was laid in the  
(11-176)sepulchre in the midst of the church of Dunfermline,  
(11-176)under a marble stone. But the church becoming  
(11-176)afterwards ruinous, and the roof falling  
(11-176)down with age, the monument was broken to pieces,  
(11-176)and nobody could tell where it stood. But a  
(11-176)little while before Master Hugh Littlejohn was  
(11-176)born, which I take to be six or seven years ago,  
(11-176)when they were repairing the church at Dunfermline,  
(11-176)and removing the rubbish, lo! they found  
(11-176)fragments of the marble tomb of Robert Bruce.  
(11-176)Then they began to dig farther, thinking to discover  
(11-176)the body of this celebrated monarch; and at  
(11-176)length they came to the skeleton of a tall man, and  
(11-176)they knew it must be that of King Robert, both as  
(11-176)he was known to have been buried in a winding  
(11-176)sheet of cloth of gold, of which many fragments  
(11-176)were found about this skeleton, and also because the  
(11-176)breastbone appeared to have been sawed through,  
(11-176)in order to take out the heart. So orders were sent  
(11-176)from the King's Court of Exchequer to guard the  
(11-176)bones carefully, until a new tomb should be prepared,  
(11-176)into which they were laid with profound

[TG11-177, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 11, p. 177]

(11-177)respect. A great many gentlemen and ladies attended,  
(11-177)and almost all the common people in the  
(11-177)neighbourhood; and as the church could not hold  
(11-177)half the numbers, the people were allowed to pass  
(11-177)through it, one after another, that each one, the  
(11-177)poorest as well as the richest, might see all that  
(11-177)remained of the great King Robert Bruce, who  
(11-177)restored the Scottish monarchy. Many people shed  
(11-177)tears; for there was the wasted skull, which once  
(11-177)was the head that thought so wisely and boldly for  
(11-177)his country's deliverance; and there was the dry  
(11-177)bone, which had once been the sturdy arm that  
(11-177)killed Sir Henry de Bohun, between the two  
(11-177)armies, at a single blow, on the evening before the  
(11-177)battle of Bannockburn.

(11-177)It is more than five hundred years since the  
(11-177)body of Bruce was first laid into the tomb; and  
(11-177)how many many millions of men have died since  
(11-177)that time, whose bones could not be recognised, nor  
(11-177)their names known, any more than those of inferior  
(11-177)animals! It was a great thing to see that the  
(11-177)wisdom, courage, and patriotism of a King, could  
(11-177)preserve him for such a long time in the memory  
(11-177)of the people over whom he once reigned. But  
(11-177)then, my dear child, you must remember, that it is  
(11-177)only desirable to be remembered for praiseworthy  
(11-177)and patriotic actions, such as those of Robert  
(11-177)Bruce. It would be better for a prince to be  
(11-177)forgotten like the meanest peasant, than to be  
(11-177)recollected for actions of tyranny or oppression.

[TG12-178, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 12, p. 178]

(12-178)I FEAR, my dear Hugh, that this will be rather  
(12-178)a dull Chapter, and somewhat difficult to be understood;

(12-178)but if you do not quite comprehend it at the  
(12-178)first reading, you may perhaps do so upon a second  
(12-178)trial, and I will strive to be as plain and distinct as  
(12-178)I can.

(12-178)As Scotland was never so great nor so powerful  
(12-178)as during the reign of Robert Bruce, it is a fit  
(12-178)time to tell you the sort of laws by which the  
(12-178)people were governed, and lived in society  
(12-178)together.

(12-178)And first you must observe, that there are two  
(12-178)kinds of government; one called despotic or  
(12-178)absolute, in which the king can do whatever he  
(12-178)pleases with his subjects -- seize upon their property,  
(12-178)or deprive them of their lives at pleasure. This is  
(12-178)the case of almost all the kingdoms of the East,  
(12-178)where the kings, emperors, sultans, or whatever  
(12-178)other name they bear, may do whatever they like  
(12-178)to their subjects, without being controlled by any  
(12-178)one. It is very unfortunate for the people who  
(12-178)live under such a government, and the subjects can  
(12-178)be considered as no better than slaves, having no

[TG12-179, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 12, p. 179]

(12-179)life nor property safe as soon as the king chooses  
(12-179)to take it. Some kings, it is true, are good men,  
(12-179)and use the power which is put into their hands,  
(12-179)only to do good to the people. But then others  
(12-179)are thoughtless; and cunning and wicked persons  
(12-179)contrive to get their confidence, by flattery and  
(12-179)other base means, and lead them to do injustice,  
(12-179)even when perhaps they themselves do not think  
(12-179)of it. And, besides, there are bad kings, who, if  
(12-179)they have the uncontrolled power of taking the  
(12-179)money and the goods of their subjects, of throwing  
(12-179)them into prison, or putting them to death at their

(12-179)pleasure, are apt to indulge their cruelty and their  
(12-179)greediness at the expense of the people, and are  
(12-179)called by the hateful name of Tyrants,

(12-179)Those states are therefore a thousand times more  
(12-179)happy which have what is called a free government;  
(12-179)that is, where the king himself is subject to the  
(12-179)laws, and cannot rule otherwise than by means of  
(12-179)them. In such governments, the king is controlled  
(12-179)and directed by the laws, and can neither put a  
(12-179)man to death, unless he has been found guilty of  
(12-179)some crime for which the law condemns him to  
(12-179)die, nor force him to pay any money beyond what  
(12-179)the laws give the sovereign a right to collect for  
(12-179)the general expenses of the state. Almost all the  
(12-179)nations of modern Europe have been originally  
(12-179)free governments; but, in several of them, the  
(12-179)kings have acquired a great deal too much power,  
(12-179)although not to such an unbounded degree as we  
(12-179)find in the Eastern countries. But few countries,  
(12-179)like that of Great Britain, have had the good

[TG12-180, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 12, p. 180]

(12-180)fortune to retain a free constitution, which protects  
(12-180)and preserves those who live under it from all  
(12-180)oppression, or arbitrary power. We owe this  
(12-180)blessing to our brave ancestors, who were at all  
(12-180)times ready to defend these privileges with their  
(12-180)lives; and we are, on our part, bound to hand them  
(12-180)down, in as ample form as we received them, to  
(12-180)the posterity who shall come after us.

(12-180)In Scotland, and through most countries of Europe,  
(12-180)the principles of freedom were protected by  
(12-180)the feudal system, which was now universally introduced.

(12-180)You recollect that the king, according  
(12-180)to that system, bestowed large estates upon the

(12-180)nobles and great barons, who were called vassals  
(12-180)for the fiefs, or possessions, which they thus received  
(12-180)from the king, and were obliged to follow  
(12-180)him when he summoned them to battle, and to  
(12-180)attend upon his Great Council, in which all matters  
(12-180)concerning the affairs of the kingdom were considered,  
(12-180)and resolved upon. It was in this great  
(12-180)council, now called a Parliament, that the laws of  
(12-180)the kingdom were resolved upon, or altered, at the  
(12-180)pleasure, not of the king alone, nor of the council  
(12-180)alone, but as both the king and council should  
(12-180)agree together. I must now tell you particularly  
(12-180)how this great council was composed, and who had  
(12-180)the privilege of sitting there.

(12-180)At first, there is no doubt that every vassal who  
(12-180)held lands directly of the crown had this privilege;  
(12-180)and a baron, or royal vassal, not only had the right,  
(12-180)but was obliged, to attend the great council of the  
(12-180)kingdom. Accordingly, all the great nobility usually

[TG12-181, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 12, p. 181]

(12-181)came on the king's summons; but then it was very  
(12-181)inconvenient and expensive for men of smaller  
(12-181)estates to be making long journeys to the Parliament,  
(12-181)and remaining, perhaps, for many days, or  
(12-181)weeks, absent from their own families, and their  
(12-181)own business. Besides, if all the royal vassals, or  
(12-181)freeholders, as they began to be called, had chosen  
(12-181)to attend, the number of the assembly would have  
(12-181)been far too great for any purpose of deliberation--  
(12-181)it would not have been possible to find a room  
(12-181)large enough to hold such a meeting, nor could any  
(12-181)one have spoken so as to have made himself understood  
(12-181)by such an immense multitude. From this  
(12-181)it happened, that, instead of attending all of them

(12-181)in their own persons, the lesser barons (as the  
(12-181)smaller freeholders were called, to distinguish  
(12-181)them from the great nobles) assembled in their different  
(12-181)districts, or shires, as the divisions of the  
(12-181)country are termed, and there made choice of one  
(12-181)or two of the wisest and most experienced of their  
(12-181)number to attend the Parliament, or great council,  
(12-181)in the name, and to take care of the interest, of the  
(12-181)whole body. Thus, the crown vassals who attended  
(12-181)upon and composed the Parliament, or the  
(12-181)National Council of Scotland, came to consist of  
(12-181)two different bodies; namely, the peers, or great  
(12-181)nobility, whom the king especially summoned,  
(12-181)and such of the lesser barons as were sent to represent  
(12-181)the crown vassals in the different shires or  
(12-181)counties of Scotland. But besides these two different  
(12-181)classes, the great council also contained the

[TG12-182, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 12, p. 182]

(12-182)representatives of the clergy, and of the boroughs,  
(12-182)or considerable towns.

(12-182)In the times of the Roman Catholic religion, the  
(12-182)churchmen exercised very great power and authority  
(12-182)in every kingdom of Europe, and omitted no  
(12-182)opportunity by which their importance could be  
(12-182)magnified. It is therefore not wonderful, that the  
(12-182)chief men of the clergy, such as the bishops, and  
(12-182)those abbots of the great abbeys who were called  
(12-182)mitred abbots, from their being entitled to wear  
(12-182)mitres, like bishops, should have obtained seats in  
(12-182)Parliament. They were admitted there for the  
(12-182)purpose of looking after the affairs of the church,  
(12-182)and ranked along with the peers or nobles having  
(12-182)titles.

(12-182)It remains to mention the boroughs. You must

(12-182)know, that in order to increase the commerce and  
(12-182)industry of the country, and also to establish some  
(12-182)balance against the immense power of the great  
(12-182)lords, the kings of Scotland, from an early period,  
(12-182)had been in the use of granting considerable privileges  
(12-182)to many of the towns in their dominions,  
(12-182)which, in consequence of the charters which they  
(12-182)obtained from the crown, were termed royal  
(12-182)boroughs. The citizens of these boroughs had the  
(12-182)privilege of electing their own magistrates, and  
(12-182)had considerable revenues, some from lands conferred  
(12-182)on them by the king, others from tolls and  
(12-182)taxes upon commodities brought into the town.  
(12-182)These revenues were laid out by the magistrates  
(12-182)(usually called the provost and bailies), for the use

[TG12-183, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 12, p. 183]

(12-183)of the town. The same magistrates, in those warlike  
(12-183)days, led out the burghers, or townsmen, to  
(12-183)battle, either in defence of the town's lands and  
(12-183)privileges, which were often attacked by the great  
(12-183)lords and barons in their neighbourhood, or for the  
(12-183)purpose of fighting against the English. The  
(12-183)burghers were all well trained to arms, and were  
(12-183)obliged to attend the king's army, or host, whenever  
(12-183)they were summoned to do so. They were  
(12-183)also bound to defend the town itself, which had in  
(12-183)most cases walls and gates. This was called keeping  
(12-183)watch and ward. Besides other privileges, the  
(12-183)boroughs had the very important right of sending  
(12-183)representatives or commissioners, who sat in Parliament,  
(12-183)to look after the interests of the towns  
(12-183)which they represented, as well as to assist in the  
(12-183)general affairs of the nation.

(12-183)You may here remark, that, so far as we have



(12-183)gone, the Scottish Parliament entirely resembled  
(12-183)the English in the nature of its constitution. But  
(12-183)there was this very material difference in the mode  
(12-183)of transacting business, that in England, the peers,  
(12-183)or great nobility, with the bishops and great abbots,  
(12-183)sat, deliberated, and voted, in a body by themselves,  
(12-183)which was called the House of Lords, or of Peers,  
(12-183)and the representatives of the counties, or shires,  
(12-183)together with those of the boroughs, occupied a  
(12-183)different place of meeting, and were called the  
(12-183)Lower House, or House of Commons. In Scotland,  
(12-183)on the contrary, the nobles, prelates, representatives  
(12-183)for the shires, and delegates for the  
(12-183)boroughs, all sat in the same apartment, and debated

[TG12-184, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 12, p. 184]

(12-184)and voted as members of the same assembly.  
(12-184)Since the union of the kingdoms of England and  
(12-184)Scotland, the Parliament, which represents both  
(12-184)countries, sits and votes in two distinct bodies,  
(12-184)called the two Houses of Parliament, and there are  
(12-184)many advantages attending that form of conducting  
(12-184)the national business.

(12-184)You now have some idea of the nature of the  
(12-184)Parliament, or grand council of the nation, and of  
(12-184)the various classes of persons who had a right to  
(12-184)sit there. I am next to tell you, that they were  
(12-184)summoned together and dismissed by the king's  
(12-184)orders; and that all business belonging to the nation  
(12-184)was transacted by their advice and opinion. Whatever  
(12-184)measures they proposed passed into laws, on  
(12-184)receiving the consent of the king, which was intimated  
(12-184)by touching with the sceptre the bills that  
(12-184)were passed by the Parliament. Thus you see that  
(12-184)the laws by which the country was governed were,

(12-184)in a great measure, of the people's own making,  
(12-184)being agreed to by their representatives in Parliament.

(12-184)When, in particular, it was necessary to  
(12-184)raise money for any public purpose, there was a  
(12-184)necessity for obtaining the consent of Parliament,  
(12-184)both as to the amount of the sum, and the manner  
(12-184)in which it was to be collected; so that the king  
(12-184)could not raise any money from the subjects, without  
(12-184)the approbation of his grand council.

(12-184)It may he said, in general, of the Scotch laws,  
(12-184)that they were as wisely adapted for the purpose of  
(12-184)government as those of any state in Europe, at that  
(12-184)early period; nay, more, that they exhibit the

[TG12-185, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 12, p. 185]

(12-185)strongest marks of foresight and sagacity. But it  
(12-185)was the great misfortune of Scotland, that the good  
(12-185)laws which the kings and Parliaments agreed upon,  
(12-185)were not carried steadily into execution; but, on  
(12-185)the contrary, were broken through and neglected,  
(12-185)just as if they had not existed at all. I will endeavour  
(12-185)to explain some of the causes of this negligence.

(12-185)The principal evil was the great power of the  
(12-185)nobility, which was such as to place them almost  
(12-185)beyond the control of the king's authority. The  
(12-185)chief noblemen had obtained the right of administering  
(12-185)justice each upon his own estate; and therefore  
(12-185)the whole power of detecting, trying, and  
(12-185)punishing crimes, rested in the first place with those  
(12-185)great men. Now, most of those great lords were  
(12-185)much more interested in maintaining their own  
(12-185)authority, and extending their own power, within  
(12-185)the provinces which they occupied, than in promoting  
(12-185)general good order and tranquillity throughout  
(12-185)the country at large. They were almost constantly

(12-185)engaged in quarrels with each other, and  
(12-185)often with the king himself. Sometimes they  
(12-185)fought amongst themselves, sometimes they united  
(12-185)together against the sovereign. On all occasions  
(12-185)they were disposed for war, rather than peace, and  
(12-185)therefore took little care to punish the criminals  
(12-185)who offended against public order. Instead of  
(12-185)bringing to trial the persons who committed murder,  
(12-185)robbery, and other violent actions, they often  
(12-185)protected them, and enlisted them in their own  
(12-185)immediate service; and frequently, from revenge

[TG12-186, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 12, p. 186]

(12-186)or ambition, were actually the private encouragers  
(12-186)of the mischief which these men perpetrated.

(12-186)The judges named by the king, and acting  
(12-186)under his authority, had a right indeed to apprehend  
(12-186)and to punish such offenders against the  
(12-186)public peace when they could get hold of them;  
(12-186)but then it was very difficult to seize upon the  
(12-186)persons accused of such acts of violence, when the  
(12-186)powerful lords in whose territory they lived were  
(12-186)disposed to assist them in concealing themselves,  
(12-186)or making their escape. And even when the  
(12-186)king's courts were able to seize such culprits,  
(12-186)there was a law which permitted the lord on whose  
(12-186)territory the crime had been committed, to demand  
(12-186)that the accused persons should be delivered up to  
(12-186)him, to be tried in his own court. A nobleman or  
(12-186)baron making such a demand, was, indeed, obliged  
(12-186)to give security that he would execute justice on  
(12-186)the persons within a certain reasonable time. But  
(12-186)such was the weakness of the royal government,  
(12-186)and such the great power of the nobility, and the  
(12-186)barons of high rank, that if they once got the

(12-186)person accused into their own hand, they might  
(12-186)easily contrive either to let him escape, or to have  
(12-186)him acquitted after a mock trial. Thus, it was  
(12-186)always difficult, and often impossible, to put in  
(12-186)execution the good laws which were made in the  
(12-186)Scottish Parliament, on account of the great power  
(12-186)possessed by the nobles, who, in order to preserve  
(12-186)and extend their own authority, threw all manner  
(12-186)of interruption in the way of public justice.

(12-186)Each of these nobles within the country which  
(12-186)was subject to him, more resembled a king himself

[TG12-187, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 12, p. 187]

(12-187)than a subject of the monarch of Scotland: and,  
(12-187)in one or two instances, we shall see that some of  
(12-187)them became so powerful as to threaten to dispossess  
(12-187)the king of his throne and dominions. The  
(12-187)very smallest of them often made war on each  
(12-187)other without the king's consent, and thus there  
(12-187)was a universal scene of disorder and bloodshed  
(12-187)through the whole country. These disorders  
(12-187)seemed to be rendered perpetual, by a custom  
(12-187)which was called by the name of deadly feud.  
(12-187)When two men of different families quarrelled,  
(12-187)and the one injured or slew the other, the relatives  
(12-187)of the deceased, or wronged person, knowing that  
(12-187)the laws could afford them no redress, set about  
(12-187)obtaining revenge, by putting to death some relation  
(12-187)of the individual who had done the injury,  
(12-187)without regarding how innocent the subject of  
(12-187)their vengeance might have been of the original  
(12-187)cause of offence. Then the others, in their turn,  
(12-187)endeavoured to execute a similar revenge upon  
(12-187)some one of the family who had first received  
(12-187)the injury; and thus the quarrel was carried on

(12-187)from father to son, and often lasted betwixt families  
(12-187)that were neighbours and ought to have been  
(12-187)good friends, for several generations, during which  
(12-187)time they were said to be at deadly feud with each  
(12-187)other.

(12-187)From the want of due exercise of the laws, and  
(12-187)from the revengeful disposition which led to such  
(12-187)long and fatal quarrels, the greatest distresses  
(12-187)ensued to the country. When, for example, the  
(12-187)Kings of Scotland assembled their armies, in order

[TG12-188, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 12, p. 188]

(12-188)to fight against the English, who were then the  
(12-188)public enemy, they could bring together indeed a  
(12-188)number of brave nobles, with their followers, but  
(12-188)there always was great difficulty, and sometimes an  
(12-188)absolute impossibility, of making them act together;  
(12-188)each chief being jealous of his own authority,  
(12-188)and many of them engaged in personal quarrels,  
(12-188)either of their own making, or such as existed in  
(12-188)consequence of this fatal and cruel custom of  
(12-188)deadly feud, which, having been originally perhaps  
(12-188)some quarrel of little importance, had become  
(12-188)inveterate by the cruelties and crimes which had  
(12-188)been committed on both sides, and was handed  
(12-188)down from father to son. It is true, that under a  
(12-188)wise and vigorous prince, like Robert the Bruce,  
(12-188)those powerful barons were overawed by his  
(12-188)wisdom and authority; but we shall see too often,  
(12-188)that when kings and generals of inferior capacity  
(12-188)were at their head, their quarrels amongst themselves  
(12-188)often subjected them to defeat and to  
(12-188)disgrace. And this accounts for a fact which we  
(12-188)shall often have occasion to notice, that when the  
(12-188)Scots engaged in great battles with large armies,

(12-188)in which, of course, many of those proud independent  
(12-188)nobles were assembled, they were frequently  
(12-188)defeated by the English; whereas, when they  
(12-188)fought in smaller bodies with the same enemy,  
(12-188)they were much more often victorious over them;  
(12-188)because at such times the Scots were agreed  
(12-188)among themselves, and obeyed the commands of  
(12-188)one leader, without pretending to dispute his  
(12-188)authority.

[TG12-189, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 12, p. 189]

(12-189)These causes of private crimes and public defeat,  
(12-189)subsisted even in the midland counties of Scotland,  
(12-189)such as the three Lothians, Fifeshire, and other  
(12-189)provinces, where the king generally resided, and  
(12-189)where he necessarily possessed most power to  
(12-189)maintain his own authority, and enforce the execution  
(12-189)of the laws. But there were two great divisions  
(12-189)of the country, the Highlands namely, and  
(12-189)the Borders, which were so much wilder and more  
(12-189)barbarous than the others, that they might be said  
(12-189)to be altogether without law; and although they  
(12-189)were nominally subjected to the King of Scotland,  
(12-189)yet when he desired to execute any justice in either  
(12-189)of those great districts, he could not do so otherwise  
(12-189)than by marching there in person, at the head  
(12-189)of a strong body of forces, and seizing upon the  
(12-189)offenders, and putting them to death with little or  
(12-189)no form of trial. Such a rough course of justice,  
(12-189)perhaps, made these disorderly countries quiet for  
(12-189)a short time, but it rendered them still more averse  
(12-189)to the royal government in their hearts, and disposed  
(12-189)on the slightest occasion to break out, either  
(12-189)into disorders amongst themselves, or into open  
(12-189)rebellion. I must give you some more particular

(12-189)account of these wild and uncivilized districts of  
(12-189)Scotland, and of the particular sort of people who  
(12-189)were their inhabitants, that you may know what I  
(12-189)mean when I speak of Highlanders and Borderers.

(12-189)The highlands of Scotland, so called from the  
(12-189)rocky and mountainous character of the country,  
(12-189)consist of a very large proportion of the northern  
(12-189)parts of that kingdom. It was into these pathless

[TG12-190, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 12, p. 190]

(12-190)wildernesses that the Romans drove the ancient  
(12-190)inhabitants of Great Britain; and it was from these  
(12-190)that they afterwards sallied to invade and distress  
(12-190)that part of Britain which the Romans had conquered,  
(12-190)and in some degree civilized. The inhabitants  
(12-190)of the Highlands spoke, and still speak, a  
(12-190)language totally different from the Lowland Scots.  
(12-190)That last language does not greatly differ from  
(12-190)English, and the inhabitants of both countries  
(12-190)easily understand each other, though neither of them  
(12-190)comprehend the Gaelic, which is the language of  
(12-190)the Highlanders. The dress of these mountaineers  
(12-190)was also different from that of the Lowlanders.  
(12-190)They wore a plaid, or mantle of frieze, or of a  
(12-190)striped stuff called tartan, one end of which being  
(12-190)wrapt round the waist, formed a short petticoat,  
(12-190)which descended to the knee, while the rest was  
(12-190)folded round them like a sort of cloak. They had  
(12-190)buskins made of raw hide; and those who could  
(12-190)get a bonnet, had that covering for their heads,  
(12-190)though many never wore one during their whole  
(12-190)lives, but had only their own shaggy hair tied back  
(12-190)by a leathern strap. They went always armed,  
(12-190)carrying bows and arrows, large swords, which  
(12-190)they wielded with both hands, called claymores,

(12-190)poleaxes, and daggers for close fight. For defence,  
(12-190)they had a round wooden shield, or target,  
(12-190)stuck full of nails; and their great men had shirts  
(12-190)of mail, not unlike to the flannel shirts now worn,  
(12-190)only composed of links of iron instead of threads  
(12-190)of worsted; but the common men were so far from  
(12-190)desiring armour, that they sometimes threw their

[TG12-191, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 12, p. 191]

(12-191)plaids away, and fought in their shirts, which they  
(12-191)wore very long and large, after the Irish fashion.

(12-191)This part of the Scottish nation was divided into  
(12-191)clans, that is, tribes. The persons composing  
(12-191)each of these clans believed themselves all to be  
(12-191)descended, at some distant period, from the same  
(12-191)common ancestor, whose name they usually bore.  
(12-191)Thus, one tribe was called MacDonald, which signifies  
(12-191)the sons of Donald; another MacGregor, or  
(12-191)the sons of Gregor; MacNeil, the sons of Neil,  
(12-191)and so on. Every one of these tribes had its own  
(12-191)separate chief, or commander, whom they supposed  
(12-191)to be the immediate representative of the great  
(12-191)father of the tribe from whom they were all descended.

(12-191)To this chief they paid the most unlimited  
(12-191)obedience, and willingly followed his commands  
(12-191)in peace or war; not caring although, in  
(12-191)doing so, they transgressed the laws of the King,  
(12-191)or went into rebellion against the king himself.  
(12-191)Each tribe lived in a valley, or district of the  
(12-191)mountains, separated from the others; and they  
(12-191)often made war upon, and fought desperately with  
(12-191)each other. But with Lowlanders they were always  
(12-191)at war. They differed from them in language,  
(12-191)in dress, and in manners; and they believed that  
(12-191)the richer grounds of the low country had formerly



(12-191)belonged to their ancestors, and therefore they  
(12-191)made incursions upon it, and plundered it without  
(12-191)mercy. The Lowlanders, on the other hand, equal  
(12-191)in courage and superior in discipline, gave many  
(12-191)severe checks to the Highlanders; and thus there

[TG12-192, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 12, p. 192]

(12-192)was almost constant war or discord between them,  
(12-192)though natives of the same country.

(12-192)Some of the most powerful of the Highland  
(12-192)chiefs set themselves up as independent sovereigns.  
(12-192)Such were the famous Lords of the Isles, called  
(12-192)MacDonald, to whom the islands called the Hebrides,  
(12-192)lying on the north-west of Scotland, might be said  
(12-192)to belong in property. These petty sovereigns  
(12-192)made alliances with the English in their own name.  
(12-192)They took the part of Robert the Bruce in the  
(12-192)wars, and joined him with their forces. We shall  
(12-192)find, that after his time, they gave great disturbance  
(12-192)to Scotland. The Lords of Lorn, Mac-Dougals  
(12-192)by name, were also extremely powerful;  
(12-192)and you have seen that they were able to give battle  
(12-192)to Bruce, and to defeat him, and place him in  
(12-192)the greatest jeopardy. He revenged himself afterwards  
(12-192)by driving John of Lorn out of the country,  
(12-192)and by giving great part of his possessions to his  
(12-192)own nephew Sir Colin Campbell, who became the  
(12-192)first of the great family of Argyll, which afterwards  
(12-192)enjoyed such power in the Highlands.

(12-192)Upon the whole, you can easily understand, that  
(12-192)these Highland clans, living among such high and  
(12-192)inaccessible mountains, and paying obedience to no  
(12-192)one save their own chiefs, should have been very  
(12-192)instrumental in disturbing the tranquillity of the  
(12-192)kingdom of Scotland. They had many virtues,

(12-192)being a kind, brave, and hospitable people, and  
(12-192)remarkable for their fidelity to their chiefs; but  
(12-192)they were restless, revengeful, fond of plunder, and

[TG12-193, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 12, p. 193]

(12-193)delighting rather in war than in peace, in disorder  
(12-193)than in repose.

(12-193)The Border counties were in a state little more  
(12-193)favourable to a quiet or peaceful government. In  
(12-193)some respects the inhabitants of the counties of  
(12-193)Scotland lying opposite to England, greatly resembled  
(12-193)the Highlanders, and particularly in their  
(12-193)being, like them, divided into clans, and having  
(12-193)chiefs, whom they obeyed in preference to the King,  
(12-193)or the officers whom he placed among them. How  
(12-193)clanship came to prevail in the Highlands and Borders,  
(12-193)and not in the provinces which separated  
(12-193)them from each other, it is not easy to conjecture,  
(12-193)but the fact was so. The Borders are not, indeed,  
(12-193)so mountainous and inaccessible a country as the  
(12-193)Highlands; but they also are full of hills, especially  
(12-193)on the more western part of the frontier, and were  
(12-193)in early times covered with forests, and divided by  
(12-193)small rivers and morasses into dales and valleys,  
(12-193)where the different clans lived, making war sometimes  
(12-193)on the English, sometimes on each other, and  
(12-193)sometimes on the more civilized country which lay  
(12-193)behind them.

(12-193)But though the Borderers resembled the Highlanders  
(12-193)in their mode of government and habits of  
(12-193)plundering, and, as it may be truly added, in their  
(12-193)disobedience to the general government of Scotland,  
(12-193)yet they differed in many particulars. The  
(12-193)Highlanders fought always on foot, the Borderers  
(12-193)were all horsemen. The Borderers spoke the same

(12-193)language with the Lowlanders, wore the same sort  
(12-193)of dress, and carried the same arms. Being accustomed

[TG12-194, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 12, p. 194]

(12-194)to fight against the English, they were also  
(12-194)much better disciplined than the Highlanders. But  
(12-194)in point of obedience to the Scottish government,  
(12-194)they were not much different from the clans of the  
(12-194)north.

(12-194)Military officers, called Wardens, were appointed  
(12-194)along the Borders, to keep these unruly people in  
(12-194)order; but as these wardens were generally themselves  
(12-194)chiefs of clans, they did not do much to  
(12-194)mend the evil. Robert the Bruce committed great  
(12-194)part of the charge of the Borders to the good Lord  
(12-194)James of Douglas, who fulfilled his trust with great  
(12-194)fidelity. But the power which the family of Douglas  
(12-194)thus acquired, proved afterwards, in the hands  
(12-194)of his successors, very dangerous to the crown of  
(12-194)Scotland.

(12-194)Thus you see how much the poor country of  
(12-194)Scotland was torn to pieces by the quarrels of the  
(12-194)nobles, the weakness of the laws, the disorders of  
(12-194)the Highlands, and the restless incursions of the  
(12-194)Borderers. If Robert the Bruce had lived, and  
(12-194)preserved his health, he would have done much to  
(12-194)bring the country to a more orderly state. But  
(12-194)Providence had decreed, that in the time of his son  
(12-194)and successor, Scotland was to fall back into a state  
(12-194)almost as miserable as that from which this great  
(12-194)prince rescued it.

[TG13-195, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 13, p. 195]

(13-195)ROBERT BRUCE, the greatest king who ever

(13-195)wore the Scottish crown, being dead, as you have  
(13-195)been told, the kingdom descended to his son David,  
(13-195)who was called David the Second, to distinguish  
(13-195)him from the first king of that name, who reigned  
(13-195)about a hundred years before. This David the  
(13-195)Second was only four years old at his father's  
(13-195)death; and although we have seen children who  
(13-195)thought themselves very wise at that age, yet it is  
(13-195)not usual to give them the management of kingdoms.

(13-195)So Randolph, Earl of Murray, of whom  
(13-195)you have heard so much, became what is called  
(13-195)Regent of the kingdom of Scotland; that is, he  
(13-195)exercised the royal authority until the King should  
(13-195)be old enough to take the charge upon himself.  
(13-195)This wise provision had been made by Bruce, with  
(13-195)consent of the Parliament of Scotland, and was  
(13-195)very acceptable to the kingdom.

[TG13-196, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 13, p. 196]

(13-196)The Regent was very strict in administering  
(13-196)justice. If a husbandman had the plough-irons  
(13-196)stolen from his plough when he left them in the  
(13-196)field, Randolph caused the sheriff of the county to  
(13-196)pay the value; because it was the duty of that  
(13-196)magistrate to protect property left in the open  
(13-196)fields. A fellow tried to cheat under colour of this  
(13-196)law: he hid his own plough-irons, and pretending  
(13-196)that they had been stolen, claimed the price from  
(13-196)the sheriff, and was paid accordingly the estimated  
(13-196)value, which was two shillings. But the fraud being  
(13-196)discovered, the Regent caused the man to be  
(13-196)hanged.

(13-196)Upon one occasion, a criminal who had slain a  
(13-196)priest, and afterwards fled to Rome, and done penance  
(13-196)there, was brought before the Regent. The

(13-196)culprit confessed the murder, but pleaded that he  
(13-196)had obtained the Pope's pardon. "The Pope,"  
(13-196)said Randolph," might pardon you for killing a  
(13-196)priest, but his remission cannot avail you for murdering  
(13-196)a subject of the King of Scotland," and accordingly  
(13-196)he caused the culprit to be executed.  
(13-196)This was asserting a degree of independence of  
(13-196)the Pope's authority, which was very unusual among  
(13-196)the princes and governors of that time.

(13-196)While the Regent was sitting in judgment at  
(13-196)Wigton, in Galloway, a man stepped forward to  
(13-196)complain, that at the very time he was speaking,  
(13-196)a company of his enemies were lying in ambush in  
(13-196)a neighbouring forest, to put him to death. Randolph  
(13-196)sent a party of his attendants to seize the

[TG13-197, Tales of a Grandfather, chap.13, p. 197]

(13-197)men, and bring them before him. "Is it you?" said  
(13-197)he, "who lie in wait to kill the Kings liege subjects?  
(13-197)--To the gallows with them instantly."

(13-197)Randolph was to be praised for his justice, but  
(13-197)not for his severity. He appears to have taken a  
(13-197)positive pleasure in putting criminals to death,  
(13-197)which marked the ferocity of the times and the  
(13-197)turn of his own disposition. Having sent his  
(13-197)coroner before him to Ellandonan castle in the  
(13-197)Highlands, to execute certain thieves and robbers,  
(13-197)that officer caused their heads to be hung round the  
(13-197)walls of the castle, to the number of fifty. When  
(13-197)Randolph came down the lake in a barge, and saw  
(13-197)the castle adorned with these grim and bloody  
(13-197)heads, he said, "He loved better to look upon them  
(13-197)than on any garland of roses he had ever seen."

(13-197)The efforts of the Regent to preserve the establishment  
(13-197)of justice and order, were soon interrupted,

(13-197)and he was called upon to take measures  
(13-197)for the defence of the country; for Robert Bruce  
(13-197)was no sooner in his grave than the enemies of his  
(13-197)family began to plot the means of destroying the  
(13-197)government which he had established. The principal  
(13-197)person concerned in these machinations was  
(13-197)Edward Baliol, the son of that John Baliol who  
(13-197)was formerly created King of Scotland by Edward  
(13-197)I, and afterwards dethroned by him, and committed  
(13-197)to prison, when Edward desired to seize upon  
(13-197)the country for himself. After being long detained  
(13-197)in prison, John Baliol was at length suffered to  
(13-197)go to France, where he died in obscurity. But his  
(13-197)son, Edward Baliol, seeing, as he thought, a

[TG13-198, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 13, p. 198]

(13-198)favourable opportunity, resolved to renew the claim  
(13-198)of his father to the Scottish throne. He came over  
(13-198)to England with this purpose, and although Edward  
(13-198)III, then King of England, remembering  
(13-198)the late successes of the Scots, did not think it prudent  
(13-198)to enter into a war with them, yet Baliol  
(13-198)found a large party of powerful English barons  
(13-198)well disposed to aid his enterprise. Their cause  
(13-198)of resentment was as follows:--

(13-198)When Scotland was freed from the dominion of  
(13-198)England, all the Englishmen to whom Edward the  
(13-198)First, or his successors, had given lands within that  
(13-198)kingdom, were of course deprived of them. But  
(13-198)there was another class of English proprietors in  
(13-198)Scotland, who claimed estates to which they succeeded,  
(13-198)not by the grant of the English prince, but  
(13-198)by inheritance from Scottish families, to whom they  
(13-198)were related, and their pretensions were admitted  
(13-198)by Robert Bruce himself, at the treaty of peace

(13-198)made at Northampton, in 1328, in which it was  
(13-198)agreed that these English lords should receive  
(13-198)back their Scottish inheritances. Notwithstanding  
(13-198)this agreement, Bruce, who did not desire to see  
(13-198)Englishmen enjoy land in Scotland, under what  
(13-198)pretext soever, refused, or delayed at least, to fulfil  
(13-198)this part of the treaty. Hence, upon the death  
(13-198)of that monarch, the disinherited lords resolved to  
(13-198)levy forces, and unite themselves with Edward  
(13-198)Balliol, to recover their estates, and determined to  
(13-198)invade Scotland for that purpose. But their united  
(13-198)forces did not amount to more than four hundred  
(13-198)men-at-arms, and about four thousand archers and

[TG13-199, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 13, p. 199]

(13-199)soldiers of every description. This was a small  
(13-199)army with which to invade a nation which had defended  
(13-199)itself so well against the whole English forces;  
(13-199)but Scotland was justly supposed to be much  
(13-199)weakened by the death of her valiant King.

(13-199)A great misfortune befell the country, in the  
(13-199)unexpected death of the Regent Randolph, whose  
(13-199)experience and valour might have done so much  
(13-199)for the protection of Scotland. He had assembled  
(13-199)an army, and was busied with preparations for  
(13-199)defence against the enterprise of Balliol and the  
(13-199)disinherited lords, when, wasted by a painful and  
(13-199)consuming disorder, he died at Musselburgh, July,  
(13-199)1332. The regret of the Scottish nation for the  
(13-199)Regent's death was so great, that it has occasioned  
(13-199)their historians to allege that he was poisoned by  
(13-199)the English; but for this there seems no foundation.

(13-199)Donald, Earl of Mar, nephew to Robert Bruce  
(13-199)was appointed by the Scottish Parliament to be  
(13-199)Regent in the room of the Earl of Murray; but he

(13-199)was without experience as a soldier, and of far inferior  
(13-199)talents as a man.

(13-199)Mean time, the King of England, still affecting  
(13-199)to maintain peace with Scotland, prohibited the  
(13-199)disinherited lords from invading that country  
(13-199)from the English frontier. But he did not object  
(13-199)to their equipping a small fleet in an obscure English  
(13-199)seaport, for the purpose of accomplishing the  
(13-199)same object by sea. They landed in Fife, with  
(13-199)Baliol at their head, and defeated the Earl of Fife,

[TG13-200, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 13, p. 200]

(13-200)who marched hastily to oppose them. They then  
(13-200)advanced northward towards Dupplin, near which  
(13-200)the Earl of Mar lay encamped with a  
(13-200)large army, whilst another, under the  
(13-200)Earl of March, was advancing from the  
(13-200)southern counties of Scotland to attack the disinherited  
(13-200)lords in the flank and in the rear.

(13-200)It seemed as if that small handful of men must  
(13-200)have been inevitably destroyed by the numbers  
(13-200)collected to oppose them. But Edward Baliol took  
(13-200)the bold resolution of attacking the Regent's army  
(13-200)by night, and in their camp. With this purpose  
(13-200)he crossed the Earn, which river divided the two  
(13-200)hostile armies. The Earl of Mar had neither  
(13-200)placed sentries, nor observed any other of the usual  
(13-200)precautions against surprise, and the English came  
(13-200)upon his army while the men were asleep and  
(13-200)totally unprepared. They made a great slaughter  
(13-200)amongst the Scots, whose numbers only served to  
(13-200)increase the confusion. The Regent was himself  
(13-200)slain, with the Earls of Carrick, of Murray, of Menteith,  
(13-200)and many other men of eminence. Many  
(13-200)thousands of the Scots were slain with the sword,



(13-200)smothered in the fight, or drowned in the river.  
(13-200)The English were themselves surprised at gaining,  
(13-200)with such inferior numbers, so great and decided a  
(13-200)victory.

(13-200)I said that the Earl of March was advancing  
(13-200)with the southland forces to assist the Regent. But  
(13-200)upon learning Mar's defeat and death, March acted  
(13-200)with so little activity or spirit, that he was not

[TG13-201, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 13, p. 201]

(13-201)unjustly suspected of being favourably inclined to  
(13-201)Baliol's cause. That victorious general now  
(13-201)assumed the crown of Scotland, which was  
(13-201)placed upon his head at Scoon; a great  
(13-201)part of Scotland surrendered to his authority,  
(13-201)and it seemed as if the fatal battle of Dupplin  
(13-201)fought 12th August, 1332, had destroyed all the  
(13-201)Edward Baliol made an unworthy use of his  
(13-201)success. He hastened again to acknowledge the  
(13-201)King of England as his liege lord and superior,  
(13-201)although every claim to such supremacy had been  
(13-201)renounced, and the independence of Scotland explicitly  
(13-201)acknowledged by the treaty of Northampton.  
(13-201)He also surrendered to the King of England  
(13-201)the strong town and castle of Berwick, and engaged

[TG13-202, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 13, p. 202]

(13-202)to become his follower in all his wars at his own  
(13-202)charges. Edward III. engaged on his part to  
(13-202)maintain Baliol in possession of the crown of Scotland.  
(13-202)Thus was the kingdom reduced pretty much  
(13-202)to the same state of dependence and subjection to  
(13-202)England, as when the grandfather of Edward  
(13-202)placed the father of Baliol on the throne, in the

(13-202)year 1292, about forty years before.

(13-202)But the success of Baliol was rather apparent  
(13-202)than real. The Scottish patriots were in possession  
(13-202)of many of the strongholds of the country,  
(13-202)and the person of the young King David was  
(13-202)secured in Dumbarton castle, one of the strongest  
(13-202)fortresses in Scotland, or perhaps in the world.

(13-202)At no period of her history was Scotland devoid  
(13-202)of brave men, able and willing to defend her rights.  
(13-202)When the scandalous treaty, by which Baliol had  
(13-202)surrendered the independence of his country to  
(13-202)Edward, came to be known in Scotland, the successors  
(13-202)of Bruce's companions were naturally  
(13-202)among the first to assert the cause of freedom.  
(13-202)John Randolph, second son of the Regent, had  
(13-202)formed a secret union with Archibald Douglas, a  
(13-202)younger brother of the Good Lord James, and  
(13-202)they proceeded to imitate the actions of their relatives.

(13-202)They suddenly assembled a considerable  
(13-202)force, and attacking Baliol, who was feasting near  
(13-202)Annan, they cut his guards in pieces, killed his  
(13-202)brother, and chased him out of Scotland in such  
(13-202)haste, that he escaped on horseback without time  
(13-202)to clothe himself, or even to saddle his horse.

(13-202)Archibald Douglas, who afterwards became Earl

[TG13-203, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 13, p. 203]

(13-203)of Douglas, was a brave man like his father, but  
(13-203)not so good a general, nor so fortunate in his  
(13-203)undertakings.

(13-203)There was another Douglas, called Sir William,  
(13-203)a natural son of the Good Lord James, who made  
(13-203)a great figure at this period. Although a bastard  
(13-203)by birth, he had acquired a large fortune by marrying  
(13-203)with the heiress of the Grahames of Dalkeith,

(13-203)and possessed the strong castle of the same name,  
(13-203)with the still more important one called the Hermitage,  
(13-203)a large and massive fortress situated in the  
(13-203)wild country of Liddesdale, within three or four  
(13-203)miles of the English Border. This Sir William  
(13-203)Douglas, called usually the Knight of Liddesdale,  
(13-203)was a very brave man and a valiant soldier, but he  
(13-203)was fierce, cruel, and treacherous; so that he did  
(13-203)not keep up the reputation of his father the Good  
(13-203)Lord James, as a man of loyalty and honour,  
(13-203)although he resembled him in military talents.

(13-203)Besides these champions, all of whom declared  
(13-203)against Baliol, there was Sir Andrew Murray of  
(13-203)Bothwell, who had married Christian, sister of  
(13-203)Robert Bruce, and aunt of the young King David.  
(13-203)He had so high a reputation, that the Scottish  
(13-203)Parliament appointed him Regent, in room of the  
(13-203)Earl of Mar, slain at Dupplin.

(13-203)Edward III of England now formally declared  
(13-203)war against Scotland, proposing to support the  
(13-203)cause of Baliol, to the possession of Berwick,  
(13-203)which that pretended King had yielded up to him,  
(13-203)and to chastise the Scots for what he called their

[TG13-204, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 13, p. 204]

(13-204)rebellion. He placed himself at the head of a  
(13-204)great army, and marched towards the frontier.

(13-204)In the mean time, the war had begun in a manner  
(13-204)most unfavourable for Scotland. Sir Andrew  
(13-204)Murray, and the Knight of Liddesdale, were both  
(13-204)made prisoners in separate skirmishes with the  
(13-204)English, and their loss at the time was of the worst  
(13-204)consequence to Scotland.

(13-204)Archibald Douglas, the brother, as I have just  
(13-204)said, of the Good Lord James, was hastily appointed

(13-204)Regent in the room of Sir Andrew Murray,  
(13-204)and advanced with a large army to relieve the town  
(13-204)of Berwick, then closely besieged by Edward III  
(13-204)with all his host. The garrison made a determined  
(13-204)defence, and the Regent endeavoured to relieve  
(13-204)them by giving battle to the English, in which he  
(13-204)showed more courage than military conduct.

(13-204)The Scottish army were drawn up on the side  
(13-204)of an eminence called Halidon hill, within two  
(13-204)miles of Berwick. King Edward moved with his  
(13-204)whole host to attack them. The battle, like that  
(13-204)of Falkirk and many others, was decided by that  
(13-204)formidable force, the archers of England. They  
(13-204)were posted in a marshy ground, from which they  
(13-204)discharged their arrows in the most tremendous  
(13-204)and irresistible volleys against the Scots, who,  
(13-204)drawn up on the slope of the hill, were fully exposed  
(13-204)to this destructive discharge, without having  
(13-204)the means of answering it.

(13-204)I have told you before, that these English archers  
(13-204)were the best ever known in war. They were

[TG13-205, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 13, p. 205]

(13-205)accustomed to the use of the bow from the time  
(13-205)they were children of seven years old, when they  
(13-205)were made to practice with a little bow suited to  
(13-205)their size and strength, which was every year  
(13-205)exchanged for one larger and stronger, till they  
(13-205)were able to draw that of a full-grown man. Besides  
(13-205)being thus familiarized with the weapon, the  
(13-205)archers of England were taught to draw the bow-  
(13-205)string to their right ear, while other European  
(13-205)nations only drew it to their breast. If you try  
(13-205)the difference of the posture, you will find that a  
(13-205)much longer arrow can be drawn to the ear than

(13-205)to the breast, because the right hand has more  
(13-205)room.

(13-205)While the Scots suffered under these practised  
(13-205)and skilful archers, whose arrows fell like hail  
(13-205)amongst them, throwing their ranks into disorder,  
(13-205)and piercing the finest armour as if it had been  
(13-205)pasteboard, they made desperate attempts to descend  
(13-205)the hill, and come to close combat. The Earl of

[TG13-206, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 13, p. 206]

(13-206)Ross advanced to the charge, and had he been  
(13-206)seconded by a sufficient body of the Scottish cavalry,  
(13-206)he might have changed the fate of the day; but  
(13-206)as this was not the case, the Earls of Ross, Sutherland,  
(13-206)and Menteith, were overpowered and slain,  
(13-206)while their followers were dispersed by the English  
(13-206)cavalry, who advanced to protect the archers.

(13-206)The defeat of the Scots was then complete (19/7/1333).  
(13-206)A number of their best and  
(13-206) bravest nobility were slain, and amongst  
(13-206)them Archibald Douglas, the Regent; very many  
(13-206)were made prisoners. Berwick surrendered in  
(13-206)consequence of the defeat, and Scotland seemed  
(13-206)again to be completely conquered by the English.

(13-206)Edward once more over-ran the kingdom, seized  
(13-206)and garrisoned castles, extorted from Edward Baliol,  
(13-206)the nominal king, the complete cession of great  
(13-206)part of the southern districts, named governors of  
(13-206)the castle and sheriff of the counties, and exercised  
(13-206)complete authority, as over a conquered  
(13-206)country. Baliol, on his part, assumed once more  
(13-206)the rule of the northern and western part of Scotland,

[TG13-207, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 13, p. 207]

(13-207)which he was permitted to retain under the  
(13-207)vassalage of the English monarch. It was the  
(13-207)opinion of most people that the Scottish wars were  
(13-207)ended, and that there no longer remained a man of  
(13-207)that nation who had influence to raise an army, or  
(13-207)skill to conduct one.

[TG14-208, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 14 p. 208]

(14-208)The English, a more powerful and richer nation,  
(14-208)better able to furnish forth and maintain large  
(14-208)armies, often gained great victories over the Scots;  
(14-208)but, in return, the Scots had a determined love of  
(14-208)independence, and hatred of foreign tyranny, which  
(14-208)induced them always to maintain their resistance  
(14-208)under the most unfavourable circumstances, and to  
(14-208)repair, by slow, stubborn, and continued exertions,  
(14-208)the losses which they sustained.

(14-208)Throughout the whole country of Scotland, only  
(14-208)four castles and a small tower acknowledged the  
(14-208)sovereignty of David Bruce, after the battle of  
(14-208)Halidon; and it is wonderful to see how, by their  
(14-208)efforts, the patriots soon afterwards changed for  
(14-208)the better, that unfavourable and seemingly desperate  
(14-208)state of things. In the several skirmishes and  
(14-208)battles which were fought all over the kingdom,  
(14-208)the Scots, knowing the country, and having the  
(14-208)good-will of the inhabitants, were generally

[TG14-209, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 14, p. 209]

(14-209)successful, as also in surprising castles and forts, cutting  
(14-209)off convoys of provisions which were going to the  
(14-209)English, and destroying scattered parties of the  
(14-209)enemy; so that, by a long and incessant course of  
(14-209)fighting, the patriots gradually regained what they  
(14-209)lost in great battles. I will tell you one or two of

(14-209)the incidents which befell during this bloody war.

(14-209)Lochleven castle, situated on an island upon a  
(14-209)large lake, was one of the four which held out in  
(14-209)name of David the Bruce, and would not submit  
(14-209)to Edward Baliol. The governor was a loyal  
(14-209)Scotsman, called Alan Vipont, assisted by Jaques  
(14-209)or James Lamby. The castle was besieged by Sir  
(14-209)John Stirling, a follower of Baliol, with an army  
(14-209)of English. As the besiegers dared not approach  
(14-209)the island with boats, Stirling fell on a singular  
(14-209)device to oblige the garrison to surrender. There  
(14-209)is a small river, called the Leven, which runs out  
(14-209)of the eastern extremity of the lake, or loch.  
(14-209)Across this stream the besiegers reared a very  
(14-209)strong and lofty mound, or barrier, so as to prevent  
(14-209)the waters of the Leven from leaving the lake.  
(14-209)They expected that the waters of the lake would  
(14-209)rise in consequence of being thus confined, and that  
(14-209)they would overflow the island, and oblige Vipont  
(14-209)to surrender. But Vipont sending out at dead of  
(14-209)night a small boat with four men, they made a  
(14-209)breach in the mound; and the whole body of water,  
(14-209)breaking forth with incredible fury, swept away  
(14-209)the tents, baggage, and troops of the besiegers,  
(14-209)and nearly destroyed their army. The remains of  
(14-209)the English mound are shown to this day, though

[TG14-210, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 14, p. 210]

(14-210)some doubt has been expressed as to the truth of  
(14-210)the incident. It is certain the English  
(14-210)were obliged to raise the siege with  
(14-210)loss(19/6/1335).

(14-210)While these wars were proceeding with increased  
(14-210)fury, the Knight of Liddesdale, and Sir Andrew  
(14-210)Murray of Bothwell, returned to Scotland, having

(14-210)been freed from their imprisonment, by paying a  
(14-210)large ransom; the Earl of March also embraced  
(14-210)the party of David Bruce. An equally brave  
(14-210)champion was Sir Alexander Ramsay of Dalwolsy,  
(14-210)who, placing himself at the head of a gallant troop  
(14-210)of young Scotsmen, chose for his residence the  
(14-210)large caves which are still to be seen in the glen  
(14-210)of Roslin, from which he used to sally forth, and  
(14-210)fight with Englishmen and their adherents. From  
(14-210)this place of refuge he sometimes made excursions  
(14-210)as far as Northumberland, and drove spoil from  
(14-210)that country. No young Scottish soldier was  
(14-210)thought entitled to make pretension to any renown  
(14-210)in arms, unless he had served in Ramsay's band.

(14-210)A considerable battle was fought in the North  
(14-210)of Scotland, which turned to the advantage of the  
(14-210)young King. Kildrummie castle was one of the  
(14-210)four which held out for David Bruce. It was defended  
(14-210)by King David's aunt, a venerable matron,  
(14-210)Christian Bruce, the wife of Sir Andrew Murray,  
(14-210)and the sister of the brave King Robert; for in  
(14-210)those warlike days women commanded castles, and  
(14-210)sometimes fought in battle. This castle, which was  
(14-210)one of the last places of refuge for the patriots,  
(14-210)was besieged by David Hastings, the Earl of

[TG14-211, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 14, p. 211]

(14-211)Athole, one of the disinherited lords, who, having  
(14-211)changed sides more than once during the war, had  
(14-211)at length turned entirely to the English party. Sir  
(14-211)Andrew Murray of Bothwell, who had resumed  
(14-211)his office of Regent, resolved to assemble the  
(14-211)strongest force which the patriots could muster,  
(14-211)and calling together the Knight of Liddesdale,  
(14-211)Ramsay, and the Earl of March, he moved against



(14-211)the Earl of Athole, to compel him to raise the  
(14-211)siege of Kildrummie, and relieve its heroic defender.

(14-211)All these great nobles were unable to raise  
(14-211)above one thousand men, while Athole had three  
(14-211)times that number under his command.

(14-211)But as the Scots approached the territory of  
(14-211)Kildrummie, they were joined by one John Craig.  
(14-211)This gentleman belonged to the royalists of Scotland,  
(14-211)but having been made prisoner by the Earl of  
(14-211)Athole, he had agreed to pay a large ransom, and  
(14-211)the morrow was the time appointed for producing  
(14-211)the money. He was, therefore, anxious to accomplish  
(14-211)the defeat or death of Athole before the money  
(14-211)was paid to him, and thus to save his ransom. With  
(14-211)this purpose, he conducted the Scotsmen through  
(14-211)the forest of Braemar, where they were joined by  
(14-211)the natives of that territory, and thus came suddenly  
(14-211)on the Earl of Athole, who lay encamped in the  
(14-211)forest. Athole started up in surprise when he saw  
(14-211)his enemies appear so unexpectedly; but he was a  
(14-211)stout-hearted man, though fickle in his political  
(14-211)attachments. He looked at a great rock which lay  
(14-211)beside him, and swore an oath that he would not  
(14-211)fly that day until that rock should show him the

[TG14-212, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 14, p. 212]

(14-212)example. A small brook divided the two parties.  
(14-212)The Knight of Liddesdale, who led the van of the  
(14-212)Scots, advanced a little way down the bank on his  
(14-212)side, then taking his spear by the middle, and keeping  
(14-212)his own men back with it, he bade them halt,  
(14-212)which occasioned some murmurs. The Earl of  
(14-212)Athole, seeing this pause, exclaimed, "These men  
(14-212)are half discomfited," and rushed to charge them,  
(14-212)followed by his men in some disorder. When they

(14-212)had passed the brook, and there ascending the bank  
(14-212)on the other side, -- "Now is our time," said the  
(14-212)Knight of Liddesdale, and charged down hill with  
(14-212)levelled lances, bearing Athole's followers backwards  
(14-212)into the ford. The earl himself, disdaining  
(14-212)quarter, was slain under a great oak-tree. This  
(14-212)was the battle of Kilblene, fought on Saint Andrew's  
(14-212)day, 1335.

(14-212)Among the warlike exploits of this period, we  
(14-212)might not forget the defence of the castle of Dunbar  
(14-212)by the celebrated Countess of March. Her lord, as  
(14-212)we have seen, had embraced the side of David  
(14-212)Bruce, and had taken the field with the Regent.  
(14-212)The countess, who from her complexion was  
(14-212)termed Black Agnes, by which name she is still  
(14-212)familiarly remembered, was a high-spirited and  
(14-212)courageous woman, the daughter of that Thomas  
(14-212)Randolph, Earl of Murray, whom I have so often  
(14-212)mentioned, and the heiress of his valour and patriotism.

(14-212)The castle of Dunbar itself was very  
(14-212)strong, being built upon a chain of rocks stretching  
(14-212)into the sea, and having only one passage to the  
(14-212)mainland, which was well fortified. It was besieged

[TG14-213, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 14, p. 213]

(14-213)by Montague, Earl of Salisbury, who employed to  
(14-213)destroy its walls great military engines, constructed  
(14-213)to throw huge stones, with which machines fortifications  
(14-213)were attacked before the use of cannon.

(14-213)Black Agnes set all his attempts of defiance, and  
(14-213)showed herself with her maids on the walls of the  
(14-213)castle, wiping the places where the huge stones fell  
(14-213)with a clean towel, as if they could do no ill to her  
(14-213)castle, save raising a little dust, which a napkin  
(14-213)could wipe away.

(14-213)The Earl of Salisbury then commanded his  
(14-213)engineers to bring forward to the assault an engine  
(14-213)of another kind, being a sort of wooden shed, or  
(14-213)house, rolled forward on wheels, with a roof of  
(14-213)peculiar strength, which, from resembling the ridge  
(14-213)of a hog's back, occasioned the machine to be called  
(14-213)a sow. This, according to the old mode of warfare,  
(14-213)was thrust close up to the walls of a besieged castle  
(14-213)or city, and served to protect from the arrows  
(14-213)and stones or the besieged a party of soldiers placed  
(14-213)within the sow, who, being thus defended, were in  
(14-213)the mean while employed in undermining the wall,  
(14-213)or breaking an entrance through it with pickaxes  
(14-213)and mining tools. When the Countess of March  
(14-213)saw this engine advanced to the walls of the castle,  
(14-213)she called out to the Earl of Salisbury in derision  
(14-213)and making a kind of rhyme, --

(14-213) "Beware, Montagow,  
(14-213) For farrow shall thy sow."

(14-213)At the same time she made a signal, and a huge  
(14-213)fragment of rock, which hung prepared for the  
(14-213)purpose, was dropped down from the wall upon the

[TG14-214, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 14, p. 214]

(14-214)sow, whose roof was thus dashed to pieces. As the  
(14-214)English soldiers, who had been within it, were  
(14-214)running as fast as they could to get out of the way  
(14-214)of the arrows and stones which were discharged on  
(14-214)them from the wall, Black Agnes called out, "Behold  
(14-214)the litter of English pigs!"

(14-214)The Earl of Salisbury could jest also on such  
(14-214)serious occasions. One day he rode near the walls  
(14-214)with a knight dressed in armour of proof, having

(14-214)three folds of mail over an acton, or leathern jacket;  
(14-214)notwithstanding which, one William Spens shot  
(14-214)an arrow from the battlements of the castle with  
(14-214)such force, that it penetrated all these defences,  
(14-214)and reached the heart of the wearer. "That is  
(14-214)one of my lady's love-tokens," said the earl, as he  
(14-214)saw the knight fall dead from his horse. "Black  
(14-214)Agnes's love-shafts pierce to the heart."

(14-214)Upon another occasion, the Countess of March  
(14-214)had wellnigh made the Earl of Salisbury her prisoner.

(14-214)She caused one of her people enter into  
(14-214)treaty with the besiegers, pretending to betray the  
(14-214)castle. Trusting to this agreement, the earl came  
(14-214)at midnight before the gate, which he found open,  
(14-214)and the portcullis drawn up. As Salisbury was  
(14-214)about to enter, one John Copland, a squire of  
(14-214)Northumberland, pressed on before him, and as  
(14-214)soon as he passed the threshold, the portcullis was  
(14-214)dropped, and thus the Scots missed their principal  
(14-214)prey, and made prisoner only a person of inferior  
(14-214)condition.

(14-214)At length the castle of Dunbar was relieved by

[TG14-215, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 14, p. 215]

(14-215)Alexander Ramsay of Dalwolsy, who brought the  
(14-215)countess supplies by sea both of men and provisions.

(14-215)The Earl of Salisbury, learning this, despaired  
(14-215)of success, and raised the siege, which had  
(14-215)lasted nineteen weeks. The minstrels made songs  
(14-215)in praise of the perseverance and courage of Black  
(14-215)Agnes. The following lines are nearly the sense  
(14-215)of what is preserved:

(14-215) "She kept a stir in tower and trench,  
(14-215) That brawling boisterous Scottish wench;

(14-215) Came I early, came I late,  
(14-215) I found Agnes at the gate."

(14-215)The brave Sir Andrew Murray of Bothwell,  
(14-215)the Regent of Scotland, died in 1338, while the  
(14-215)war was raging on all sides. He was a good patriot,  
(14-215)and a great loss to his country, to which he had  
(14-215)rendered the highest services. There is a story  
(14-215)told of him, which shows how composed he could  
(14-215)be in circumstances of great danger. He was in  
(14-215)the Highlands with a small body of followers, when  
(14-215)the King of England came upon him with an army  
(14-215)of twenty thousand. The Regent learned the news,  
(14-215)but, being then about to hear mass, did not permit  
(14-215)his devotions to be interrupted. When mass was  
(14-215)ended, the people around him pressed him to order  
(14-215)a retreat. "There is no haste," said Murray, composedly.

(14-215)At length his horse was brought out, he  
(14-215)was about to mount, and all expected that the retreat  
(14-215)was to commence. But the Regent observed  
(14-215)that a strap of his armour had given way, and this  
(14-215)interposed new delays. He sent for a particular  
(14-215)coffer, out of which he took a piece of skin, and cut

[TG14-216, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 14, p. 216]

(14-216)and formed with his own hand, and with much  
(14-216)deliberation, the strap which he wanted. By this  
(14-216)time the English were drawing very near, and as  
(14-216)they were so many in number, some of the Scottish  
(14-216)knights afterwards told the historian who relates  
(14-216)the incident, that no space of time ever seemed so  
(14-216)long to them as that which Sir Andrew employed  
(14-216)in cutting the thong of leather. Now, if this had  
(14-216)been done in a mere vaunting or bragging manner,  
(14-216)it would have been the behaviour of a vainglorious

(14-216)fool. But Sir Andrew Murray had already fixed  
(14-216)upon the mode of retiring, and he knew that every  
(14-216)symptom of coolness and deliberation which he  
(14-216)might show would render his men steady and composed  
(14-216)in their turn, from beholding the confidence  
(14-216)of their leader. He at length gave the word, and  
(14-216)putting himself at the head of his followers, made  
(14-216)a most masterly retreat, during which the English,  
(14-216)notwithstanding their numbers, were unable to  
(14-216)obtain any advantage over him, so well did the  
(14-216)Regent avail himself of the nature of the ground.

(14-216)You may well imagine, my dear child, that  
(14-216)during those long and terrible wars which were  
(14-216)waged, when castles were defended and taken,  
(14-216)prisoners made, many battles fought, and numbers  
(14-216)of men wounded and slain, the state of the country  
(14-216)of Scotland was most miserable. There was no  
(14-216)finding refuge or protection in the law, at a time  
(14-216)when every thing was decided by the strongest  
(14-216)arm and the longest sword. There was no use in  
(14-216)raising crops, when the man who sowed them was  
(14-216)not, in all probability, permitted to reap the grain.

[TG14-217, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 14, p. 217]

(14-217)There was little religious devotion where so much  
(14-217)violence prevailed; and the hearts of the people  
(14-217)became so much inclined to acts of blood and fury,  
(14-217)that all laws of humanity and charity were transgressed  
(14-217)without scruple. People were found starved  
(14-217)to death in the woods with their families, while the  
(14-217)country was so depopulated and void of cultivation,  
(14-217)that the wild-deer came out of the remote forests,  
(14-217)and approached near to cities and the dwellings of  
(14-217)men. Whole families were reduced to eat grass,  
(14-217)and others, it is said, found a more horrible aliment

(14-217)in the flesh of their fellow-creatures. One wretch  
(14-217)used to set traps for human beings as if for wild-  
(14-217)beasts, and subsisted on their flesh. This cannibal  
(14-217)was called Christian of the Cleek, from the cleek  
(14-217)or hook which he used in his horrid traps.

(14-217)In the middle of all these horrors, the English  
(14-217)and Scottish knights and nobles, when there was  
(14-217)any truce between the countries, supplied the place  
(14-217)of the wars in which they were commonly engaged,  
(14-217)with tournaments and games of chivalry. These  
(14-217)were meetings not for the express purpose of fighting,  
(14-217)but for that of trying which was the best man-  
(14-217)at-arms. But instead of wrestling, leaping, or  
(14-217)running races on foot or horse, the fashion then  
(14-217)was that the gentlemen tilted together, that is,  
(14-217)rode against each other in armour with their long  
(14-217)lances, and tried which could bear the other out of  
(14-217)the saddle, and throw him to the ground. Sometimes  
(14-217)they fought on foot with swords and axes;  
(14-217)and although all was meant in courtesy and fair  
(14-217)play, yet lives were often lost in this idle manner

[TG14-218, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 14, p. 218]

(14-218)as much as if the contest had been carried on with  
(14-218)the purpose of armed battle and deadly hatred.  
(14-218)In later days they fought with swords purposely  
(14-218)blunted on the edge, and with lances which had no  
(14-218)steel point; but in the times we speak of at present,  
(14-218)they used in tilts and tournaments the same weapons  
(14-218)which they employed in war.

(14-218)A very noted entertainment of this kind was  
(14-218)given to both Scottish and English champions by  
(14-218)Henry of Lancaster, then called Earl of Derby,  
(14-218)and afterwards King Henry IV of England. He  
(14-218)invited the Knight of Liddesdale, the good Sir

(14-218)Alexander Ramsay, and about twenty other distinguished  
(14-218)Scottish knights, to a tilting match, which  
(14-218)was to take place near Berwick. After receiving  
(14-218)and entertaining his Scottish guests nobly, the Earl  
(14-218)of Derby began to enquire of Ramsay in what  
(14-218)manner of armour the knights should tilt together.

(14-218)"With shields of plate," said Ramsay, "such as  
(14-218)men use in tournaments."

(14-218)This may be supposed a peculiarly weighty and  
(14-218)strong kind of armour, intended merely for this  
(14-218)species of encounter.

(14-218)"Nay," said the Earl of Derby, "we shall gain  
(14-218)little praise if we tilt in such safety; let us rather  
(14-218)use the lighter armour which we wear in battle."

(14-218)"Content are we," answered Sir Alexander  
(14-218)Ramsay, "to fight in our silk doublets, if such be  
(14-218)your lordship's pleasure."

(14-218)The knight of Liddesdale was wounded on the  
(14-218)wrist by the splinter of a spear, and was obliged to  
(14-218)desist from the exercise. A Scottish knight called

[TG14-219, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 14, p. 219]

(14-219)Sir Patrick Grahame tilted with a warlike English  
(14-219)baron named Talbot, whose life was saved by his  
(14-219)wearing two breastplates. The Scottish lance  
(14-219)pierced through both, and sunk an inch into the  
(14-219)breast. Had he been only armed as according to  
(14-219)agreement, Talbot had been a dead man. Another  
(14-219)English knight challenged the Grahame at supper-  
(14-219)time, to run three courses with him the next day.

(14-219)"Dost thou ask to tilt with me?" said the  
(14-219)Grahame; "rise early in the morning, confess your  
(14-219)sins, and make your peace with God, for you shall  
(14-219)sup in paradise." Accordingly, on the ensuing  
(14-219)morning, Grahame ran him through the body with



(14-219)his lance, and he died on the spot. Another English  
(14-219)knight was also slain, and one of the Scots  
(14-219)mortally wounded. William Ramsay was borne  
(14-219)through the helmet with a lance, the splinter of the  
(14-219)broken spear remaining in his skull, and nailing his  
(14-219)helmet to his head. As he was expected to die on  
(14-219)the spot, a priest was sent for, who heard him confess  
(14-219)his sins, without the helmet being removed.

(14-219)"Ah, it is a goodly sight," quoth the good Earl  
(14-219)of Derby, much edified by this spectacle, "to see  
(14-219)a knight make his shrift" (that is, confession of his  
(14-219)sins) "in his helmet. God send me such an  
(14-219)ending!"

(14-219)But when the shrift was over, Sir Alexander  
(14-219)Ramsay, to whom the wounded knight was brother,  
(14-219)or kinsman, made him lie down at full length, and,  
(14-219)with surgery as rough as their pastime, held his  
(14-219)friend's head down with his foot, while, by main  
(14-219)strength, he pulled the fragment of the spear out

[TG14-220, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 14, p. 220]

(14-220)of the helmet, and out of the wound. Then William  
(14-220)Ramsay started up, and said, "that he should  
(14-220)do well enough."

(14-220)"Lo! what stout hearts men may bear!" said  
(14-220)the Earl of Derby, as much admiring the surgical  
(14-220)treatment as he had done the religious. Whether  
(14-220)the patient lived or died, does not appear.

(14-220)In fixing the prizes, it was settled that the English  
(14-220)knights should decide which of the Scots had  
(14-220)done best, and the Scots should, in like manner,  
(14-220)judge the valour of the English. Much equity  
(14-220)was shown in the decision on both sides, and the  
(14-220)Earl of Derby was munificent in distribution of  
(14-220)gifts and prizes. This may serve to show you the

(14-220)amusements of this stirring period, of which war  
(14-220)and danger were the sport as well as the serious  
(14-220)occupation.

[TG15-221, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 15, p. 221]

(15-221)Notwithstanding the valiant defence maintained  
(15-221)by the Scots, their country was reduced to  
(15-221)a most disastrous state, by the continued wars of  
(15-221)Edward III, who was a wise and warlike King as  
(15-221)ever lived. Could he have turned against Scotland  
(15-221)the whole power of his kingdom, he might  
(15-221)probably have effected the complete conquest,  
(15-221)which had been so long attempted in vain. But  
(15-221)while the wars in Scotland were at the hottest,  
(15-221)Edward became also engaged in hostilities with  
(15-221)France, having laid claim to the crown of that  
(15-221)kingdom. Thus Edward was obliged to slacken  
(15-221)his efforts in Scotland, and the patriots began to  
(15-221)gain ground decisively in the dreadful contest  
(15-221)which was so obstinately maintained on both sides.

(15-221)The Scots sent an embassy to obtain money and  
(15-221)assistance from the French; and they received supplies  
(15-221)of both, which enabled them to recover their  
(15-221)castles and towns from the English.

[TG15-222, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 15, p. 222]

(15-222)Edinburgh castle was taken from the invaders  
(15-222)by a stratagem. The Knight of Liddesdale, with  
(15-222)two hundred chosen men, embarked at Dundee, in  
(15-222)a merchant vessel commanded by one William  
(15-222)Curry. The shipmaster, on their arrival at Leith,  
(15-222)went with a party of his sailors to the castle, carrying  
(15-222)barrels of wine and hampers of provisions,  
(15-222)which he pretended it was his desire to sell to the

(15-222)English governor and his garrison. But getting  
(15-222)entrance at the gate under this pretext, they raised  
(15-222)the war-shout of Douglas, and the Knight of Liddesdale  
(15-222)rushed in with his soldiers, and secured the  
(15-222)castle. Perth, and other important places, were  
(15-222)also retaken by the Scots, and Edward Baliol  
(15-222)retired out of the country, in despair of making  
(15-222)good his pretensions to the crown.

(15-222)The nobles of Scotland, finding the affairs of the  
(15-222)kingdom more prosperous, now came to the resolution  
(15-222)of bringing back from France, where he had  
(15-222)resided for safety, their young king, David II.,  
(15-222)and his consort, Queen Joanna. They arrived in  
(15-222)1341.

(15-222)David II was still a youth, neither did he possess  
(15-222)at any period of life the wisdom and talents  
(15-222)of his father, the great King Robert. The nobles  
(15-222)of Scotland had become each a petty prince on his  
(15-222)own estates; they made war on each other as they  
(15-222)had done upon the English, and the poor King  
(15-222)possessed no power of restraining them. A most  
(15-222)melancholy instance of this discord took place,  
(15-222)short after David's return from France.

(15-222)I have told you how Sir Alexander Ramsay and

[TG15-223, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 15, p. 223]

(15-223)the knight of Liddesdale assisted each other in  
(15-223)fighting against the English. They were great  
(15-223)friends and companions in arms. But Ramsay,  
(15-223)having taken by storm the strong castle of Roxburgh,  
(15-223)the King bestowed on him the office of  
(15-223)sheriff of that county, which was before enjoyed  
(15-223)by the Knight of Liddesdale. As this was placing  
(15-223)another person in his room, the Knight of Liddesdale  
(15-223)altogether forgot his old friendship for Ramsay,

(15-223)and resolved to put him to death. He came  
(15-223)suddenly upon him with a strong party of men,  
(15-223)while he was administering justice at Hawick.  
(15-223)Ramsay, having no suspicion of injury from the  
(15-223)hand of his old comrade, and having few men with  
(15-223)him, was easily overpowered, and being wounded,  
(15-223)was hurried away to the lonely castle of the Hermitage,  
(15-223)which stands in the middle of the morasses  
(15-223)of Liddesdale. Here he was thrown into a dungeon,  
(15-223)where he had no other sustenance than some  
(15-223)grain which fell down from a granary above; and  
(15-223)after lingering seventeen days in that dreadful condition,  
(15-223)the brave Sir Alexander Ramsay died.  
(15-223)This was in 1342. Nearly four hundred and fifty  
(15-223)years afterwards, that is, about forty years ago, a  
(15-223)mason, digging amongst the ruins of Hermitage  
(15-223)castle, broke into a dungeon, where lay a quantity

[TG15-224, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 15, p. 224]

(15-224)of chaff, some human bones, and a bridle bit, which  
(15-224)were supposed to mark the vault as the placed of  
(15-224)Ramsay's death. The bridle bit was given to  
(15-224)grandpapa, who presented it to the present gallant  
(15-224)Earl of Dalhousie, a brave soldier, like his ancestor  
(15-224)Sir Alexander Ramsay, from whom he is lineally  
(15-224)descended.

(15-224)The King was much displeased at the commission  
(15-224)of so great a crime, on the person of so faithful  
(15-224)a subject. He made some attempts to avenge the  
(15-224)murder, but the Knight of Liddesdale was too  
(15-224)powerful to be punished, and the King was obliged  
(15-224)to receive him again into friendship and confidence.  
(15-224)But God in his own good time revenged this cruel  
(15-224)deed. About five years after the crime was committed,  
(15-224)the Knight of Liddesdale was taken

(15-224)prisoner by the English at the battle of Neville's  
(15-224)Cross, near Durham, and is suspected of having  
(15-224)obtained his liberty by entering into a treacherous  
(15-224)league with the English monarch. He had no  
(15-224)time to carry his treason, however, into effect;  
(15-224) for, shortly after his liberation, he was  
(15-224) slain whilst hunting in Ettrick Forest,  
(15-224) by his near relation and godson, William  
(15-224)Lord Douglas.(8/1353) The place where he fell was  
(15-224)called from his name, William-hope. It is a pity  
(15-224)that the Knight of Liddesdale committed that  
(15-224)great crime of murdering Ramsay, and entered

[TG15-225, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 15, p. 225]

(15-225)into the treasonable treaty with the King of England.  
(15-225)In other respects, he was ranked so high in  
(15-225)public esteem, that he was called the Flower of  
(15-225)Chivalry; and an old writer has said of him, "He  
(15-225)was terrible in arms, modest and gentle in peace,  
(15-225)the scourge of England, and the buckler and wall  
(15-225)of Scotland; one whom good success never made  
(15-225)presumptuous, and whom evil fortune never  
discouraged(15-225)."

(15-225)We return to the state of Scotland at the time  
(15-225)when the young King was restored. Battles and  
(15-225)skirmishes were fought on all sides; but the Scots  
(15-225)having gained back the whole of their own country,  
(15-225)the war became less inveterate; and although no  
(15-225)settled peace took place, yet truces, to endure for  
(15-225)a certain number of months and years, were agreed  
(15-225)upon from time to time; and the English historian  
(15-225)allege that the Scottish nation were always  
(15-225)ready to break them when a tempting opportunity  
(15-225)occurred.

(15-225)Such a truce was in existence about 1346, when,

(15-225)Edward the Third being absent in France, and in  
(15-225)the act of besieging Calais, David was induced, by  
(15-225)the pressing and urgent counsels of the French  
(15-225)King, to renew the war, and profit by the King's  
(15-225)absence from England. The young King of Scotland  
(15-225)raised, accordingly, a large army, and entering  
(15-225)England on the west frontier, he marched eastward  
(15-225)towards Durham, harassing and wasting the country  
(15-225)with great severity; the Scots boasting, that,  
(15-225)now the King and his nobles were absent, there

[TG15-226, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 15, p. 226]

(15-226)were none in England to oppose them, save priests  
(15-226)and base mechanics.

(15-226)But they were greatly deceived. The lords of  
(15-226)the northern counties of England, together with  
(15-226)the Archbishop of York, assembled a gallant army.  
(15-226)They defeated the vanguard of the Scots, and came  
(15-226)upon the main body by surprise. The English  
(15-226)army, in which there were many ecclesiastics, bore,  
(15-226)as their standard, a crucifix, displayed amid the  
(15-226)banners of the nobility. The Scots had taken post  
(15-226)among some enclosures, which greatly embarrassed  
(15-226)their movements, and their ranks remaining stationary,  
(15-226)were, as on former occasions, destroyed  
(15-226)by the English arrows. Here Sir John Grahame  
(15-226)offered his services to disperse the bowmen, if he  
(15-226)were intrusted with a body of cavalry. But although  
(15-226)this was the movement which decided the  
(15-226)battle of Bannockburn, Grahame could not obtain  
(15-226)the means of attempting it. In the mean time the  
(15-226)Scottish army fell fast into disorder. The King  
(15-226)himself fought bravely in the midst of his nobles  
(15-226)and was twice wounded with arrows. At length  
(15-226)he was captured by John Copland, a Northumberland

(15-226)gentleman; the same who was made prisoner  
(15-226)at Dunbar. He did not secure his royal captive  
(15-226)without resistance; for in the struggle, the King  
(15-226)dashed out two of Copland's teeth with his dagger.  
(15-226)The left wing of the Scottish army continued fighting  
(15-226)long after the rest were routed, and at length  
(15-226)made a safe retreat. It was commanded by the  
(15-226)Steward of Scotland and the Earl of March.  
(15-226)Very many of the Scottish nobility were slain;

[TG15-227, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 15, p. 227]

(15-227)very many made prisoners. The King himself was  
(15-227)led in triumph through the streets of London, and  
(15-227)committed to the Tower a close prisoner. This  
(15-227)battle was fought at Neville's Cross, near Durham,  
(15-227)on 17th October, 1346.

(15-227)Thus was another great victory gained by the  
(15-227)English over the Scots. It was followed by farther  
(15-227)advantages, which gave the victors for a time  
(15-227)possession of the country from the Scottish Border  
(15-227)as far as the verge of Lothian. But the Scots, as  
(15-227)usual, were no sooner compelled to momentary  
(15-227)submission, than they began to consider the means  
(15-227)of shaking off the yoke.

(15-227)William Douglas, son to that Douglas who was  
(15-227)killed at Halidon hill, near Berwick, now displayed  
(15-227)his share of that courage and conduct which seemed  
(15-227)the birthright of that extraordinary family. He  
(15-227)recovered his own territories of Douglasdale, drove  
(15-227)the English out of Ettrick forest, and assisted the  
(15-227)inhabitants of Teviotdale in regaining their  
(15-227)independence.

(15-227)On this occasion, indeed, the invasion of the  
(15-227)English was not attended with same extensively  
(15-227)bad effects as on former victories obtained by them.

(15-227)The title of Baliol was not again set up, and that  
(15-227)nominal sovereign surrendered to the English  
(15-227)monarch all his right and interest in the kingdom  
(15-227)of Scotland, in testimony of which he presented  
(15-227)him a handful of earth belonging to the country,  
(15-227)and crown of gold. Edward, in reward of this  
(15-227)surrender of the Scottish crown, fixed a large  
(15-227)annual income upon Baliol, who retired from public

[TG15-228, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 15, p. 228]

(15-228)affairs, and lived ever afterwards in such obscurity,  
(15-228)that historians do not even record the period of his  
(15-228)death. Nothing which he afterwards did bore the  
(15-228)same marks of courage and talent, as the enterprise  
(15-228)in which he commanded the disinherited barons,  
(15-228)and obtained the great victory at the battle of  
(15-228)Dupplin. It seems therefore likely, that he had  
(15-228)upon that occasion some assistance which he did  
(15-228)not afterwards enjoy.

(15-228)Edward III was not more fortunate in making  
(15-228)wars on Scotland in his own name, than when he  
(15-228)used the pretext of supporting Baliol. He marched  
(15-228)into East-Lothian in spring 1355, and committed  
(15-228)such ravages that the period was long marked by  
(15-228)that name of the Burned Candlemas, because so  
(15-228)many towns and villages were burned. But the  
(15-228)Scots had removed every species of provisions  
(15-228)which could be of use to the invaders, and avoided  
(15-228)a general battle, while they engaged in a number  
(15-228)of skirmishes. In this manner Edward was compelled  
(15-228)to retreat out of Scotland, after sustaining  
(15-228)much loss.

(15-228)After the failure of this effort, Edward seems to  
(15-228)have despaired of the conquest of Scotland, and entered  
(15-228)into terms for a truce, and for setting the



(15-228)King at liberty.

(15-228)Thus David II. at length obtained his freedom  
(15-228)from the English, after he had been detained in  
(15-228)prison eleven years. The Scots agreed to pay a  
(15-228)ransom of one hundred thousand merks, a heavy  
(15-228)charge on a country always poor, and exhausted by  
(15-228)the late wars. The people were so delighted to see

[TG15-229, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 15, p. 229]

(15-229)the King once more, that they followed him every  
(15-229)where; and (which shows the rudeness of the  
(15-229)times) rushed even into his private chamber, till,  
(15-229)incensed at their troublesome and intrusive loyalty,  
(15-229)the King snatched a mace from an officer, and broke  
(15-229)with his own royal hand the head of the liegeman  
(15-229)who was nearest to him. After this rebuke, saith  
(15-229)the historian, he was permitted to be private in his  
(15-229)apartment.

(15-229)The latter years of this King's life have nothing  
(15-229)very remarkable, excepting that, after the death of  
(15-229)Joanna of England, his first wife, he made an imprudent  
(15-229)marriage with one Margaret Logie, a  
(15-229)woman of great beauty, but of obscure family; he  
(15-229)was afterwards divorced or separated from her.  
(15-229)He had no children by either of his wives. )David  
(15-229)the Second died at the age of forty-seven years, in  
(15-229)the castle of Edinburgh, 22nd February, 1370-1.  
(15-229)He had reigned forty-two years, of which eleven  
(15-229)were spent in captivity.

[TG16-230, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 16, p. 230]

(16-230)As David the Second died childless, the male  
(16-230)line of his father, the great Robert Bruce, was at  
(16-230)an end. But the attachment of the Scottish nation

(16-230)naturally turned to the family of that heroic prince,  
(16-230)and they resolved to confer the crown on a grandson  
(16-230)of his by the mother's side. Marjory, the  
(16-230)daughter of Robert Bruce, had married Walter,  
(16-230)the Lord High Steward of Scotland, and the sixth  
(16-230)of his family who had enjoyed that high dignity, in  
(16-230)consequence of possessing which the family had  
(16-230)acquired the surname of Stewart. This Walter  
(16-230)Stewart, with his wife Marjory, were ancestors of  
(16-230)the long line of Stewarts who afterwards ruled  
(16-230)Scotland, and came at length to be Kings of England  
(16-230)also. The last King of the Stewart family lost  
(16-230)his kingdoms at the great national Revolution in  
(16-230)1688, and his son and grandsons died in exile. The  
(16-230)female line have possession of the crown at this  
(16-230)moment, in the person of our Sovereign, King  
(16-230)George the Fourth. When, therefore, you hear

[TG16-231, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 16, p. 231]

(16-231)of the line of Stewart, you will know that the  
(16-231)descendants of Walter Stewart and Marjory Bruce  
(16-231)are the family meant by that term. It is said, that  
(16-231)the Stewarts were descended from Fleance, the  
(16-231)son of Banquo, whose posterity the witches declared  
(16-231)were to be Kings of Scotland, and who was  
(16-231)murdered by Macbeth. But this seems a very  
(16-231)doubtful tradition.

(16-231)Walter, the Steward of Scotland, who married  
(16-231)Bruce's daughter, was a gallant man, and fought  
(16-231)bravely at Bannockburn, where he had a high command.

(16-231)But he died young, and much regretted.  
(16-231)Robert Stewart, his son by Marjory Bruce, grand-  
(16-231)son, of course, of King Robert, was the person  
(16-231)now called to the throne. He was a good and  
(16-231)kind-tempered prince. When young he had been

(16-231)a brave soldier; but he was now fifty-five years  
(16-231)old, and subject to a violent inflammation in his  
(16-231)eyes, which rendered them as red as blood. From  
(16-231)these causes he lived a good deal retired, and was  
(16-231)not active enough to be at the head of a fierce and  
(16-231)unmanageable nation like the Scots.

(16-231)Robert Stewart's ascent to the throne was not  
(16-231)unopposed, for it was claimed by a formidable competitor.

(16-231)This was William Earl of Douglas. That  
(16-231)family, in which so many great men had arisen,  
(16-231)was now come to a great pitch of power and prosperity,  
(16-231)and possessed almost a sovereign authority  
(16-231)in the southern parts of Scotland. The Earl of  
(16-231)Douglas was on the present occasion induced to  
(16-231)depart from his claim, upon his son being married  
(16-231)to Euphemia, the daughter of Robert II. Stewart

[TG16-232, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 16, p. 232]

(16-232)therefore was crowned without farther opposition.  
(16-232)But the extreme power of the Douglasses, which  
(16-232)raised them almost to a level with the crown, was  
(16-232)afterwards the occasion of great national commotion  
(16-232)and distress.

(16-232)There were not many things of moment in the  
(16-232)history of Robert II. But the wars with England  
(16-232)were less frequent, and the Scots had learned a  
(16-232)better way of conducting them. The following  
(16-232)instances may be selected.

(16-232)In 1385, the French, finding themselves hard  
(16-232)pressed by the English in their own country,  
(16-232)resolved to send an army into Scotland, to assist  
(16-232)that nation in making war upon the English, and  
(16-232)thus find work for the latter people at home. They  
(16-232)sent, therefore, one thousand men-at-arms, --  
(16-232)knights, and squires, that is, in full armour; and

(16-232)as each of these had four or five soldiers under  
(16-232)him, the whole force was very considerable. They  
(16-232)sent also twelve hundred suits of complete armour  
(16-232)to the Scots, with a large sum of money, to assist  
(16-232)them to make war. This great force was commanded  
(16-232)by John de Vienne, High-Admiral of  
(16-232)France, a brave and distinguished general.

[TG16-233, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 16, p. 233]

(16-233)In the mean time, the King of England, Richard  
(16-233)II, summoned together, on his side, a larger army  
(16-233)perhaps than any King of England had ever before  
(16-233)commanded, and moved towards the Scottish  
(16-233)Border. The Scots also assembled large forces,  
(16-233)and the French admiral expected there would be  
(16-233)a great pitched battle. He said to the Scottish  
(16-233)nobles, "You have always said, that if you had  
(16-233)some hundreds of French men-at-arms to help  
(16-233)you, you would give battle to the English. Now,  
(16-233)here we are to give you aid -- Let us give battle."

(16-233)The Scottish nobles answered, that they would  
(16-233)not run so great a hazard, as risk the fate of the  
(16-233)country in one battle; and one of them, probably  
(16-233)Douglas, conveyed John de Vienne to a narrow  
(16-233)pass, where, unseen themselves, they might see the  
(16-233)army of England march through. The Scot made  
(16-233)the admiral remark at the great multitude of  
(16-233)archers, the number and high discipline of the  
(16-233)English men-at-arms, and then asked the Frenchman  
(16-233)as a soldier, whether he could advise the  
(16-233)Scots to oppose these clouds of archers with a few  
(16-233)ill-trained Highland bowmen, or encounter with  
(16-233)their small trotting nags the onset of the brilliant  
(16-233)chivalry of England.

(16-233)The Admiral de Vienne could not but own that

(16-233)the risk was too unequal. "But yet, if you do  
(16-233)not fight," he said, "what do you mean to do? If  
(16-233)you do not oppose this great force, the English  
(16-233)will destroy your country."

(16-233)"Let them do their worst," said Douglas,  
(16-233)smiling; "they will find but little to destroy."

[TG16-234, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 16, p. 234]

(16-234)Our people are all retired into woods, hills, and  
(16-234)morasses, and have driven off their cattle, which is  
(16-234)their only property, along with them. The English  
(16-234)will find nothing either to take away or to  
(16-234)eat. The houses of the gentlemen are small  
(16-234)towers, with thick walls, which even fire will not  
(16-234)destroy; as for the common people, they dwell in  
(16-234)mere huts, and if the English choose to burn them,  
(16-234)a few trees from the wood is all that is necessary to  
(16-234)build them up again."

(16-234)"But what will you do with your army if you  
(16-234)do not fight?" said the Frenchman; "and how  
(16-234)will your people endure the distress, and famine,  
(16-234)and plunder, which must be the consequences of  
(16-234)the invasion?"

(16-234)"You shall see that our army will not lie idle,"  
(16-234)said Douglas; "and as for our Scottish people,  
(16-234)they will endure pillage, and they will endure famine,  
(16-234)and every other extremity of war; but they  
(16-234)will not endure an English master."

(16-234)The event showed the truth of what Douglas  
(16-234)had said. The great army of England entered  
(16-234)Scotland on the eastern side of the frontier, and  
(16-234)marched on, much embarrassed and distressed for  
(16-234)want of provisions, laying waste the villages and  
(16-234)what property they found, but finding very little  
(16-234)to destroy, and nothing to subsist upon. On the

(16-234)contrary, no sooner did the Scottish nobles learn  
(16-234)that the English were fairly engaged in Scotland,  
(16-234)than, with a numerous army, consisting chiefly of  
(16-234)light cavalry, like that led by Douglas and Randolph  
(16-234)in 1327, they burst into the western counties

[TG16-235, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 16, p. 235]

(16-235)of England, where they gained more spoil, and did  
(16-235)more damage, in the course of a day or two's march,  
(16-235)than the English could have done in Scotland, had  
(16-235)they burned the whole country from the Border to  
(16-235)Aberdeen.

(16-235)The English were quickly called back to the defence  
(16-235)of their own country, and though there had  
(16-235)been no battle, yet from bad roads, want of forage,  
(16-235)scantiness of provisions, and similar causes, they  
(16-235)had sustained a heavy loss of men and horses;  
(16-235)while the Scottish army, on the contrary, had kept  
(16-235)good cheer in a country so much richer than their  
(16-235)own, and were grown wealthy by plunder. This  
(16-235)wise scheme of defence had been recommended to  
(16-235)his posterity by the Bruce, as the only effectual  
(16-235)mode of defending the Scottish frontier.

(16-235)As to the French auxiliaries, they quarrelled  
(16-235)very much with the reception they met with. They  
(16-235)complained that the nation which they came to assist  
(16-235)treated them with no kindness or good-will,  
(16-235)and that they withheld from them forage, provisions,  
(16-235)and other supplies. The Scots replied, on  
(16-235)the other hand, that their allies were an expense  
(16-235)to them, without being of any use; that their wants  
(16-235)were many, and could not be supplied in so poor a  
(16-235)country as Scotland; and, finally, that they insulted  
(16-235)the inhabitants, and pillaged the country wherever  
(16-235)they durst. Nor would the Scots permit the French

(16-235)to leave Scotland till they gave security that they  
(16-235)would pay the expenses of their own maintenance.

(16-235)The French knights, who had hoped to  
(16-235)acquire both wealth and fame, returned in very bad

[TG16-236, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 16, p. 236]

(16-236)humour from a kingdom where the people were so  
(16-236)wild and uncivilized, and the country so mountainous  
(16-236)and poor; where the patches of cultivated  
(16-236)land bore no proportion to the extended wastes, and  
(16-236)the wild animals were much more numerous than  
(16-236)those which were trained for the use of man.

(16-236)It was from prudence, not from want of courage,  
(16-236)that the Scots avoided great battles with the English.  
(16-236)They readily engaged in smaller actions,  
(16-236)when they fought with the utmost valour on both  
(16-236)sides, till, as an old historian expresses it, sword  
(16-236)and lance could endure no longer, and then they  
(16-236)would part from each other, saying, "Good day;  
(16-236)and thanks for the sport you have shown." A  
(16-236)very remarkable instance of such a desperate battle  
(16-236)occurred in the year 1388.

(16-236)The Scottish nobles had determined upon an  
(16-236)invasion of England on a large scale, and had  
(16-236)assembled a great army for that purpose; but  
(16-236)learning that the people of Northumberland were  
(16-236)raising an army on the eastern frontier, they  
(16-236)resolved to limit their incursion to that which  
(16-236)might be achieved by the Earl of Douglas, with a

[TG16-237, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 16, p. 237]

(16-237)chosen band of four or five thousand men. With  
(16-237)this force he penetrated into the mountainous  
(16-237)frontier of England, where an assault was least

(16-237)expected, and issuing forth near Newcastle, fell  
(16-237)upon the flat and rich country around, slaying,  
(16-237)plundering, burning, and loading his army with  
(16-237)spoil.

(16-237)Percy, Earl of Northumberland, an English  
(16-237)noble of great power, and with whom the Douglas  
(16-237)had frequently had encounters, sent his two sons,  
(16-237)Sir Henry and Sir Ralph Percy, to stop the  
(16-237)progress of this invasion. Both were gallant  
(16-237)knights; but the first, who, from his impetuosity,  
(16-237)was called Hotspur, was one of the most distinguished  
(16-237)warriors in England, as Douglas was in  
(16-237)Scotland. The brothers threw themselves hastily  
(16-237)into Newcastle, to defend that important town;  
(16-237)and as Douglas, in an insulting manner, drew up  
(16-237)his followers before the walls, they came out to  
(16-237)skirmish with the Scots. Douglas and Henry  
(16-237)Percy encountered personally; and it so chanced,  
(16-237)that Douglas in the struggle got possession of  
(16-237)a small ornament of silk, embroidered with pearls,  
(16-237)on which was represented a lion, the cognizance,  
(16-237)as it is called, of the Percies. Douglas shook this  
(16-237)trophy aloft, and declared that he would carry  
(16-237)it into Scotland, and plant it on his castle of  
(16-237)Dalkeith.

(16-237)"That," said Percy, "shalt thou never do. I  
(16-237)will regain my lance ere thou canst get back into  
(16-237)Scotland."

[TG16-238, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 16, p. 238]

(16-238)"Then," said Douglas, "come to seek it, and  
(16-238)thou shalt find it before my tent."

(16-238)The Scottish army, having completed the purpose  
(16-238)of their expedition, began their retreat up the  
(16-238)vale of the little river Reed, which afforded a tolerable



(16-238)road running north-westward towards their  
(16-238)own frontier. They encamped at Otterburn, about  
(16-238)twenty miles from the Scottish border, on the 19th  
(16-238)August, 1388.

(16-238)In the middle of the night, the alarm arose in  
(16-238)the Scottish camp, that the English host were  
(16-238)coming upon them, and the moonlight showed the  
(16-238)approach of Sir Henry Percy, with a body of men  
(16-238)superior in number to that of Douglas. He had  
(16-238)already crossed the Reed water, and was advancing  
(16-238)towards the left flank of the Scottish army. Douglas,  
(16-238)not choosing to receive the assault in that  
(16-238)position, drew his men out of the camp, and with a  
(16-238)degree of military skill which could scarce have  
(16-238)been expected when his forces were of such an  
(16-238)undisciplined character, he altogether changed the  
(16-238)position of the army, and presented his troops with  
(16-238)their front to the advancing English.

(16-238)Hotspur, in the mean time, marched his squadrons  
(16-238)through the deserted camp, where there were none  
(16-238)left but a few servants and stragglers of the army.  
(16-238)The interruptions which the English troops met  
(16-238)with, threw them a little into disorder, when the  
(16-238)moon arising showed them the Scottish army,  
(16-238)which they had supposed to be retreating, drawn  
(16-238)up in complete order, and prepared to fight. The  
(16-238)battle commenced with the greatest fury; for Percy

[TG16-239, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 16, p. 239]

(16-239)and Douglas were the two most distinguished soldiers  
(16-239)of their time, and each army trusted in the  
(16-239)courage and talents of their commanders, whose  
(16-239)names were shouted on either side. The Scots,  
(16-239)who were outnumbered, were at length about to  
(16-239)give way, when Douglas, their leader, caused his

(16-239)banner to advance, attended by his best men. He  
(16-239)himself, shouting his war-cry of "Douglas!" rushed  
(16-239)forward, clearing his way with the blows of his  
(16-239)battle-axe, and breaking into the very thickest of  
(16-239)the enemy. He fell, at length, under three mortal  
(16-239)wounds. Had his death been observed by the  
(16-239)enemy, the event would probably have decided the  
(16-239)battle against the Scots; but the English only  
(16-239)knew that some brave man-at-arms had fallen.  
(16-239)Mean time the other Scottish nobles pressed forward,  
(16-239)and found their general dying among several  
(16-239)of his faithful esquires and pages, who lay slain  
(16-239)around. A stout priest, called William of North  
(16-239)Berwick, the chaplain of Douglas, was protecting  
(16-239)the body of his wounded patron with a long lance.

(16-239)"How fares it, cousin?" said Sinclair, the first  
(16-239)Scottish knight who came up to the expiring leader.

(16-239)"Indifferently," answered Douglas; "but blessed  
(16-239)be God, my ancestors have died in fields of  
(16-239)battle, not on down-beds. I sink fast; but let them  
(16-239)still cry my war-cry, and conceal my death from  
(16-239)my followers. There was a tradition in our family  
(16-239)that a dead Douglas should win a field, and I trust  
(16-239)it will be this day accomplished."

(16-239)The nobles did as he had enjoined; they concealed  
(16-239)the Earl's body, and again rushed on to the  
(16-239)battle, shouting "Douglas! Douglas!" louder than

[TG16-240, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 16, p. 240]

(16-240)before. The English were weakened by the loss  
(16-240)of the brave brothers, Henry and Ralph Percy,  
(16-240)both of whom were made prisoners, fighting most  
(16-240)gallantly, and almost no man of note amongst the  
(16-240)English escaped death or captivity. Hence a Scottish  
(16-240)poet has said of the name of Douglas,

(16-240) "Hosts have been known at the dread sound to yield,

(16-240) And, Douglas dead, his name hath won the field."

(16-240)Sir Henry Percy became the prisoner of Sir

(16-240)Hugh Montgomery, who obliged him for ransom

(16-240)to build a castle for him at Penoon in Ayrshire.

(16-240)The battle of Otterburn was disastrous to the leaders

(16-240)on both sides -- Percy being made captive, and

(16-240)Douglas slain on the field. It has been the subject

(16-240)of many songs and poems, and the great historian

(16-240)Froissart says, that, one other action only excepted,

(16-240)it was the best fought battle of that warlike time.

(16-240)Robert II died at his castle of Dundonald in

(16-240)Kyle, after a short illness, in the seventy-fifth year

(16-240)of his age, on the 19th April, 1390. His reign of

(16-240)nineteen years did not approach in glory to that of

(16-240)his maternal grandfather, Robert Bruce; but it

(16-240)was far more fortunate than that of David II.

(16-240)The claims of Baliol to the crown were not revived;

(16-240)and though the English made more than one incursion

(16-240)into Scotland, they were never able to retain

(16-240)long possession of the country.

[TG17-241, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 17, p. 241]

(17-241)THE eldest son of Robert II was originally called

(17-241)John. But it was a popular remark, that the kings

(17-241)named John, both of France and England, had

(17-241)been unfortunate, and the Scottish people were

(17-241)very partial to the name of Robert, from its having

(17-241)been borne by the great Bruce. John Stewart,

(17-241)therefore, on ascending the Scottish

(17-241)throne, changed his name to that of

(17-241)Robert III(14 Aug. 1390). We shall see, however,

(17-241)that this poor king remained as unfortunate as if

(17-241)his name had still be John.

[TG17-242, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 17, p. 242]

(17-242)The disturbances of the Highlands were one of  
(17-242)the plagues of his reign. You must recollect that  
(17-242)that extensive range of mountains was inhabited  
(17-242)by a race of men different in language and manners  
(17-242)from the Lowlanders, and divided into families  
(17-242)called Clans. The English termed them the Wild  
(17-242)Scots, and the French the Scottish Savages; and,  
(17-242)in good truth, very wild and savage they seem to  
(17-242)have been. The losses which the Low Country  
(17-242)had sustained by the English wars had weakened  
(17-242)the districts next to the Highlands so much, that  
(17-242)they became unable to repress the incursions of the  
(17-242)mountaineers, who descended from their hills, took  
(17-242)spoil, burned and destroyed, as if in the country of  
(17-242)an enemy.

(17-242)In 1392, a large body of these highlanders  
(17-242)broke down from the Grampian mountains. The  
(17-242)chiefs were called Clan-Donnochy, or sons of Duncan,  
(17-242)answering to the clan now called Robertson.  
(17-242)A party of the Ogilvies and Lindsays, under Sir  
(17-242)Walter Ogilvy, Sheriff of Angus, marched hastily  
(17-242)against them, and charged them with their lances.  
(17-242)But notwithstanding the advantage of their being  
(17-242)mounted and completely sheathed in armour, the  
(17-242)Highlanders defended themselves with such obstinacy,  
(17-242)as to slay the sheriff and sixty of his followers,  
(17-242)and repulse the Lowland gentlemen. To give  
(17-242)some idea of their ferocity, it is told that Sir David  
(17-242)Lindsay, having in the first encounter run his lance  
(17-242)through the body of one of the Highlanders, bore  
(17-242)him down and pinned him to the earth. In this  
(17-242)condition, and in his dying agonies, the Highlander

[TG17-243, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 17, p. 243]

(17-243)writhed himself upwards on the spear, and exerted  
(17-243)his last strength in fetching a sweeping blow at  
(17-243)the armed knight with his two-handed sword.  
(17-243)The stroke, made with all the last energies of a  
(17-243)dying man, cut through Lindsay's stirrup and steel-  
(17-243)boot, and though it did Not sever his leg from his  
(17-243)body, yet wounded him so severely as to oblige  
(17-243)him to quit the field.

(17-243)It happened, fortunately perhaps for the Lowlands,  
(17-243)that the wild Highlanders were as much  
(17-243)addicted to quarrel with each other as with their  
(17-243)Lowland neighbours. Two clans, or rather two  
(17-243)leagues or confederacies, composed each of several  
(17-243)separate clans, fell into such deadly feud with  
(17-243)each other, as filled the whole neighborhood with  
(17-243)slaughter and discord.

(17-243)When this feud or quarrel could be no other-  
(17-243)wise ended, it was resolved that the difference  
(17-243)should be decided by a combat of thirty men of  
(17-243)the Clan Chattan, against the same number of the  
(17-243)Clan Kay; that the battle should take place on the  
(17-243)North Inch of Perth, a beautiful and level meadow,  
(17-243)in part surrounded by the river Tay; and that it  
(17-243)should be fought in presence of the King and his  
(17-243)nobles. Now, there was a cruel policy in this  
(17-243)arrangement; for it was to be supposed that all the  
(17-243)best and leading men of each clan would desire to  
(17-243)be among the thirty which were to fight for their  
(17-243)honour, and it was no less to be expected that the  
(17-243)battle would be very. bloody and desperate. Thus,  
(17-243)the probable event would be, that both clans, having

[TG17-244, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, ch. 17, p. 244]

(17-244)lost very many of their best and bravest men,

(17-244)would be more easily managed in future. Such  
(17-244)was probably the view of the King and his  
(17-244)counsellors in permitting this desperate conflict, which  
(17-244)however, was much in the spirit of the times.

(17-244)The parties on each side were drawn out, armed  
(17-244)with sword and target, axe and dagger, and stood  
(17-244)looking on each other with fierce and savage aspects,  
(17-244)when, just as the signal for fight was expected, the  
(17-244)commander of the Clan Chattan perceived that one  
(17-244)of his men, whose heart had failed him, had  
(17-244)deserted his standard. There was no time to seek  
(17-244)another man from the clan, so the chieftain, as his  
(17-244)only resource, was obliged to offer a reward to any  
(17-244)one who would fight in the room of the fugitive.  
(17-244)Perhaps you think it might be difficult to get a  
(17-244)man, who, for a small hire, would undergo the perils  
(17-244)of a battle which was likely to be so obstinate and  
(17-244)deadly. But in that fighting age, men valued their  
(17-244)lives lightly. One Henry Wynd, a citizen of  
(17-244)Perth, and a saddler by trade, a little bandy-legged  
(17-244)man, but of great strength and activity, and well  
(17-244)accustomed to use the broadsword, offered himself,  
(17-244)for half a French crown, to serve on the part of  
(17-244)the Clan Chattan in the battle of that day.

(17-244)The signal was then given by sound of the royal  
(17-244)trumpets, and of the great war-bagpipes of the  
(17-244)Highlanders, and the two parties fell on each other  
(17-244)with the utmost fury; their natural ferocity of  
(17-244)temper being excited by feudal hatred against the  
(17-244)hostile clan, zeal for the honour of their own, and  
(17-244)a consciousness that they were fighting in presence

[TG17-245, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 17, p. 245]

(17-245)of the King and nobles of Scotland. As  
(17-245)they fought with the two-handed sword and axe,

(17-245)the wounds they inflicted on each other were of a  
(17-245)ghastly size and character. Heads were cloven  
(17-245)asunder, limbs were lopped from the trunk. The  
(17-245)meadow was soon drenched with blood, and covered  
(17-245)with dead and wounded men.

(17-245)In the midst of the deadly conflict, the chieftain  
(17-245)of the Clan Chattan observed that Henry Wynd,  
(17-245)after he had slain one of the clan Kay, drew aside,  
(17-245)and did not seem willing to fight more.

(17-245)"How is this," said he, "art thou afraid ?"

(17-245)"Not I," answered Henry; "but I have done  
(17-245)enough of work for half-a-crown."

(17-245)"Forward and fight," said the Highland chief;  
(17-245)"he that doth not grudge his day's work, I will  
(17-245)not stint him in his wages."

(17-245)Thus encouraged, Henry Wynd again plunged  
(17-245)into the conflict, and, by his excellence as a swordsman,  
(17-245)contributed a great deal to the victory, which  
(17-245)at length fell to the Clan Chattan. Ten of the  
(17-245)victors, with Henry Wynd, whom the Highlanders  
(17-245)called the Gow Chrom (that is, the crooked or  
(17-245)bandy-legged smith, for he was both a smith and  
(17-245)saddler, war-saddles being then made of steel),  
(17-245)were left alive, but they were all wounded. Only  
(17-245)one of the clan Kay survived, and he was unhurt.  
(17-245)But this single individual dared not oppose himself  
(17-245)to eleven men, though all more or less injured, but,  
(17-245)throwing himself into the Tay, swam to the other  
(17-245)side, and went off to carry to the Highlands the  
(17-245)news of his clan's defeat. It is said, he was so ill

[TG17-246, Tales of a Grandfather, ch.17, p. 246]

(17-246)received by his kinsmen that he put himself to  
(17-246)death.

(17-246)Some part of the above story is matter of tra-

(17-246)dition, but the general fact is certain. Henry Wynd  
(17-246)was rewarded to the Highland chieftain's best  
(17-246)abilities; but it was remarked, that, when the  
(17-246)battle was over, he was not able to tell the name  
(17-246)of the clan he had fought for, replying, when asked  
(17-246)on which side he had been, that he was fighting for  
(17-246)his own hand. Hence the proverb, "Every man  
(17-246)for his own hand, as Henry Wynd fought."

(17-246)In the mean time troubles, to which we have  
(17-246)formerly alluded, broke out in the family of Robert  
(17-246)III. The King had been lamed in early youth  
(17-246)by the kick of a horse, which had prevented his  
(17-246)engaging in war. He was by disposition peaceful,  
(17-246)religious, and just, but not firm of mind, and easily  
(17-246)imposed on by those about him, and particularly  
(17-246)by his brother the Duke of Albany, a man of an  
(17-246)enterprising character, but crafty, ambitious, and  
(17-246)cruel.

(17-246)This prince, the next heir to the crown, if the  
(17-246)king's children could be displaced, continued to  
(17-246)sow strife and animosity betwixt his father and  
(17-246)the Duke of Rothsay, the eldest son of Robert III,  
(17-246)and heir to his kingdom. Rothsay was young, gay,  
(17-246)and irregular, his father old, and strict in his principles;  
(17-246)occasions of quarrel easily arose betwixt  
(17-246)them, and Albany represented the conduct of the  
(17-246)son to the father in the worst light.

(17-246)The King and Queen seem to have been of  
(17-246)opinion, that the marriage of the prince might put

[TG17-247, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 17, p. 247]

(17-247)an end to his idle and licentious course of life.  
(17-247)But Albany, whom they consulted, conducted this  
(17-247)important affair in a manner disgraceful to the  
(17-247)royal family. He proceeded upon the principle,



(17-247)that the prince should marry the daughter of such  
(17-247)Scottish noble as was willing to pay the largest  
(17-247)sum of money for the honour of connecting himself  
(17-247)with the royal house. The powerful George, Earl  
(17-247)of March, was at first the largest offerer. But  
(17-247)although the prince was contracted to the daughter  
(17-247)of that nobleman accordingly, yet the match was  
(17-247)broken off by Albany, when a still larger sum was  
(17-247)offered by the Earl of Douglas. His predecessor  
(17-247)Earl James, killed at Otterburn, had married the  
(17-247)King's sister, and Earl Archibald was now desirous  
(17-247)that his own daughter should be even more nearly  
(17-247)connected with royalty, by wedding the heir of  
(17-247)the throne. They were married accordingly, but  
(17-247)in an evil hour.

(17-247)The prince continued to give offence by the  
(17-247)levity of his conduct; Albany continued to pour  
(17-247)his complaints into the King's ear, and Douglas  
(17-247)became also the enemy of his royal son-in-law.

(17-247)The history of this reign being imperfect, we  
(17-247)do not distinctly know what charges were brought  
(17-247)against the Duke of Rothsay, or how far they were  
(17-247>true or false. But it seems certain that he was  
(17-247)delivered up by his father to the power of his uncle  
(17-247)of Albany, and that of his father-in-law the Earl  
(17-247)of Douglas, who treated him with the almost  
(17-247)cruelty.

(17-247)A villain named Ramorgny, with the assistance

[TG17-248, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 17, p. 248]

(17-248)of Sir William Lindsay, was furnished with a  
(17-248)warrant for apprehending and confining the person  
(17-248)of the heir-apparent of Scotland. Armed with this  
(17-248)authority they seized upon him as he was journeying  
(17-248)in Fife, without any suspicion -- placed him

(17-248)upon an ordinary work-horse, and conducted him  
(17-248)to the strong tower, or castle, of Falkland, belonging  
(17-248)to Albany. It was a heavy fall of rain, but  
(17-248)the poor prince was allowed no other shelter than  
(17-248)a peasant's cloak. When in that gloomy fortress,  
(17-248)he was thrown into a dungeon, and for fifteen days  
(17-248)suffered to remain without food, under the charge  
(17-248)of two ruffians named Wright and Selkirk, whose  
(17-248)task it was to watch the agony of their victim till  
(17-248)it terminated in death. It is said that one woman,  
(17-248)touched with his lamentations, contrived to bring  
(17-248)him from time to time thin barley cakes, concealed  
(17-248)in her veil, which she passed through the bars of  
(17-248)his prison; and that another woman supplied him  
(17-248)with milk from her own bosom. Both were  
(17-248)discovered, and what scanty resources their charity  
(17-248)could afford were intercepted; and the unhappy  
(17-248)prince died in the month of March 1402, of famine,  
(17-248)-- the most severe and lingering mode among the  
(17-248)many by which life may be ended.

(17-248)There is no evidence that the old King, infirm  
(17-248)and simple-minded as he was, suspected the foul

[TG17-249, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 17, p. 249]

(17-249)play which his son had received; but vengeance  
(17-249)of God seemed to menace the country in which  
(17-249)such a tragedy had been acted. The Earl of  
(17-249)March, incensed at the breach of the contract  
(17-249)betwixt his daughter and the prince, deserted the  
(17-249)Scottish cause, and embraced that of England. He  
(17-249)fled to Northumberland, and from thence made  
(17-249)repeated incursions upon the Scottish frontier.

(17-249)The Earl of Douglas, placing himself at the head  
(17-249)of ten thousand men, made an incursion into England,  
(17-249)with banner displayed, and took great spoil.

(17-249)But, in returning, he was waylaid by the celebrated  
(17-249)Hotspur, who, with George of March and others,  
(17-249)had assembled a numerous army. Douglas, with  
(17-249)the same infatuation as had been displayed at so  
(17-249)many other battles, took his ground on  
(17-249)an eminence called Homildon, where his  
(17-249)numerous ranks were exposed to the  
(17-249)English arrows, the Scots suffering great loss, for  
(17-249)which they were unable to repay the enemy (14 Sept. 1402). While  
(17-249)they were thus sustaining a dreadfully unequal  
(17-249)combat, a bold Scottish knight, named Sir John  
(17-249)Swinton, called with a loud voice, "Why do we  
(17-249)remain here on this hillside, to be shot like stags  
(17-249)with arrows, when we might rush down upon the  
(17-249)English, and dispute the combat hand to hand ?  
(17-249)Let those who will, descend with me, that we may  
(17-249)gain victory, or fall like men." There was a young  
(17-249)nobleman in the host, called the Lord of Gordon.  
(17-249)The person living whom he most detested was this  
(17-249)same Sir John Swinton, because in some private  
(17-249)quarrel he had slain Gordon's father. But when he

[TG17-250, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, ch. 17, p. 250]

(17-250)heard him give such resolute and brave advice in  
(17-250)that dreadful extremity, he required to be made a  
(17-250)knight at Swinton's hand; "for," said he, "from  
(17-250)the hand of no wiser leader, or braver man, can I  
(17-250)ask that honour." Swinton granted his desire, and  
(17-250)having hastily performed the ceremony by striking  
(17-250)the young man on the neck with the flat of his  
(17-250)sword, and bidding him arise a knight, he and  
(17-250)Gordon rushed down side by side with their  
(17-250)followers, and made considerable slaughter amongst  
(17-250)the English. But not being supported by other  
(17-250)chiefs, they were overpowered and cut to pieces.

(17-250)The Scots lost the battle, sustaining a total defeat;  
(17-250)and Douglas, wounded, and having lost an eye, fell  
(17-250)into the hands of the English as a prisoner.

(17-250)A singular train of events followed, which belong  
(17-250)rather to English than Scottish history, but which  
(17-250)it is proper you should know. The Earl of Northumberland,  
(17-250)father to Hotspur, associated with  
(17-250)other discontented nobles, had determined to rebel  
(17-250)against Henry IV, then King of England. To  
(17-250)strengthen their forces, they gave Douglas his  
(17-250)liberty, and engaged him to assist them in the civil  
(17-250)war which was impending. Douglas came accordingly  
(17-250)with a band of his countrymen, and joined Henry  
(17-250)Percy, called Hotspur. They marched together  
(17-250)into England, and fought a memorable battle with  
the royal forces near Shrewsbury. As Henry IV  
(17-250)was personally present in the battle, Douglas  
(17-250)resolved to seek him out, and end the contest by  
(17-250)killing or making him prisoner. The King had,  
(17-250)however, several other champions in the field,

[TG17-251, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 17, p. 251]

(17-251)armed and mounted exactly like himself. Of these,  
(17-251)Douglas killed no less than three, as they appeared  
(17-251)one after another; so that when at length he  
(17-251)encountered the real king, he called out, with amazement,  
(17-251)"Where the devil do all these kings come  
(17-251)from?" The Scottish earl attacked Henry himself  
(17-251)with the same fury with which he had assaulted  
(17-251)those who represented him, overthrew the royal  
(17-251)banner, slaying a valiant knight, Sir Thomas Blunt,  
(17-251)to whose care it had been committed, and was about  
(17-251)to kill the King. But numbers, and especially  
(17-251)the brave Prince of Wales, his son, came to the  
(17-251)King of England's assistance; and before Douglas

(17-251)could fight his way forward to Henry, Hotspur  
(17-251)was killed by a arrow-shot, and his party were  
(17-251)obliged to fly. Douglas at length condescended to  
(17-251)fly also, but his horse stumbling in ascending a hill,  
(17-251)he was again wounded and taken.

(17-251)We return to poor King Robert III, who was  
(17-251)now exhausted by age, infirmities, and family calamity.  
(17-251)He had still a remaining son, called James,  
(17-251)about eleven years old, and he was probably afraid  
(17-251)to intrust him to the keeping of Albany, as his  
(17-251)death would have rendered that ambitious prince  
(17-251)next heir to the throne. He resolved, therefore,  
(17-251)to send the young prince to France, under pretence  
(17-251)that he would receive a better education there than  
(17-251)Scotland could afford him. An English vessel  
(17-251)captured that on board of which the prince  
(17-251)was sailing to France, and James was  
(17-251)sent to London(13 March 1405). When Henry heard  
(17-251)that the Prince of Scotland was in his power, he

[TG17-252, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 17, p. 252]

(17-252)resolved to detain him a prisoner. This was very  
(17-252)unjust, for the countries of England and Scotland  
(17-252)were at peace together at the time. The King  
(17-252)sent him to prison, however, saying, that "the  
(17-252)prince would be as well educated at his court as  
(17-252)at that of France, for that he understood French  
(17-252)well." This was said in mockery, but Henry kept  
(17-252)his word in this point; and though the Scottish  
(17-252)prince was confined unjustly, he received an  
(17-252)excellent education at the expense of the English  
(17-252)monarch.

(17-252)This new misfortune, which placed the only  
(17-252)remaining son of the poor old King in the hands  
(17-252)of the English, seems to have broken the

(17-252)heart of Robert III, who died about a  
(17-252)year afterwards, overwhelmed with  
(17-252)calamities and infirmity(4 April 1406).

[TG18-254, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 18, p. 254]

(18-254)ALBANY, the brother of Robert III, was now  
(18-254)Regent of the kingdom, of which he had long  
(18-254)actually possessed the supreme government. He  
(18-254)was, it may be supposed, in no great hurry to  
(18-254)obtain the release of his nephew Prince James,  
(18-254)whose return to Scotland must have ended his  
(18-254)own power. He was, as we have seen, a wicked,  
(18-254)cruel, and ambitious man; yet he was regular in  
(18-254)administering justice, and took great care not to  
(18-254)lay any taxes on the people. Even in his time, it  
(18-254)would seem that the extent of writings used for  
(18-254)the transference of property, had become a subject  
(18-254)of complaint. When upon this subject, Albany  
(18-254)used often to praise the simplicity and brevity of  
(18-254)an ancient charter by King Athelstane, a Saxon  
(18-254)monarch. It had been granted to the ancient Northumbrian  
(18-254)family called Roddam of Roddam, and  
(18-254)had fallen into the hands of the Scots on some of  
(18-254)their plundering parties.

[TG18-255, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 18, p. 255]

(18-255)Jedburgh castle, which the English had kept  
(18-255)ever since the battle of Durham, had been taken  
(18-255)by the Teviotdale Borderers, and it was proposed  
(18-255)that it should be pulled down, in order that it  
(18-255)might not again afford the enemy a stronghold on  
(18-255)the frontiers. This was a common policy with  
(18-255)the Scots, who considered their desert woods and  
(18-255)mountains as better points of defence than walled

(18-255)castles, which the English understood how to  
(18-255)attack or defend much better than they did.

(18-255)To defray the expense of maintaining the men  
(18-255)engaged in demolishing this large and strong  
(18-255)fortress, it was proposed to lay a small tax of two  
(18-255)pennies on each hearth in Scotland. But the  
(18-255)Regent determined to pay it out of his own and  
(18-255)the King's revenue, resolved, as he said, that he  
(18-255)would not begin his regency by a measure which  
(18-255)must afflict the poor.

(18-255)In other respects, Albany was an unworthy  
(18-255)character. He was not even brave, which was a  
(18-255)failing uncommon in his age and family; and  
(18-255)though he engaged in several wars with England,  
(18-255)he did not gain either honour or success in any of  
(18-255)them.

(18-255)One of the most remarkable events during his  
(18-255)government was the battle of Harlaw. This was  
(18-255)fought by a prince, called Donald of the Isles, who  
(18-255)possessed all the islands on the west side of Scotland.  
(18-255)He was also the proprietor of great estates  
(18-255)on the mainland, and aspired to the rank, and used  
(18-255)the style, of an independent sovereign.

(18-255)This Donald, in the year 1411, laid claim to the

[TG18-256, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 18, p. 256]

(18-256)earldom of Ross, then vacant, which the Regent  
(18-256)had determined to bestow on a member of his own  
(18-256)family. Donald of the Isles raised ten thousand  
(18-256)men, all Highlanders like himself, and invading  
(18-256)the north of Scotland, came as far as a place called  
(18-256)Harlaw, about ten miles from Aberdeen. Here  
(18-256)he was encountered by the Earl of Mar, at the  
(18-256)head of an inferior army, but composed of Lowland  
(18-256)gentlemen, better armed and disciplined than

(18-256)the followers of Donald. A most desperate battle  
(18-256)ensued, in which both parties suffered  
(18-256)great loss(24 July 1411). On that of Donald, the  
(18-256)chiefs of the clans called MacIntosh and  
(18-256)MacLean were both slain, with about a thousand  
(18-256)men. Mar lost nearly five hundred brave gentlemen,  
(18-256)amongst them Ogilvy, Scrymgeour, Irvine of  
(18-256)Drum, and other men of rank. The Provost of  
(18-256)Aberdeen, who had brought to the Earl of Mar's  
(18-256)host a detachment of the inhabitants of that city,  
(18-256)was slain, fighting bravely. This loss was so much  
(18-256)regretted by the citizens, that a resolution was  
(18-256)adopted, that no Provost should in future go out  
(18-256)in his official capacity beyond the limits of the  
(18-256)immediate territory of the town. This rule is still  
(18-256)observed.

(18-256)But though the Lowlanders suffered severely,  
(18-256)the Highlanders had the worst, and were obliged  
(18-256)to retreat after the battle. This was fortunate for  
(18-256)Scotland, since otherwise the Highlanders, at that  
(18-256)time a wild and barbarous people, would have  
(18-256)overrun, and perhaps actually conquered, a great  
(18-256)part of the civilized country. The battle of Harlaw

[TG18-257, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 18, p. 247]

(18-257)was long remembered, owing to the bravery  
(18-257)with which the field was disputed, and the numbers  
(18-257)which fell on both sides.

(18-257)The Regent Albany, after having ruled Scotland  
(18-257)for about thirty-four years, including the time under  
(18-257)his father and brother, died at the castle of Stirling  
(18-257)in the thirteenth year of his sole regency, aged  
(18-257)upwards of eighty years, on the 3d September,  
(18-257)1419. He was succeeded in his high office by his  
(18-257)son Murdac, Duke of Albany, a man who had



(18-257)neither the vices nor the virtues of his father.  
(18-257)Duke Robert was active, crafty, suspicious, and,  
(18-257)in one sense at least, wise. The son was indulgent,  
(18-257)indolent, and at the same time simple and easy to  
(18-257)be imposed upon. Many quarrels and feuds broke  
(18-257)out in the country, and even in his own family,  
(18-257)which had been suppressed by the strong hand of  
(18-257)his father. Little memorable took place in the  
(18-257)regency of Murdac, but it was remarkable for the  
(18-257)great renown which the Scots won in the wars of  
(18-257)France.

(18-257)I have told you that a body of French knights  
(18-257)came to Scotland to assist the Scots against the  
(18-257)English; and you must now know how the Scots  
(18-257)repaid the obligation, by sending over a body of  
(18-257)men to assist Charles, King of France, then in  
(18-257)great danger of being completely conquered by

[TG18-258, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 18, p. 258]

(18-258)Henry V of England, who seemed on the point  
(18-258)of expelling him from the kingdom, and possessing  
(18-258)himself of the crown of France. A small army of  
(18-258)about six or seven thousand chosen Scots had gone  
(18-258)to France, under the command of John Stewart,  
(18-258)Earl of Buchan, the second son of the Regent  
(18-258)Robert, Duke of Albany. He had under him  
(18-258)Lindsay, Swinton, and other men of consequence  
(18-258)and fame. They gained an important victory over  
(18-258)the English, then under command of the Duke of  
(18-258)Clarence, brother to Henry V. This prince,  
(18-258)hearing that there was a body of Scots encamped  
(18-258)at a town called Bauge, and enraged that this  
(18-258)northern people should not only defend their own  
(18-258)country from the English, but also come over to  
(18-258)give them trouble in France, made a hasty march

(18-258)to surprise them. He left behind him those  
(18-258)celebrated archers, who had usually afforded the  
(18-258)English means of conquest over the enemy, because  
(18-258)he relied upon the rapidity of his motions, and  
(18-258)understood the Scots were observing indifferent  
(18-258)discipline, and not keeping a vigilant watch. He  
(18-258)arrived at Bauge, followed only by the knights  
(18-258)and men-at-arms on horseback. Having forced  
(18-258)the passage of a bridge, Clarence was pressing  
(18-258)forward at the head of his cavalry, distinguished  
(18-258)by the richness of his armour, and by a splendid  
(18-258)golden coronet which he wore over his helmet.  
(18-258)At this moment the Scottish knights charged the  
(18-258)enemy. Sir John Swinton galloped against the  
(18-258)Duke of Clarence, and unhorsed him with his lance,  
(18-258)and the Earl of Buchan dashed out his brains with

[TG18-259, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 18, p. 259]

(18-259)a battle-axe or mace. A great many English  
(18-259)knights and nobles were slain at this  
(18-259)rencontre(22 March 1421). The French King, to reward  
(18-259)the valour of the Scots, created  
(18-259)the Earl of Buchan Constable of France (one of  
(18-259)the highest offices in the kingdom), and Count of  
(18-259)Aubigny.

(18-259)The Scots, incited by the renown and wealth  
(18-259)which their countrymen had acquired, came over  
(18-259)to France in greater numbers, and the Earl of  
(18-259)Douglas himself was tempted to bring over a little  
(18-259)army, in which the best and noblest of the gentlemen  
(18-259)of the south of Scotland of course enrolled  
(18-259)themselves. They who did not go themselves, but  
(18-259)sent there sons and brothers. Sir Alexander  
(18-259)Home of Home had intended to take this course;  
(18-259)and his brother, David Home of Wedderburn, was

(18-259)equipped for the expedition. The chief himself  
(18-259)came down to the vessel to see Douglas and his  
(18-259)brother embark. But when the earl saw his old  
(18-259)companion in arms about to take leave of him, he  
(18-259)said, "Ah I Sir Alexander, who would have  
(18-259)thought that thou and I should ever have parted!"

(18-259)"Neither will we part now, my lord," said Sir  
(18-259)Alexander; and suddenly changing his purpose,  
(18-259)he sent back his brother David to take care of his  
(18-259)castle, family , and estate, and going to France with  
(18-259)his old friend, died with him at the battle of Verneuil.

(18-259)The Earl of Douglas, whose military fame was  
(18-259)so great, received high honour from the King of  
(18-259)France, and was created Duke of Touraine. The

[TG18-260, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 18, p. 260]

(18-260)earl was used to ridicule the Duke of Bedford,  
(18-260)who then acted as Regent for Henry VI in  
(18-260)France, and gave him the nickname of John with  
(18-260)the leaden sword. Upon the 17th August, 1424,  
(18-260)Douglas received a message from the Duke of  
(18-260)Bedford, that he intended to come and dine and  
(18-260)drink wine with him. Douglas well understood  
(18-260)the nature of the visit, and sent back word, that he  
(18-260)should be welcome. The Scots and French prepared  
(18-260)for battle, while their chiefs consulted together,  
(18-260)and unfortunately differed in opinion. The  
(18-260)Earl of Douglas, who considered their situation as  
(18-260)favourable, recommended that they should receive  
(18-260)the attack of the English, instead of advancing to  
(18-260)meet them. The French Count de Narbonne,  
(18-260)however, insisted that they should march forward  
(18-260)to the attack; and putting the French in motion,  
(18-260)declared he would move to the fight whether the  
(18-260)Scots did so or not. Douglas was thus compelled

(18-260)to advance likewise, but it was in disorder. The  
(18-260)English archers in the mean time showered their  
(18-260)arrows on the French; their men-at-arms charged;  
(18-260)and a total rout of the allied army was the consequence.

(18-260)Douglas and Buchan stood their ground,  
(18-260)fought desperately, and died nobly. Home, Lindsay,  
(18-260)Swinton, and far the greater part of that brave  
(18-260)Scottish band of auxiliaries, were killed on the  
(18-260)spot.

(18-260)The great Earl of Douglas, who was slain at  
(18-260)Verneuil, was distinguished from the rest of his  
(18-260)family by the name of Tine-man, that is Lose-man,

[TG18-261, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 18, p. 261]

(18-261)as he was defeated in the great battles of Homildon,  
(18-261)Shrewsbury, and finally in that of Verneuil,  
(18-261)where he lost his life. His contemporary and rival,  
(18-261)George Earl of March, though not so celebrated a  
(18-261)warrior, was as remarkable for being fortunate;  
(18-261)for whether he fought on the Scottish or English  
(18-261)side, his party was always victorious. The slender  
(18-261)remains of the Scottish forces were adopted by  
(18-261)Charles of France as a life-guard; an establishment  
(18-261)which was continued by his successors for a great  
(18-261)many years,

(18-261)We return now to Scotland, where the Regent  
(18-261)Murdac of Albany was so far from being able to  
(18-261)guide the affairs of the state, that he could not control  
(18-261)his own sons. There were two of them,  
(18-261)haughty, licentious young men, who respected  
(18-261)neither the authority of God nor man, and that of  
(18-261)their father least of all. Their misbehaviour was  
(18-261)so great, that Murdac began to think of putting an  
(18-261)end to their bad conduct and his own government  
(18-261)at the same time, by obtaining the deliverance of

(18-261)the King from English captivity. A singular piece  
(18-261)of insolence, on the part of his eldest son, is said  
(18-261)to have determined him to this measure.

(18-261)At this time the amusement of hawking (that is,  
(18-261)of taking birds of game by means of trained hawks)  
(18-261)was a pastime greatly esteemed by the nobility.  
(18-261)The Regent Murdac had one falcon of peculiar

[TG18-262, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 18, p. 262]

(18-262)excellence, which he valued. His eldest son, Walter  
(18-262)Stewart, had often asked this bird of his father,  
(18-262)and been as often denied. At length one day  
(18-262)when the Regent had the hawk sitting upon his  
(18-262)wrist, in the way that falconers carry such birds,  
(18-262)Walter renewed his importunity about the falcon;  
(18-262)and when his father again refused it, he snatched  
(18-262)it from his wrist, and wrung its neck round. His  
(18-262)father, greatly offended at so gross an insult, said,  
(18-262)in his anger, "Since thou wilt give me neither  
(18-262)reverence nor obedience, I will fetch home one  
(18-262)whom me must all obey." From that moment, he  
(18-262)began to bargain with the English in good earnest  
(18-262)that they should restore James, now King of Scotland,  
(18-262)to his own dominions.

(18-262)The English government were not unwilling to  
(18-262)deliver up James, the rather that he had fallen in  
(18-262)love with Joan, the Earl of Somerset's daughter,  
(18-262)nearly related to the royal family of England.  
(18-262)They considered that this alliance would incline  
(18-262)the young prince to peace with England; and that  
(18-262)the education which he had received, and the  
(18-262)friendships which he had formed in that country,  
(18-262)would incline him to be a good and peaceable  
(18-262)neighbour. The Scots agreed to pay a considerable  
(18-262)ransom; and upon these terms James, the first

[TG18-263, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 18, p. 263]

(18-263)of that name, was set at liberty, and returned to  
(18-263)become king in Scotland, after eighteen years' captivity.  
(18-263)He and his queen were crowned at Scone,  
(18-263)21st May, 1424.

[TG19-264, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 19, p. 264]

(19-264)THIS King James, the first monarch of the  
(19-264)name, was also the first of his unfortunate family  
(19-264)who showed a high degree of talent. Robert II  
(19-264)and Robert III, his father and grandfather, were  
(19-264)both rather amiable as individuals than respected  
(19-264)for their endowments as monarchs. But James  
(19-264)had received an excellent education, of which his  
(19-264)talents had enabled him to make the best use. He  
(19-264)was also prudent and just, consulted the interests  
(19-264)of his people, and endeavoured, as far as he could,  
(19-264)to repress those evils, which had grown up through  
(19-264)the partial government of Robert Duke of Albany,  
(19-264)the rule of the feeble and slothful Duke Murdac,  
(19-264)and the vicious and violent conduct of his sons.

(19-264)The first vengeance of the laws fell upon  
(19-264)Murdac, who, with his two sons, was tried, and  
(19-264)condemned at Stirling for abuse of the King's  
(19-264)authority, committed while Murdac was Regent.  
(19-264)They were beheaded at the little eminence at

[TG19-265, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 19, p. 265]

(19-265)Stirling, which is still shown on the Castle Hill.  
(19-265)The Regent, from that elevated  
(19-265)spot, might have a distant view of  
(19-265)the magnificent castle of Doune,

(19-265)which he had built for his residence; and the sons  
(19-265)had ample reason to regret their contempt of their  
(19-265)father's authority, and to judge the truth of his  
(19-265)words, when he said he would bring in one who  
(19-265)would rule them all (24, 25 May 1425).

(19-265)James afterwards turned his cares to the Highlands,  
(19-265)which were in a state of terrible confusion.  
(19-265)He marched into those disturbed districts with a  
(19-265)strong army, and seized upon more than forty of  
(19-265)the chiefs, by whom these broils and quarrels were  
(19-265)countenanced, put many of them to death, and  
(19-265)obliged others to find security that they would be  
(19-265)quiet in future. Alaster Macdonald, Lord of the  
(19-265)Isles, after more than a year's captivity, and his  
(19-265)mother retained in vain as a hostage for his fidelity,  
(19-265)endeavoured to oppose the royal authority;  
(19-265)but the measures taken against him by James  
(19-265)reduced his power so much, that he was at last  
(19-265)obliged to submit to the King's mercy. For this  
(19-265)purpose the humbled chief came to Edinburgh  
(19-265)secretly, and suddenly appeared in the Cathedral  
(19-265)Church, where the King was employed in his  
(19-265)devotions upon Easter-day. He appeared without  
(19-265)bonnet, armour, or ornaments, with his legs and  
(19-265)arms bare, and his body only covered with a plaid.  
(19-265)In this condition he delivered himself up to the  
(19-265)King's pleasure; and holding a naked sword in his  
(19-265)hand by the point, he offered the hilt to the King,

[TG19-266, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 19, p. 266]

(19-266)in token of unreserved submission. James forgave  
(19-266)him his repeated offences, at the intercession of the  
(19-266)Queen and nobles present, but he detained him a  
(19-266)prisoner in the strong castle of Tantallon, in East  
(19-266)Lothian. Yet, after this submission of their principal

(19-266) chief, the West Highlanders and  
(19-266) people of the Isles again revolted, under  
(19-266) the command of Donald Balloch, the kinsman of  
(19-266) Alaster, who landed on the mainland with a considerable  
(19-266) force, and defeated the Earls of Mar and  
(19-266) of Caithness with great slaughter; but when he  
(19-266) heard that James was coming against him, Donald  
(19-266) thought it best to retreat to Ireland(1431). James put to  
(19-266) death many of his followers. Donald himself was  
(19-266) afterwards killed in Ireland, and his head sent to  
(19-266) the King.

(19-266) There is another story, which will show the  
(19-266) cruelty and ferocity of these Highland robbers.  
(19-266) Another MacDonald, head of a band in Ross-shire,  
(19-266) had plundered a poor widow woman of two of her  
(19-266) cows, and who, in her anger, exclaimed repeatedly  
(19-266) that she would never wear shoes again till she had  
(19-266) carried her complaint to the King for redress,  
(19-266) should she travel to Edinburgh to seek him. "It  
(19-266) is false," answered the barbarian, "I will have  
(19-266) you shod myself before you reach the court."  
(19-266) Accordingly, he caused a smith to nail shoes to  
(19-266) the poor woman's naked feet, as if they had been  
(19-266) those of a horse; after which he thrust her forth,  
(19-266) wounded and bleeding, on the highway. The  
(19-266) widow, however, being a woman of high spirit,  
(19-266) was determined to keep her word; and as soon as

[TG19-267, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 19, p. 267]

(19-267) her wounds permitted her to travel, she did actually.  
(19-267) go on foot to Edinburgh, and, throwing herself  
(19-267) before James, acquainted him with the cruelty  
(19-267) which had been exercised on her, and in evidence  
(19-267) showed her feet, still seamed and scarred. James  
(19-267) heard her with that mixture of pity, kindness, and



(19-267)uncontrollable indignation which marked his character,  
(19-267)and, in great resentment, caused MacDonald,  
(19-267)and twelve of his principal followers, to be seized,  
(19-267)and to have their feet shod with iron shoes, in the  
(19-267)same manner as had been done to the widow. In  
(19-267)this condition they were exhibited to the public  
(19-267)for three days, and then executed.

(19-267)Thus James I restored a considerable degree  
(19-267)of tranquillity to the country, which he found in  
(19-267)such a distracted state. He made wise laws for  
(19-267)regulating the commerce of the nation, both at  
(19-267)home and with other states, and strict regulations  
(19-267)for the administration of justice betwixt those who  
(19-267)had complaints against one another.

(19-267)But his greatest labour, and that which he found  
(19-267)most difficult to accomplish, was to diminish the  
(19-267)power of the great nobles, who ruled like so many  
(19-267)kings, each on his own territory and estate, and  
(19-267)made war on the King, or upon one another, whenever  
(19-267)it was their pleasure to do so. These disorders  
(19-267)he endeavoured to check, and had several of these  
(19-267)great persons brought to trial, and, upon their  
(19-267)being found guilty, deprived them of their estates.  
(19-267)The nobles complained that this was done out of  
(19-267)spite against them, and that they were treated with  
(19-267)hardship and injustice; and thus discontents were

[TG19-268, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 19, p. 268]

(19-268)cause of offence was, that to maintain justice, and  
(19-268)support the authority of the throne, it was found  
(19-268)necessary that some taxes for this purpose should  
(19-268)be raised from the subjects; and the Scottish people  
(19-268)being poor, and totally unaccustomed to pay any  
(19-268)such contributions, they imputed this odious measure  
(19-268)to the King's avarice. And thus, though

(19-268)King James was so well-intentioned a king, and  
(19-268)certainly the ablest who had reigned in Scotland  
(19-268)since the days of Robert Bruce, yet both the high  
(19-268)and the low murmured against him, which encouraged  
(19-268)some wicked men amongst the nobility to  
(19-268)conspire his death.

(19-268)The chief person in the plot was one Sir Robert  
(19-268)Graham, uncle to the Earl of Stratherne. He was  
(19-268)bold and ambitious, and highly offended with the  
(19-268)King on account of an imprisonment which he had  
(19-268)sustained by the royal command. He drew into  
(19-268)the plot the Earl of Athole, an old man of little  
(19-268)talent, by promising to make his son, Sir Robert  
(19-268)Stewart, King of Scotland, in place of James.  
(19-268)Others were engaged in the conspiracy from different  
(19-268)motives. To many of their attendants they  
(19-268)pretended they only wished to carry away a lady  
(19-268)out of the court. To prepare his scheme, Graham  
(19-268)retreated into the remote Highlands, and from  
(19-268)thence sent a defiance, renouncing his allegiance to  
(19-268)the King, and threatening to put his sovereign to  
(19-268)death with his own hand. A price was set upon  
(19-268)his head, payable to any one who should deliver  
(19-268)him up to justice; but he lay concealed in the

[TG19-269, Tales of a grandfather, chap. 19, p. 269]

(19-269)wild mountains to prosecute his revenge against  
(19-269)James.

(19-269)The Christmas preceding his murder was appointed  
(19-269)by the King for holding a feast at Perth.  
(19-269)In his way to that town he was met by a Highland  
(19-269)woman, calling herself a prophetess. She stood by  
(19-269)the side of the ferry by which he was about to  
(19-269)travel to the north, and cried with a loud voice, --  
(19-269)"My Lord the King, if you pass this water, you

(19-269)will never return again alive." The King was  
(19-269)struck with this for a moment, because he had read  
(19-269)in a book that a king should be slain that year in  
(19-269)Scotland; for it often happens, that when a remarkable  
(19-269)deed is in agitation, rumours of it get abroad,  
(19-269)and are repeated under pretence of prophecies;  
(19-269)but which are, in truth, only conjectures of that  
(19-269)which seems likely to happen. There was a knight  
(19-269)in the court, on whom the King had conferred the  
(19-269)name of the King of Love, to whom the King said  
(19-269)in jest, -- "There is a prophecy that a king shall be  
(19-269)killed in Scotland this year; now, Sir Alexander,  
(19-269)that must concern either you or me, since we two  
(19-269)are the only kings in Scotland." Other circumstances  
(19-269)occurred, which might have prevented the  
(19-269)good King's murder, but none of them were attended to.

(19-269)The King, while at Perth, took up his  
(19-269)residence in an abbey of Black Friars, there being  
(19-269)no castle or palace in the town convenient for his  
(19-269)residence; and this made the execution of the  
(19-269)conspiracy more easy, as his guards, and the officers  
(19-269)of his household, were quartered among the  
(19-269)citizens.

[TG19-270, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 19. p. 270]

(19-270)The day had been spent by the King in sport  
(19-270)and feasting, and by the conspirators in preparing  
(19-270)for their enterprise. They had destroyed the locks  
(19-270)of the doors of the apartment, so that the keys  
(19-270)could not be turned; and they had taken away the  
(19-270)bars with which the gates were secured, and had  
(19-270)provided planks by way of bridges, on which to  
(19-270)cross the ditch which surrounded the monastery.  
(19-270)At length, on the 20th February, 1437, all was  
(19-270)prepared for carrying their treasonable purpose

(19-270)into execution, and Graham came from his hiding-  
(19-270)place in the neighbouring mountains, with a party  
(19-270)of nigh three hundred men, and entered the gardens  
(19-270)of the convent.

(19-270)The King was in his night-gown and slippers.  
(19-270)He had passed the evening gaily with the nobles  
(19-270)and ladies of his court, in reading romances, and  
(19-270)in singing and music, or playing at chess and tables.  
(19-270)The Earl of Athole, and his son Sir Robert  
(19-270)Stewart, who expected to succeed James on the  
(19-270)throne, were among the last courtiers who retired.  
(19-270)At this time James remained standing before the  
(19-270)fire, and conversing gaily with the queen and her  
(19-270)ladies before he went to rest. The Highland  
(19-270)woman before mentioned again demanded permission  
(19-270)to speak with the King, but was refused, on  
(19-270)account of the untimeliness of the hour. All now  
(19-270)were ordered to withdraw.

(19-270)At this moment there was a noise and clashing  
(19-270)heard, as of men in armour, and the torches in the  
(19-270)garden cast up great flashes of light against the  
(19-270)windows. The King then recollected his deadly

[TG19-271, Tales of a grandfather, chap. 19, p. 271]

(19-271)enemy, Sir Robert Graham, and guessed that he  
(19-271)was coming to murder him. He called to the ladies  
(19-271)who were left in the chamber to keep the door as  
(19-271)well as they could, in order to give him time to  
(19-271)escape. He first tried to get out at the windows,  
(19-271)but they were fast barred, and defied his strength.  
(19-271)By help of the tongs, which were in the chimney,  
(19-271)he raised, however, a plank of the flooring of the  
(19-271)apartment, and let himself down into a narrow  
(19-271)vault beneath, used as a common sewer. This  
(19-271)vault had formerly had an opening into the court

(19-271)of the convent, by which he might have made his  
(19-271)escape. But all things turned against the unfortunate  
(19-271)James; for, only three days before, he had  
(19-271)caused the opening to be built up, because when he  
(19-271)played at ball in the court-yard, the ball used to  
(19-271)roll into the vault through that hole.

(19-271)While the King was in this place of concealment,  
(19-271)the conspirators were seeking him from chamber  
(19-271)to chamber throughout the convent, and, at length,  
(19-271)came to the room where the ladies were. The  
(19-271)queen and her women endeavoured, as well as  
(19-271)they might, to keep the door shut, and one of them,  
(19-271)Catherine Douglas, boldly thrust her own arm  
(19-271)across the door, instead of the bar, which had been  
(19-271)taken away, as I told you. But the brave lady's  
(19-271)arm was soon broken, and the traitors rushed into  
(19-271)the room with swords and daggers drawn, hurting  
(19-271)and throwing down such of the women as opposed  
(19-271)them. The poor Queen stood half undressed,  
(19-271)shrieking aloud; and one of the brutal assassins  
(19-271)attacked, wounded, and would have slain her, had

[TG19-272, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 19, p. 272]

(19-272)it not been for a son of Sir Robert Graham, who  
(19-272)said to him, "What would you do to the Queen?  
(19-272)She is but a woman--Let us seek the King."

(19-272)They accordingly commenced a minute search,  
(19-272)but without any success; so they left the apartment,  
(19-272)and sought elsewhere about the monastery.  
(19-272)In the mean while the King turned impatient, and  
(19-272)desired the ladies to bring sheets and draw him  
(19-272)up out of the inconvenient lurking place. In the  
(19-272)attempt Elizabeth Douglas fell down beside the  
(19-272)King, and at this unlucky moment the conspirators  
(19-272)returned. One of them now recollected that there

(19-272)was such a vault, and that they had not searched it.  
(19-272)And when they tore up the plank, and saw the  
(19-272)King and the lady beneath in the vault, one of  
(19-272)them called, with savage merriment, to his followers,  
(19-272)"Sirs, I have found the bride for whom  
(19-272)we have sought and carolled all night." Then,  
(19-272)first one, and then another of the villains, brethren  
(19-272)of the name of Hall, descended into the vault, with  
(19-272)daggers drawn, to despatch the unfortunate King,  
(19-272)who was standing there in his shirt, without weapons  
(19-272)of any kind. But James, who was an active  
(19-272)and strong man, threw them both down beneath  
(19-272)his feet, and struggled to wrest the dagger from  
(19-272)one or other of them, in which attempt his hands  
(19-272)were severely cut and mangled. The murderers  
(19-272)also were so vigorously handled, that the marks of  
(19-272)the King's gripe were visible on their throats for  
(19-272)weeks afterwards. Then Sir Robert Graham  
(19-272)himself sprung down on the King, who, finding no  
(19-272)further defence possible, asked him for mercy, and

[TG19-273, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 19, p. 273]

(19-273)for leisure to confess his sins to a priest. But  
(19-273)Graham replied fiercely, "Thou never hadst  
(19-273)mercy on those of thine own blood, nor on any one  
(19-273)else, therefore thou shalt find no mercy here; and  
(19-273)as for a confessor, thou shalt have none but this  
(19-273)sword." So speaking, he thrust the sword through  
(19-273)the King's body. And yet it is said, that when he  
(19-273)saw his prince lying bleeding under his feet, he  
(19-273)was desirous to have left the enterprise unfinished;  
(19-273)but the other conspirators called on Graham to kill  
(19-273)the King, otherwise he should himself die by  
(19-273)their hands; upon which Graham, with the two  
(19-273)men who had descended into the vault before him.

(19-273)fell on the unhappy Prince with their daggers, and  
(19-273)slew him by many stabs. There were sixteen  
(19-273)wounds in his breast alone.

(19-273)By this time, but too late, news of this outrage  
(19-273)had reached the town, and the household servants  
(19-273)of the King, with the people inhabiting the town  
(19-273)of Perth, were hastening to the rescue, with torches  
(19-273)and weapons. The traitors accordingly caught the  
(19-273)alarm, and retreated into the Highlands, losing in  
(19-273)their flight only one or two, taken or slain by the  
(19-273)pursuers. When they spoke about their enterprise  
(19-273) among themselves, they greatly regretted  
(19-273)that they had not killed the Queen along with her  
(19-273)husband, fearing that she would be active and  
(19-273)inexorable in her vengeance.

(19-273)Indeed their apprehensions were justified by the  
(19-273)event, for Queen Joanna made so strict search  
(19-273)after the villainous assassins, that in the course of a  
(19-273)month most of them were thrown into prison, and  
(19-273)being tried and condemned, they were put to death

[TG19-274, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 19, p. 274]

(19-274)with new and hideous tortures. The flesh of  
(19-274)Robert Stewart, and of a private chamberlain of  
(19-274)the King, was torn from their bodies with pincers,  
(19-274)while, even in the midst of these horrible agonies,  
(19-274)they confessed the justice of their sentence. The  
(19-274)Earl of Athole was beheaded, denying at his death  
(19-274)that he had consented to the conspiracy, though he  
(19-274)admitted that his son had told him of it; to which  
(19-274)he had replied, by enjoining him to have no concern  
(19-274)in so great a crime. Sir Robert Graham, who was  
(19-274)the person with whom the cruel scheme had origin,  
(19-274)spoke in defence of it to the last. He had a right  
(19-274)to slay the King, he said, for he had renounced his

(19-274)allegiance, and declared war against him; and he  
(19-274)expressed his belief, that his memory would be  
(19-274)honoured for putting to death so cruel a tyrant.  
(19-274)He was tortured in the most dreadful manner  
(19-274)before his final execution, and, whilst he was yet  
(19-274)living, his son was slain before his eyes.

(19-274)Notwithstanding the greatness of their crime, it  
(19-274)was barbarous cruelty to torture these wretched  
(19-274)murderers in the manner we have mentioned, and  
(19-274)the historian says justly, that it was a cruel deed  
(19-274)cruelly revenged. But the people were much  
(19-274)incensed against them; for, although they had  
(19-274)murmured against King James while he lived, yet  
(19-274)the dismal manner of his death, and the sense that  
(19-274)his intentions towards his people were kind and  
(19-274)just, caused him to be much regretted. He had  
(19-274)also many popular qualities. His face was handsome,  
(19-274)and his person strong and active. His mind  
(19-274)was well cultivated with ornamental and elegant  
(19-274)accomplishments, as well as stored with useful

[TG19-275, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 19, p. 275]

(19-275)information. He understood music and poetry,  
(19-275)and wrote verses, both serious and comic. Two  
(19-275)of his compositions are still preserved, and read  
(19-275)with interest and entertainment by those who  
(19-275)understand the ancient language in which they are  
(19-275)written. One of these is called "The King's  
(19-275)Quhair," that is, the King's Book. It is a love  
(19-275)poem, composed when he was prisoner in England,  
(19-275)and addressed to the Princess Joan of Somerset,  
(19-275)whom he afterwards married. The other is a  
(19-275)comic poem, called "Christ's Kirk on the Green,"  
(19-275)in which the author gives an account of a merry-  
(19-275)making of the country people, held for the purpose



(19-275)of sport, where they danced, revelled, drank, and  
(19-275)finally quarrelled and fought. There is much humour  
(19-275)shown in this piece, though one would think  
(19-275)the subject a strange one for a king to write upon.  
(19-275)He particularly ridicules the Scots for want of  
(19-275)acquaintance with archery. One man breaks his  
(19-275)bow, another shoots his arrow wide of the mark, a  
(19-275)third hits the man's body at whom he took aim, but  
(19-275)with so little effect that he cannot pierce his leathern  
(19-275)doublet. There is a meaning in this raillery.

[TG19-276, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 19, p. 276]

(19-276)James I, seeing the advantage which the English  
(19-276)possessed by their archery, was desirous to introduce  
(19-276)that exercise more generally into Scotland,  
(19-276)and ordered regular meetings to be held for this  
(19-276)purpose. Perhaps he might hope to enforce these  
(19-276)orders, by employing a little wholesome raillery on  
(19-276)the awkwardness of the Scottish bowmen.

(19-276)On the whole, James I. was much and deservedly  
(19-276)lamented. The murderer Graham was so far  
(19-276)from being remembered with honour, as he had  
(19-276)expected, for the assassination which he had committed,  
(19-276)that his memory was execrated in a popular  
(19-276)rhyme, then generally current:-

(19-276) "Robert Graham,  
(19-276) That slew our King,  
(19-276) God give him shame!"

[TG20-277, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 20, p. 277]

(20-277)WHEN James I was murdered, his son and  
(20-277)heir, James II, was only six years old; so that  
(20-277)Scotland was once more plunged into all the discord  
(20-277)and confusions of a regency, which were sure

(20-277)to reach their height in a country where even the  
(20-277)disputed sway of a sovereign of mature age was  
(20-277)not held in due respect, and was often disturbed by  
(20-277)treason and rebellion.

(20-277)The affairs of the kingdom, during the minority  
(20-277)of James II., were chiefly managed by two statesmen,  
(20-277)who seem to have been men of considerable  
(20-277)personal talent, but very little principle or integrity.  
(20-277)Sir Alexander Livingstone was guardian of the  
(20-277)King's person; Sir William Crichton was Chancellor  
(20-277)of the kingdom. They debated betwixt  
(20-277)themselves the degree of authority attached to  
(20-277)their respective offices, and at once engaged in  
(20-277)quarrels with each other and with one who was

[TG20-278, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 20, p. 278]

(20-278)more powerful than either of them -- the great Earl  
(20-278)of Douglas.

(20-278)That mighty house was now at the highest pitch  
(20-278)of its greatness. The earl possessed Galloway,  
(20-278)Annan-dale, and other extensive properties in the  
(20-278)south of Scotland, where almost all the inferior  
(20-278)nobility and gentry acknowledged him as their  
(20-278)patron and lord. Thus the Douglasses had at their  
(20-278)disposal that part of Scotland, which from its constant  
(20-278)wars with England, was most disciplined and  
(20-278)accustomed to arms. They possessed the duchy  
(20-278)of Touraine and lordship of Longueville in France,  
(20-278)and they were connected by intermarriage with  
(20-278)the Scottish royal family.

(20-278)The Douglasses were not only powerful from  
(20-278)the extent of lands and territories, but also from  
(20-278)possession of great military talents, which seemed  
(20-278)to pass from father to son, and occasioned a  
(20-278)proverb, still remembered in Scotland. --

(20-278) "So many, so good, as of the Douglasses have been,  
(20-278) Of one sirname in Scotland never yet were seen."

(20-278)Unfortunately, their power, courage, and military  
(20-278)skill, were attended with arrogance and ambition,  
(20-278)and the Douglasses seemed to have claimed to  
(20-278)themselves the rank and authority of sovereign  
(20-278)princes, independent of the laws of the country,  
(20-278)and of the allegiance due to the monarch. It was

[TG20-279, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 20, p. 279]

(20-279)a common thing for them to ride with a retinue of  
(20-279)a thousand horse; and as Archibald, the Earl of  
(20-279)Douglas of the time, rendered but an imperfect  
(20-279)allegiance even to the severe rule of James I, it  
(20-279)might be imagined that his power could not be  
(20-279)easily restrained by such men as Crichton and  
(20-279)Livingston -- great indeed, through the high offices  
(20-279)which they held, but otherwise of a degree far  
(20-279)inferior to that of Douglas.

(20-279)But when this powerful nobleman died, in 1439,  
(20-279)and was succeeded by his son William, a youth of  
(20-279)only sixteen years old, the wily Crichton began to  
(20-279)spy an occasion to crush the Douglasses, as he  
(20-279)hoped, for ever, by the destruction of the youthful  
(20-279)earl and his brother, and for abating, by this cruel  
(20-279)and unmerited punishment, the power and pride of  
(20-279)this great family. Crichton proposed to Livingston  
(20-279)to join him in this meditated treachery; and,  
(20-279)though enemies to each other, the guardian of the  
(20-279)King and the chancellor of the Kingdom united in  
(20-279)the vile project of cutting off two boys, whose age  
(20-279)alone showed their innocence of the guilt charged  
(20-279)upon them. For this purpose flattery and fair  
(20-279)words were used to induce the young earl, and his  
(20-279)brother David, with some of their nearest friends,

(20-279)to come to court, where it was pretended that they  
(20-279)would be suitable companions and intimates for the  
(20-279)young King. An old adherent of the family greatly  
(20-279)dissuaded the earl from accepting this invitation,  
(20-279)and exhorted him, if he went to Edinburgh in person,  
(20-279)to leave at least his brother David behind him.  
(20-279)But the unhappy youth, thinking that no treachery

[TG20-280, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 20, p. 280]

(20-280)was intended, could not be diverted from the fatal  
(20-280)journey. The Chancellor Crichton received the Earl of  
(20-280)Douglas and his brother on their journey, at his  
(20-280)own castle of Crichton, and with the utmost appearance  
(20-280)of hospitality and kindness. After remaining  
(20-280)a day or two at this place, the two brothers were  
(20-280)inveigled to Edinburgh castle, and introduced to  
(20-280)the young King, who, not knowing the further  
(20-280)purpose of his guardians, received them with affability,  
(20-280)and seemed delighted with the prospect of  
(20-280)enjoying their society.

(20-280)On a sudden the scene began to change. At an  
(20-280)entertainment which was served up to the earl  
(20-280)and his brother, the head of a black bull was placed  
on the table. The Douglasses knew this, according  
(20-280)to a custom which prevailed in Scotland, to be the  
(20-280)sign of death, and leaped from the table in great  
(20-280)dismay. But they were seized by armed men who  
(20-280)entered the apartment. They underwent a mock  
(20-280)trial, in which all the insolences of their ancestors  
(20-280)were charged against them, and were condemned  
(20-280)to immediate execution. The young King wept,  
(20-280)and implored Livingston and Crichton to show  
(20-280)mercy to the young noblemen, but in vain. These  
(20-280)cruel men only reproved him for weeping at the  
(20-280)death of those whom they called his enemies. The

(20-280)brethren were led out to the court of the castle,  
(20-280)and beheaded without delay. Malcolm Fleming  
(20-280)of Cumbernauld, a faithful adherent of their house,  
(20-280)shared the same fate with the two brothers.

(20-280)This barbarous proceeding was as unwise as it

[TG20-281, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 20, p. 281]

(20-281)was unjust. It did not reduce the power of the  
(20-281)Douglasses, but only raised general detestation  
(20-281)against those who managed the affairs of James II.  
(20-281)A fat, quiet, peaceable person, called James the  
(20-281)Gross, indolent from habit of body and temper of  
(20-281)mind, next became Earl of Douglas, which was  
(20-281)probably the reason that no public commotion immediately  
(20-281)attended on the murder of the hapless  
(20-281)brothers. But this corpulent dignitary lived only  
(20-281)two years, and was in his turn succeeded by his son  
(20-281)William, who was as active and turbulent as any  
(20-281)of his ambitious predecessors, and engaged in various  
(20-281)civil broils for the purpose of revenging the  
(20-281)death of his kinsmen.

(20-281)James the Second, in the mean while, came to  
(20-281)man's estate, and entered on the management of  
(20-281)public affairs. He was a handsome man, but his  
(20-281)countenance was marked on one side with a broad  
(20-281)red spot, which gained him the surname of James  
(20-281)with the Fiery Face. They might have called  
(20-281)him James with the fiery temper, in like manner;  
(20-281)for, with many good qualities, he had a hot and  
(20-281)impetuous disposition, of which we shall presently  
(20-281)see a remarkable instance.

(20-281)William, who had succeeded to the earldom of  
(20-281)Douglas, was enormously wealthy and powerful.

[TG20-282, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 20, p. 282]

(20-282)The family had gradually added to their original  
(20-282)patrimony the lordship of Galloway, the lordship  
(20-282)of Bothwell, the dukedom of Touraine, and lordship  
(20-282)of Longueville, in France, the lordship of  
(20-282)Annandale, and the earldom of Wigton. So that,  
(20-282)in personal wealth and power, the Earl of Douglas  
(20-282)not only approached to, but greatly exceeded the  
(20-282)King himself. The Douglasses, however, though  
(20-282)ambitious and unruly subjects in time of peace,  
(20-282)were always gallant defenders of the liberties of  
(20-282)Scotland during the time of war; and if they were  
(20-282)sometimes formidable to their own sovereigns, they  
(20-282)were not less so to their English enemies.

(20-282)In 1448, war broke out betwixt England and  
(20-282)Scotland, and the incursions on both sides became  
(20-282)severe and destructive. The English, under  
(20-282)young Percy, destroyed Dumfries, and in return  
(20-282)the Scots, led by Lord Balveny, the youngest  
(20-282)brother of Douglas, burnt the town of Alnwick.  
(20-282)The Lord Percy of Northumberland, with the  
(20-282)Earl of Huntingdon, advanced into Scotland with  
(20-282)an army, said by the French historians to amount  
(20-282)to fifteen thousand men. The Earl of Douglas,  
(20-282)to whom the King had intrusted the defence of  
(20-282)the frontiers, met him with a much inferior force,  
(20-282)defeated the invaders, and made their leaders  
(20-282)prisoners.

(20-282)Incensed at this defeat, the English assembled  
(20-282)an army of fifty thousand men, under the command  
(20-282)of the Earl of Northumberland, who had under  
(20-282)him a celebrated general, called Sir Magnus

[TG20-283, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 20, p. 283]

(20-283)Redmain, long governor of the town of Berwick;

(20-283)Sir John Pennington, ancestor of the family of  
(20-283)Muncaster, and other leaders of high reputation.  
(20-283)The task of encountering this mighty host fell  
(20-283)upon Hugh, Earl of Ormond, brother also of the  
(20-283)Earl of Douglas, who assembled an army of thirty  
(20-283)thousand men, and marched to meet the invaders.

(20-283)The English had entered the Scottish border,  
(20-283)and advanced beyond the small river Sark, when  
(20-283)the armies came in presence of each other. The  
(20-283)English began the battle, as usual, with a fatal  
(20-283)discharge of arrows. But William Wallace of  
(20-283)Craigie, well worthy of the heroic name he bore,  
(20-283)called out to the left wing of the Scots, which he  
(20-283)commanded, "Why stand ye still, to be shot from  
(20-283)a distance? Follow me, and we shall soon come  
(20-283)to handstrokes." Accordingly, they rushed furiously  
(20-283)against the right wing of the English, who, commanded  
(20-283)by Sir Magnus Redmain, advanced boldly  
(20-283)to meet them. They encountered with great fury,  
(20-283)and both leaders fell, Magnus Redmain being  
(20-283)slain on the spot, and the Knight of Craigie-Wallace  
(20-283)mortally wounded. The English, disconcerted  
(20-283)by the loss of their great champion, Magnus,  
(20-283)at length gave way. The Scots pressed furiously  
(20-283)upon them, and as the little river Sark, which the  
(20-283)English had passed at low water, was now filled  
(20-283)by the advancing tide, many of the fugitives lost

[TG20-284, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 20, p. 284]

(20-284)their lives. The victory, together with the spoils  
(20-284)of the field, remained in possession of the Scots.  
(20-284)The Earl of Northumberland escaped with difficulty,  
(20-284)through the gallantry of one of his sons, who  
(20-284)was made prisoner in covering his father's retreat.

(20-284)The King, much pleased with this victory, gave

(20-284)great praise to the Earl of Douglas, and continued  
(20-284)to employ his services as lieutenant-general of the  
(20-284)kingdom.

(20-284)This martial family of Douglas were as remarkable  
(20-284)for the address with which they sustained the  
(20-284)honour of their country in the tournaments and  
(20-284)military sports of the age, as in the field of battle.  
(20-284)In 1449, a grand combat took place at the barriers,  
(20-284)betwixt three renowned champions of Flanders,  
(20-284)namely, Jacques de Lalain, Simon de Lalain, and  
(20-284)Herve Meriadet, and three Scottish knights,  
(20-284)namely, James, brother of the Earl of Douglas,  
(20-284)another James Douglas, brother to the Lord of  
(20-284)Lochleven, and Sir John Ross of Halket. They  
(20-284)fought in the presence of the King at Stirling,  
(20-284)with lance, battle-axe, sword, and dagger. The  
(20-284)Earl of Douglas himself attended his brother and  
(20-284)kinsman with five thousand followers. The combat  
(20-284)was to be waged to extremity; that is, the  
(20-284)persons engaged were to kill each other if they  
(20-284)could, although there was no personal enmity  
(20-284)betwixt them, but, on the contrary, much mutual  
(20-284)esteem and good-will. They only fought to show  
(20-284)which of them was the bravest, and most skilful in  
(20-284)the use of arms.

(20-284)There was a space under the castle rock at

[TG20-285, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 20, p. 285]

(20-285)Stirling, which was used for such purposes. It  
(20-285)was surrounded with a strong enclosure of wooden  
(20-285)pales, and rich tents were pitched at each end for  
(20-285)the convenience of the champions putting on their  
(20-285)armour. Galleries were erected for the accommodation  
(20-285)of the King and his nobles, while the ladies  
(20-285)of the court in great numbers, and dressed as if for



(20-285)a theatre or ball-room, occupied a crag which commanded  
(20-285)a view of the lists, still called the Ladies'  
(20-285)Rock.

(20-285)The combatants appeared at first in rich velvet  
(20-285)dresses, and after having made their dutiful obeisances  
(20-285)to the King, retired to their pavilions. They  
(20-285)then sallied out in complete armour, and were  
(20-285)knighted by the King. James Douglas and Jaques  
(20-285)de Lalain rushed upon each other, and fought till  
(20-285)all their weapons were broken, saving Douglas's  
(20-285)dagger. The Flemish knight closing with his  
(20-285)antagonist, and seizing his arm, Douglas could not  
(20-285)strike; but they continued to wrestle fiercely together.

(20-285)The fight was also equal betwixt Simon  
(20-285)de Lalain and Sir John Ross; they were neither  
(20-285)of them skilful in warding blows, but struck at each  
(20-285)other with great fury, till armour and weapons gave  
(20-285)way, without either champion obtaining the advantage.  
(20-285)James Douglas of Lochleven was less

[TG20-286, Tales of a Grandfather, ch. 20, p. 286]

(20-286)fortunate; Meriadet parried a thrust of the Scotsman's  
(20-286)lance, and before Douglas could get his axe in hand,  
(20-286)his antagonist struck him to the ground. Douglas,  
(20-286)however, instantly sprung to his feet and renewed  
(20-286)the conflict. But Meriadet, one of the most skilful  
(20-286)and redoubted champions of his time, struck his  
(20-286)antagonist a second time to the earth; and then, as  
(20-286)the combat had become unequal, the King cast  
(20-286)down his warder or truncheon, as a signal that the  
(20-286)battle should cease. All the parties were highly  
(20-286)praised for their valour, and nobly entertained by  
(20-286)the King of Scotland.

(20-286)Thus you see how gallantly the Douglasses behaved  
(20-286)themselves, both in war and in the military

(20-286)exercises of the time. It was unhappy for the  
(20-286)country and themselves, that their ambition and  
(20-286)insubordination were at least equal to their courage  
(20-286)and talents.

[TG21-287, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 287]

(21-287)We mentioned that James II, in the early part  
(21-287)of his reign, conferred on the Earl of Douglas the  
(21-287)important post of lieutenant-general of Scotland.  
(21-287)But that ambitious nobleman was soon disposed to  
(21-287)extend his authority to independent power, and the  
(21-287)King found it necessary to take from him the dangerous  
(21-287)office with which he had intrusted him.  
(21-287)Douglas retired to his own castle meditating  
(21-287)revenge; whilst the King, on the other hand, looked  
(21-287)around him for some fitting opportunity of  
(21-287)diminishing the power of so formidable a rival.

(21-287)Douglas was not long of showing his total  
(21-287)contempt of the King's authority, and his power of  
(21-287)acting for himself. -- One of his friends and followers,  
(21-287)named Auchinleck, had been slain by the Lord  
(21-287)Colville. The criminal certainly deserved punishment,  
(21-287)but it ought to have been inflicted by the  
(21-287)regular magistrates of the crown, not by the arbitrary  
(21-287)pleasure of a private baron, however great  
(21-287)and powerful. Douglas, however, took up the  
(21-287)matter as a wrong done to himself, and revenged

[TG21-288, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 288]

(21-288)it by his own authority. He marched a large body  
(21-288)of his forces against the Lord Colville, stormed his  
(21-288)castle, and put every person within it to death.  
(21-288)The King was unable to avenge this insult to his  
(21-288)authority.

(21-288)In like manner, Douglas connived at and encouraged  
(21-288)some of his followers in Annandale to ravage  
(21-288)and plunder the lands of Sir John Herries, a person  
(21-288)of that country, eminently attached to the King.  
(21-288)Herries, a man of high spirit and considerable  
(21-288)power, retaliated, by wasting the lands of those  
(21-288)who had thus injured him. He was defeated and  
(21-288)made prisoner by Douglas, who caused him to be  
(21-288)executed, although the King sent a positive order,  
(21-288)enjoining him to forbear any injury to  
(21-288)Herries's person(1451). Soon after this, another  
(21-288)audacious transaction occurred in the murder  
(21-288)of Sir John Sandilands of Calder, a kinsman of  
(21-288)the King, by Sir Patrick Thornton, a dependant  
(21-288)of the house of Douglas; along with them were  
(21-288)slain two knights, Sir James and Sir Allan Stewart,  
(21-288)both of whom enjoyed the friendship and intimacy  
(21-288)of the sovereign.

(21-288)But a still more flagrant breach of law, and violation  
(21-288)of all respect to the King's authority,  
(21-288)happened in the case of Maclellan,  
(21-288)the tutor, or guardian of the young lord of Bomby,  
(21-288)ancestor of the Earls of Kirkcudbright (1452). This was  
(21-288)one of the few men of consequence in Galloway,  
(21-288)who, defying the threats of the Earl of Douglas,  
(21-288)had refused to join with him against the King.  
(21-288)The earl, incensed at his opposition, suddenly

[TG21-289, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 289]

(21-289)assaulted his castle, made him prisoner, and carried  
(21-289)him to the strong fortress of Thrieve, in Galloway,  
(21-289)situated on an island in the river Dee. The  
(21-289)King took a particular interest in Maclellan's fate,  
(21-289)the rather that he was petitioned to interfere in his  
(21-289)favour by a personal favourite of his own. This

(21-289)was Sir Patrick Gray, the commander of the royal  
(21-289)guard, a gentleman much in James's confidence,  
(21-289)and constantly attending on his person, and who  
(21-289)was Maclellan's near relative, being his uncle on  
(21-289)the mother's side. In order to prevent Maclellan  
(21-289)from sharing the fate of Colville and Herries, the  
(21-289)King wrote a letter to the Earl of Douglas, entreating  
(21-289)as a favour, rather than urging as a command,  
(21-289)that he would deliver the person of the Tutor of  
(21-289)Bomby, as Maclellan was usually entitled, into the  
(21-289)hands of his relative, Sir Patrick Gray.

(21-289)Sir Patrick himself went with the letter to the  
(21-289)castle of Thrieve. Douglas received him just as  
(21-289)he had arisen from dinner, and, with much apparent  
(21-289)civility, declined to speak with Gray, on the  
(21-289)occasion of his coming, until Sir Patrick also had  
(21-289)dined, saying, "It was ill talking between a full  
(21-289)man and a fasting." But this courtesy was only a  
(21-289)pretence to gain time to do a very cruel and lawless  
(21-289)action. Guessing that Sir Patrick Gray's visit  
(21-289)respected the life of Maclellan, he resolved to  
(21-289)hasten his execution before opening the King's  
(21-289)letter. Thus, while he was feasting Sir Patrick,  
(21-289)with every appearance of hospitality, he caused his  
(21-289)unhappy kinsman to be led out, and beheaded in  
(21-289)the courtyard of the castle.

[TG21-290, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 290]

(21-290)When dinner was over, Gray presented the  
(21-290)King's letter, which Douglas received and read  
(21-290)over with every testimony of profound respect.  
(21-290)He then thanked Sir Patrick for the trouble he  
(21-290)had taken in bringing him so gracious a letter from  
(21-290)his sovereign, especially considering he was not at  
(21-290)present on good terms with his Majesty. "And,"

(21-290)he added, "the King's demand shall instantly be  
(21-290)granted, the rather for your sake." The earl then  
(21-290)took Sir Patrick by the hand, and led him to the  
(21-290)castleyard, where the body of Maclellan was still  
(21-290)lying.

(21-290)"Sir Patrick," said he, as his servants removed  
(21-290)the bloody cloth which covered the body, "you  
(21-290)have come a little too late. There lies your sister's  
(21-290)son-but he wants the head. The body is, however,  
(21-290)at your service."

(21-290)"My lord," said Gray, suppressing his indignation,  
(21-290)"If you have taken his head, you may dispose  
(21-290)of the body as you will."

(21-290)But, when he had mounted his horse, which he  
(21-290)instantly called for, his resentment broke out, in  
(21-290)spite of the dangerous situation in which he was  
(21-290)placed:--

(21-290)"My lord," said he, "if I live, you shall bitterly  
(21-290)pay for this day's work."

(21-290)So saying, he turned his horse and galloped off.

(21-290)"To horse, and chase him!" said Douglas; and  
(21-290)if Gray had not been well mounted, he would, in  
(21-290)all probability, have shared the fate of his nephew.  
(21-290)He was closely pursued till near Edinburgh, a  
(21-290)space of fifty or sixty miles.

[TG21-291, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 291]

(21-291)Besides these daring and open instances of con-  
(21-291)tempt of the King's authority, Douglas entered into  
(21-291)such alliances as plainly showed his determination  
(21-291)to destroy entirely the royal government. He  
(21-291)formed a league with the Earl of Crawford, called  
(21-291)Earl Beardie, and sometimes, from the ferocity of  
(21-291)his temper, the Tiger-Earl, who had great power  
(21-291)in the counties of Angus, Perth, and Kincardine,

(21-291)and with the Earl of Ross, who possessed extensive  
(21-291)and almost royal authority in the north of  
(21-291)Scotland, by which these three powerful earls  
(21-291)agreed that they should take each other's part in  
(21-291)every quarrel, and against every man, the King  
(21-291)himself not excepted.

(21-291)James then plainly saw that some strong measures  
(21-291)must be taken, yet it was not easy to determine  
(21-291)what was to be done. The league between the  
(21-291)three earls enabled them, if open war was attempted,  
(21-291)to assemble a force superior to that of the crown.  
(21-291)The King, therefore, dissembled his resentment,  
(21-291)and, under pretext of desiring an amicable conference  
(21-291)and reconciliation, requested Douglas  
(21-291)to come to the royal court at Stirling (January, 1452).  
(21-291)The haughty earl hesitated not to accept  
(21-291)of this invitation, but before he actually did so, he  
(21-291)demandd and obtained a protection, or safe conduct,  
(21-291)under the great seal, pledging the King's  
(21-291)promise that he should be permitted to come to  
(21-291)the court and to return in safety. And the earl  
(21-291)was more confirmed in his purpose of waiting on  
(21-291)the King, because he was given to understand that  
(21-291)the Chancellor Crichton had retired from court in

[TG21-292, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 292]

(21-292)some disgrace; so that he imagined himself secure  
(21-292)from the plots of that great enemy of his family.

(21-292)Thus protected, as he thought, against personal  
(21-292)danger, Douglas came to Stirling in the end of  
(21-292)February, 1452, where he found the King lodged  
(21-292)in the castle of that place, which is situated upon  
(21-292)a rock rising abruptly from the plain, at the upper  
(21-292)end of the town, and only accessible by one gate,  
(21-292)which is strongly defended. The numerous followers

(21-292)of Douglas were quartered in the town, but  
(21-292)the earl himself was admitted into the castle.  
(21-292)One of his nearest confidants, and most powerful  
(21-292)allies, was James Hamilton of Cadyow, the head  
(21-292)of the great house of Hamilton. This gentleman  
(21-292)pressed forward to follow Douglas, as he entered  
(21-292)the gate. But Livingston, who was in the castle,  
(21-292)with the King, thrust back Hamilton, who was his  
(21-292)near relation, and struck him upon the face; and  
(21-292)when Hamilton, greatly incensed, rushed on him,  
(21-292)sword in hand, he repulsed him with a long lance,  
(21-292)till the gates were shut against him. Sir James  
(21-292)Hamilton was very angry at this usage at the time,  
(21-292)but afterwards knew that Livingston acted a friendly  
(21-292)part in excluding him from the danger into which  
(21-292)Douglas was throwing himself.

(21-292)The King received Douglas kindly, and, after  
(21-292)some amicable expostulation with him upon his  
(21-292)late conduct, all seemed friendship and cordiality  
(21-292)betwixt James and his too powerful subject. By  
(21-292)invitation of James, Douglas dined with him on  
(21-292)the day following. Supper was presented at seven  
(21-292)o'clock, and after it was over, the King having led

[TG21-293, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 293]

(21-293)Douglas into another apartment, where only some  
(21-293)of the privy council and of his body guard were in  
(21-293)attendance, he introduced the subject of the earl's  
(21-293)bond with Ross and Crawford, and exhorted him  
(21-293)to give up the engagement, as inconsistent with  
(21-293)his allegiance and the quiet of the kingdom.  
(21-293)Douglas declined to relinquish the treaty which he  
(21-293)had formed. The King urged him more imperiously,  
(21-293)and the earl returned a haughty and  
(21-293)positive refusal, upbraiding the King, at the same

(21-293)time, with mal-administration of the public affairs.  
(21-293)Then the King burst into a rage at his obstinacy,  
(21-293)and exclaimed, " By Heaven, my lord, if you will  
(21-293)not break the league, this shall." So saying, he  
(21-293)stabbed the earl with his dagger first in the throat,  
(21-293)and instantly after in the lower part of the body.  
(21-293)Sir Patrick Gray, who had sworn revenge on  
(21-293)Douglas for the execution of Maclellan, then struck  
(21-293)the earl on the head with a battle-axe; and others  
(21-293)of the King's retinue showed their zeal by stabbing  
(21-293)at the dying man with their knives and daggers.  
(21-293)He expired without uttering a word, covered with  
(21-293)twenty-six wounds. The corpse did not receive  
(21-293)any Christian burial. At least, about forty years  
(21-293)since, a skeleton was found buried in the garden,  
(21-293)just below the fatal window, which was, with much  
(21-293)probability, conjectured to be the remains of the  
(21-293)Earl of Douglas, who died thus strangely and  
(21-293)unhappily by the hand of his sovereign.

(21-293)This was a wicked and cruel action on the King's  
(21-293)part; bad if it were done in hasty passion, and yet  
(21-293)worse if James meditated the possibility of this  
(21-293)violence from the beginning, and had determined

[TG21-294, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 294]

(21-294)to use force if Douglas should not yield to persuasion.

(21-294)The earl had deserved punishment, perhaps  
(21-294)even that of death, for many crimes against the  
(21-294)state; but the King ought not to have slain him  
(21-294)without form of trial, and in his own chamber,  
(21-294)after decoying him thither under assurance that his  
(21-294)person should be safe. Yet this assassination, like  
(21-294)that of the Red Comyn at Dumfries, turned to the  
(21-294)good of Scotland; for God, my dearest child, who  
(21-294)is often pleased to bring good out of the follies)



(21-294)and even the crimes of men, rendered the death of  
(21-294)Comyn the road to the freedom of Scotland, and  
(21-294)that of this ambitious earl the cause of the downfall  
(21-294)of the Douglas family, which had become too powerful  
(21-294)for the peace of the kingdom.

(21-294)The scene, however, opened very differently  
(21-294)from the manner in which it was to end. There  
(21-294)were in the town of Stirling four brethren of the  
(21-294)murdered Douglas, who had come to wait on him  
(21-294)to court. Upon hearing that their elder brother  
(21-294)had died in the manner I have told you, they  
(21-294)immediately acknowledged James, the eldest of  
(21-294)the four, as his successor in the earldom. They  
(21-294)then hastened each to the county where he had  
(21-294)interest (for they were all great lords) and, collecting  
(21-294)their friends and vassals, they returned to  
(21-294)Stirling, dragging the safe-conduct, or passport  
(21-294)which had been granted to the Earl of Douglas, at  
(21-294)the tail of a miserable cart-jade, in order to show  
(21-294)their contempt for the King. They next, with  
(21-294)the sound of five hundred horns and trumpets, proclaimed  
(21-294)King James a false and perjured man.  
(21-294)Afterwards they pillaged the town of Stirling, and,

[TG21-295, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 295]

(21-295)not thinking that enough, they sent back Hamilton  
(21-295)of Cadyow to burn it to the ground. But the  
(21-295)strength of the castle defied all their efforts; and  
(21-295)after this bravado, the Douglasses dispersed themselves  
(21-295)to assemble a still larger body of forces.

(21-295)So many great barons were engaged in alliance  
(21-295)with the house of Douglas, that it is said to have  
(21-295)been a question in the King's mind, whether he  
(21-295)should abide the conflict, or fly to France, and leave  
(21-295)the throne to the earl. At this moment of extreme

(21-295)need, James found a trusty counsellor in his cousin-  
(21-295)german, Kennedy, Archbishop of St Andrews,  
(21-295)one of the wisest men of his time. The archbishop  
(21-295)showed his advice in a sort of emblem or parable.  
(21-295)He gave the King a bunch of arrows tied together  
(21-295)with a thong of leather, and asked him to break  
(21-295)them. The King said it was beyond his strength.  
(21-295)"That may be the case, bound together as they  
(21-295)are," replied the archbishop; "but if you undo the  
(21-295)strap, and take the arrows one by one, you may  
(21-295)easily break them all in succession. And thus, my  
(21-295)liege, you ought in wisdom to deal with the insurgent nobility.  
(21-295)If you attack them while they are  
(21-295)united in one mind and purpose, they will be too  
(21-295)strong for you; but if you can, by dealing with  
(21-295)them separately, prevail on them to abandon their  
(21-295)union, you may as easily master them one after the  
(21-295)other, as you can break these arrows if you take  
(21-295)each singly."

(21-295)Acting upon this principle, the King made private  
(21-295)representations to several of the nobility, to whom  
(21-295)his agents found access, showing them that the

[TG21-296, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 296]

(21-296)rebellion of the Douglasses would, if successful,  
(21-296)render that family superior to all others in Scotland,  
(21-296)and sink the rest of the peers into men of  
(21-296)little consequence. Large gifts of lands, treasures,  
(21-296)and honours, were liberally promised to those who,  
(21-296)in this moment of extremity, should desert the  
(21-296)Douglasses and join the King's party. These large  
(21-296)promises, and the secret dread of the great predominance  
(21-296)of the Douglas family, drew to the King's  
(21-296)side many of the nobles who had hitherto wavered  
(21-296)betwixt their allegiance and their fear of the earl.

(21-296)Among these, the most distinguished was the  
(21-296)Earl of Angus, who although himself a Douglas,  
(21-296)being a younger branch of that family, joined on  
(21-296)this memorable occasion with the King against his  
(21-296)kinsman, and gave rise to the saying, that "the  
(21-296)Red Douglas (such was the complexion of the  
(21-296)Angus family) had put down the Black."

(21-296)The great family of Gordon also declaring for  
(21-296)the King, their chief, the Earl of Huntly, collected  
(21-296)an army in the north, and marched south as far as  
(21-296)Breachin to support the royal authority. Here he  
(21-296)was encountered by the Tiger-Earl of Crawford,  
(21-296)who had taken arms for the Douglas party, according  
(21-296)to the fatal bond which had cost the Earl  
(21-296)William his life. One of the chief leaders in Crawford's  
(21-296)army was John Collasse of Bonnymoon (of  
(21-296)Balnamoon), who commanded a gallant body or  
(21-296)men, armed with bills and battle-axes, on whom the  
(21-296)earl greatly relied. But before the action, this  
(21-296)John Collasse had asked Crawford to grant him  
(21-296)certain lands, that lay convenient for him, and near

[TG21-297, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 297]

(21-297)his house, which the earl refused to do. Collasse,  
(21-297)incensed at the refusal, took an opportunity, when  
(21-297)the battle was at the closest, to withdraw from the  
(21-297)conflict; upon which Crawford's men, who had  
(21-297)been on the point of gaining the victory, lost heart,  
(21-297)and were defeated. Other battles were  
(21-297)fought in different parts of Scotland  
(21-297)between the Douglasses and their allies,  
(21-297)and those noblemen and gentlemen who favoured  
(21-297)the King (18 May 1452). Much blood was spilt, and great mischief  
(21-297)done to the country. Among other instances  
(21-297)of the desolation of these civil wars, the Earl of

(21-297)Huntly burned one half of the town of Elgin, being  
(21-297)that part which inclined to the Douglasses, while  
(21-297)he left standing the opposite part of the same street,  
(21-297)which was inhabited by citizens attached to his own  
(21-297)family. Hence the proverb, when a thing is imperfectly  
(21-297)finished, that it is "Half done, as Elgin  
(21-297)was burned."

(21-297)Huntly, however, was afterwards surprised, and  
(21-297)lost a considerable number of his followers in a  
(21-297)morass, called Dunkinty, where they were attacked  
(21-297)by Douglas, Earl of Murray. This gave rise to a  
(21-297)jeering song, which ran thus: - -

(21-297) "Where did you leave your men,  
(21-297) Thou Gordon so gay?  
(21-297) In the bog of Dunkinty,  
(21-297) Mowing the hay."

(21-297)In this period of calamity, famine and pestilence  
(21-297)came to add to the desolation of the country, wasted  
(21-297)by a civil war, which occasioned skirmishes,  
(21-297)conflagrations, and slaughters, almost in every province  
(21-297)of Scotland.

[TG21-298, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 298]

(21-298)The royal party at length began to gain ground;  
(21-298)for the present Earl of Douglas seems to have been  
(21-298)a man of less action and decision than was usual  
(21-298)with those of his name and family.

(21-298)The Earl of Crawford was one of those who first  
(21-298)deserted him, and applied to the King for forgiveness  
(21-298)and restoration to favour. He appeared before  
(21-298)James in the most humble guise, in poor apparel,  
(21-298)bareheaded and barefooted, like a condemned criminal;  
(21-298)and throwing himself at the King's feet, he  
(21-298)confessed his treasons, and entreated the royal  
(21-298)mercy, on account of the loyalty of his ancestors,

(21-298)and the sincerity of his repentance. The King,  
(21-298)though he had many subjects of complaint against  
(21-298)this powerful lord, and notwithstanding he had  
(21-298)made a vow to destroy the earl's castle of Finhaven,  
(21-298)and to make the highest stone the lowest, nevertheless  
(21-298)granted him a full pardon, and made him a  
(21-298)visit at Finhaven, where he accomplished his vow,  
(21-298)by getting to the top of the battlements, and throwing  
(21-298)a small stone, which was lying loose there,  
(21-298)down into the moat; thus, in one sense, making the  
(21-298)highest stone in the house the lowest, though not  
(21-298)by the demolition of the place. By this clemency  
(21-298)the minds of the hostile nobles were conciliated,  
(21-298)and many began to enter into terms of submission.

(21-298)But the power of the Douglasses remained unbroken,  
(21-298)and it was so great that there appeared  
(21-298) little hope of the struggle being ended without  
(21-298)a desperate battle (1454). At length such an  
(21-298)event seemed near approaching. The Earls of  
(21-298)Orkney and Angus, acting for the King, had

[TG21-299, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 299]

(21-299)besieged Abercorn, a strong castle on the frith of  
(21-299)Forth, belonging to the Earl of Douglas. Douglas  
(21-299)collected the whole strength which his family and  
(21-299)allies could raise, amounting, it is said, to nearly  
(21-299)forty thousand men, with which he advanced to  
(21-299)raise the siege. The King, on the other hand,  
(21-299)having assembled the whole forces of the north of  
(21-299)Scotland, marched to meet Douglas, at the head of  
(21-299)an army somewhat superior in numbers to that of  
(21-299)the earl, but inferior in military discipline. Thus  
(21-299)every thing seemed to render a combat inevitable,  
(21-299)the issue of which must have shown whether James  
(21-299)Stewart or James Douglas was to wear the crown

(21-299)of Scotland. The small river of Carron divided  
(21-299)the two armies.

(21-299)But the intrigues of the Archbishop of St  
(21-299)Andrews had made a powerful impression upon  
(21-299)many of the nobles who acted with Douglas, and  
(21-299)there was a party among his followers who obeyed  
(21-299)him more from fear than affection. Others, seeing  
(21-299)a certain degree of hesitation in the earl's resolutions,  
(21-299)and a want of decision in his actions, began  
(21-299)to doubt whether he was a leader fit to conduct so  
(21-299)perilous an enterprise. Amongst these last was  
(21-299)Sir James Hamilton of Cadyow, already mentioned,  
(21-299)who commanded in Douglas's army three hundred  
(21-299)horse, and as many infantry, all men of tried  
(21-299)discipline and courage. The Archbishop Kennedy  
(21-299)was Hamilton's kinsman, and took advantage of  
(21-299)their relationship to send a secret messenger to  
(21-299)inform him that the King was well disposed to  
(21-299)pardon his rebellion, and to show him great favour

[TG21-300, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 300]

(21-300)provided that he would, at that critical moment,  
(21-300)set an example to the insurgent nobility, by renouncing  
(21-300)the cause of Douglas, and returning to the  
(21-300)King's obedience. These arguments made considerable  
(21-300)impression on Hamilton, who, nevertheless,  
(21-300)having been long the friend and follower of  
(21-300)the Earl of Douglas, was loath to desert his old  
(21-300)friend in such an extremity.

(21-300)On the next morning after this secret conference,  
(21-300)the King sent a herald to the camp of Douglas,  
(21-300)charging the earl to disperse his followers, on pain  
(21-300)that he and his accomplices should be proclaimed  
(21-300)traitors, but at the same time promising forgiveness  
(21-300)and rewards to all who should leave the rebellious

(21-300)standard of Douglas. Douglas made a mock of  
(21-300)this summons; and sounding his trumpets, and  
(21-300)placing his men in order, marched stoutly forward  
(21-300)to encounter the King's army, who on their side  
(21-300)left their camp, and advanced with displayed banners,  
(21-300)as if to instant battle. It seems, however,  
(21-300)that the message of the herald had made some  
(21-300)impression on the followers of Douglas, and perhaps  
(21-300)on the earl himself, by rendering him doubtful  
(21-300)of their adherence. He saw, or thought he saw,  
(21-300)that his troops were discouraged, and led them  
(21-300)back into his camp, hoping to inspire them with  
(21-300)more confidence and zeal. But the movement had  
(21-300)a different effect; for no sooner had the earl  
(21-300)returned to his tent, than Sir James Hamilton came  
(21-300)to expostulate with him, and to require him to say,  
(21-300)whether he meant to fight or not, assuring him that  
(21-300)every delay was in favour of the King, and that

[TG21-301, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 301]

(21-301)the longer the earl put off the day of battle, the  
(21-301)fewer men he would have to fight it with. Douglas  
(21-301)answered contemptuously to Hamilton, "that  
(21-301)if he was afraid to stay, he was welcome to go  
(21-301)home." Hamilton took the earl at his word, and,  
(21-301)leaving the camp of Douglas, went over to the  
(21-301)King that very night.

(21-301)The example was so generally followed, that  
(21-301)the army of Douglas seemed suddenly to disperse,  
(21-301)like a dissolving snowball; and in the morning the  
(21-301)earl had not a hundred men left in his silent and  
(21-301)deserted camp, excepting his own immediate followers.  
(21-301)He was obliged to fly to the West Border,  
(21-301)where his brothers and followers sustained  
(21-301)a severe defeat from the Scotts and

(21-301)other Borderers, near a place called  
(21-301)Arkinholme, in the valley of Esk (1 May 1455). Archibald Douglas,  
(21-301)Earl of Murray, one of the earl's' brothers, falling  
(21-301)in the battle, his head was cut off, and sent to the  
(21-301)King, then before Abercorn; another, Hugh, Earl  
(21-301)of Ormond, was wounded and made prisoner, and  
(21-301)immediately executed, notwithstanding his services  
(21-301)at the battle of Sark. John, Lord Balvenie, the  
(21-301)third brother, escaped into England, where the earl  
(21-301)also found a retreat. Thus the power of this great  
(21-301)and predominant family, which seemed to stand so  
(21-301)fair for possessing the crown, fell at length without  
(21-301)any decisive struggle; and their greatness, which  
(21-301)had been founded upon the loyalty and bravery of  
(21-301)the Good Lord James, was destroyed by the rebellious  
(21-301)and wavering conduct of the last earl.  
(21-301)That unfortunate nobleman remained nearly

[TG21-302, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 302]

(21-302)twenty years a banished man in England, and was  
(21-302)almost forgotten in his own country, until the subsequent  
(21-302)reign, when, in 1484, he was defeated and  
(21-302)made prisoner, in a small incursion which he had  
(21-302)attempted to make upon the frontiers of Annandale.  
(21-302)He surrendered to a brother of Kirkpatrick  
(21-302)of Closeburn, who, in the earl's better days, had  
(21-302)been his own vassal, and who shed tears at seeing  
(21-302)his old master in such a lamentable situation.  
(21-302)Kirkpatrick even proposed to set him at liberty,  
(21-302)and fly with him into England; but Douglas  
(21-302)rejected this offer. "I am tired," he said, "of  
(21-302)exile; and as there is a reward offered by the King  
(21-302)for my head, I had rather it were conferred on you,  
(21-302)who were always faithful to me while I was faithful  
(21-302)to myself, than on any one else." Kirkpatrick,



(21-302)however, acted kindly and generously. He secured  
(21-302)the earl in some secret abode, and did not  
(21-302)deliver him up to the King until he had a promise  
(21-302)of his life. Douglas was then ordained to be put  
(21-302)into the abbey of Lindores, to which sentence he  
(21-302)submitted calmly, only using a popular proverb,  
(21-302)" He that cannot do better must be a monk." He  
(21-302)lived in that convent only for four years, and with  
(21-302)him, as the last of his family, expired the principal  
(21-302)branch of these tremendous Earls of Douglas.

(21-302)Other Scottish families arose upon the ruins of  
(21-302)this mighty house, in consequence of the distribution  
(21-302)made of their immense forfeited estates, to  
(21-302)those who had assisted the King in suppressing  
(21-302)their power. Amongst these the Earl of Angus,  
(21-302)who, although kinsman to the Earl of Douglas, had

[TG21-303, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 303]

(21-303)sided with the King, received by far the greater  
(21-303)share; to an amount, indeed, which enabled the  
(21-303)family, as we shall see, to pursue the same ambitious  
(21-303)course as that of their kinsfolk of the elder branch,  
(21-303)although they neither rose to such high elevation,  
(21-303)nor sunk into the same irreparable ruin, which was  
(21-303)the lot of the original family.

(21-303)Hamilton also rose into power on the fall of the  
(21-303)Douglas. His opportune desertion of his kinsman  
(21-303)at Abercorn was accounted good service, and was  
(21-303)rewarded with large grants of land, and at last  
(21-303)with the hand of the King's eldest daughter in  
(21-303)marriage.

(21-303)Sir Walter Scott of Kirkurd and Buccleuch  
(21-303)likewise obtained great gifts of land for his clan's  
(21-303)service and his own, at the battle of Arkinholme,  
(21-303)and began that course of greatness which raised

(21-303)his family to the ducal dignity.

(21-303)Such, my dear child, is the course of the world,  
(21-303)in which the downfall of one great man or family  
(21-303)is the means of advancing others; as a falling tree

[TG21-304, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 304]

(21-304)throws its seed upon the ground, and causes young  
(21-304)plants to arise in its room.

(21-304)The English did not make much war upon Scotland  
(21-304)during this reign, being engaged at home  
(21-304)with their dreadful civil quarrels of York and  
(21-304)Lancaster. For the same reason, perhaps, the  
(21-304)Scots had the advantage in such actions as took  
(21-304)place.

(21-304)Relieved from the rivalry of the Douglas, and  
(21-304)from the pressure of constant war with England,  
(21-304)James II governed Scotland firmly. The kingdom  
(21-304)enjoyed considerable tranquillity during his  
(21-304)reign; and his last Parliament was able to recommend  
(21-304)to him the regular and firm execution of the  
(21-304)laws, as to a prince who possessed the full means  
(21-304)of discharging his kingly office, without resistance  
(21-304)from evil-doers or infringers of justice. This was  
(21-304)in 1458. But only two years afterwards all these  
(21-304)fair hopes were blighted.

(21-304)The strong Border castle of Roxburgh had  
(21-304)remained in the hands of the English ever since  
(21-304)the fatal battle of Durham. The King was  
(21-304)determined to recover this bulwark of the kingdom.  
(21-304)Breaking through a truce which existed with  
(21-304)England at the time, James summoned together  
(21-304)the full force of his kingdom to accomplish this  
(21-304)great enterprise. The nobles attended in numbers,  
(21-304)and well accompanied, at the summons of a prince  
(21-304)who was always respected, and generally successful

(21-304)in his military undertakings. Even Donald of the  
(21-304)Isles proved himself a loyal and submissive vassal;  
(21-304)and while he came with a force which showed his

[TG21-305, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 305]

(21-305)great authority, he placed it submissively at the  
(21-305)disposal of his sovereign. His men were arrayed  
(21-305)in the Highland fashion, with shirts of mail, two-  
(21-305)handed swords, axes, and bows and arrows; and  
(21-305)Donald offered, when the Scots should enter  
(21-305)England, that he would march a mile in front of  
(21-305)the King's host, and take upon himself the danger  
(21-305)of the first onset. But James's first object was the  
(21-305)siege of Roxburgh.

(21-305)This strong castle was situated on an eminence  
(21-305)near the junction of the Tweed and the Teviot;  
(21-305)the waters of the Teviot, raised by a damhead or  
(21-305)wear, flowed round the fortress, and its walls were  
(21-305)as strong as the engineers of the time could raise.  
(21-305)On former occasions it had been taken by stratagem,  
(21-305)but James was now to proceed by a regular  
(21-305)siege.

(21-305)With this purpose he established a battery of  
(21-305)such large clumsy cannon as were constructed at  
(21-305)that time, upon the north side of the river Tweed.  
(21-305)The siege had lasted some time, and the army  
(21-305)began to be weary of the undertaking, when they  
(21-305)received new spirit from the arrival of the Earl of  
(21-305)Huntly with a gallant body of fresh troops. The  
(21-305)King, out of joy at these succours, commanded his  
(21-305)artillery to fire a volley upon the castle, and stood  
(21-305)near the cannon himself, to mark the effect of the  
(21-305)shot. The great guns of that period were awkwardly  
(21-305)framed out of bars of iron, fastened together  
(21-305)by hoops of the same metal, somewhat in the same

(21-305)manner in which barrels are now made. They  
(21-305)were, therefore, far more liable to accidents than

[TG21-306, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 21, p. 306]

(21-306)modern cannon, which are cast in one entire solid  
(21-306)piece, and then bored hollow by a machine. One  
(21-306)of these ill-made guns burst in going off. A  
(21-306)fragment of iron broke James's thigh-bone, and  
(21-306)killed him on the spot. Another splinter wounded  
(21-306)the Earl of Angus. No other person sustained  
(21-306)injury, though many stood around. Thus died  
(21-306)James the Second of Scotland, in the  
(21-306)twenty ninth year of his life, after  
(21-306)reigning twenty-four years (3 Aug. 1460).

(21-306)This King did not possess the elegant accomplishments  
(21-306)of his father; and the manner in which  
(21-306)he slew the Earl of Douglas must be admitted as  
(21-306)a stain upon his reputation. Yet he was, upon the  
(21-306)whole, a good prince, and was greatly lamented by  
(21-306)his subjects. A thorn-tree, in the Duke of Roxburghe's  
(21-306)park at Fleurs, still shows the spot where  
(21-306)he died.

[TG22-307, TG, chap. 22, p. 307]

(22-307)Upon the lamentable death of James II, the  
(22-307)army which lay before Roxburgh was greatly discouraged,  
(22-307)and seemed about to raise the siege.  
(22-307)But Margaret, the widow of their slain Monarch,  
(22-307)appeared in their council of war, leading her eldest  
(22-307)son, a child of eight years old, who was the successor  
(22-307)to the crown, and spoke to them these gallant  
(22-307)words: "Fy, my noble lords! think not now  
(22-307)shamefully to give up an enterprise which is so  
(22-307)bravely begun, or to abandon the revenge of this

(22-307)unhappy accident which has befallen before this  
(22-307)ill-omened castle. Forward, my brave lords, and  
(22-307)persevere in your undertaking; and never turn  
(22-307)your backs till this siege is victoriously ended.  
(22-307)Let it not be said that such brave champions needed  
(22-307)to hear from a woman, and a widowed one, the  
(22-307)courageous advice and comfort which she ought  
(22-307)rather to receive from you!" The Scottish nobles  
(22-307)received this heroic address with shouts of applause,  
(22-307)and persevered in the siege of Roxburgh castle,  
(22-307)until the garrison, receiving no relief, were obliged

[TG22-308, TG, Chap. 22, p. 308]

(22-308)to surrender the place through famine. The governor  
(22-308)is stated to have been put to death, and in  
(22-308)the animosity of the Scots against every thing concerned  
(22-308)with the death of their King, they levelled  
(22-308)the walls of the castle with the ground, and returned  
(22-308)victorious from an enterprise which had cost them  
(22-308)so dear.

(22-308)The minority of James III was more prosperous  
(22-308)than that of his father and grandfather. The  
(22-308)affairs of state were guided by the experienced  
(22-308)wisdom of Bishop Kennedy. Roxburgh was, as  
(22-308)we have said, taken and destroyed. Berwick,  
(22-308)during the dissensions of the civil wars of England,  
(22-308)was surrendered to the Scots; and the dominions  
(22-308)of the Islands of Orkney and Zetland, which had  
(22-308)hitherto belonged to the Kings of Norway, were  
(22-308)acquired as the marriage portion of a Princess of  
(22-308)Denmark and Norway, who was united in marriage  
(22-308)to the King of Scotland.

(22-308)These favourable circumstances were first interrupted  
(22-308) by the death of Archbishop  
(22-308)Kennedy; after which event, one family

(22-308)that of the Boyds, started into such a  
(22-308)degree of temporary power as seemed to threaten  
(22-308)the public tranquility (10 May 1466). The tutor of James III  
(22-308)was Gilbert Kennedy, a wise and grave man, who  
(22-308)continued to regulate the studies of the King after  
(22-308)the death of his brother the prelate, but unadvisedly  
(22-308)called in to his assistance Sir Alexander, the  
(22-308)brother of Lord Boyd, as one who was younger  
(22-308)and fitter than himself to teach James military  
(22-308)exercises. By means of this appointment, Sir

[TG22-309, TG, chap. 22, p. 309]

(22-309)Alexander, his brother Lord Boyd, and two of his  
(22-309)sons, became so intimate with the King, that they  
(22-309)resolved to take him from under the management  
(22-309)of Kennedy entirely. The court was then residing  
(22-309)at Linlithgow, and the King, while abroad on a  
(22-309)hunting party, was persuaded to direct his horse's  
(22-309)head to Edinburgh, instead of returning. Kennedy,  
(22-309)the tutor, hastened to oppose the King's  
(22-309)desire, and seizing his horse by the bridle, wished  
(22-309)to lead him back to Linlithgow. Alexander Boyd  
(22-309)rushed forward, and striking with a hunting-staff  
(22-309)the old man, who had deserved better usage at his  
(22-309)hand, forced him to quit the King's rein, and  
(22-309)accomplished his purpose of carrying James to  
(22-309)Edinburgh, where he entered upon the administration  
(22-309)of affairs, and having granted a solemn  
(22-309)pardon to the Boyds for whatever violence had  
(22-309)occurred in their proceedings, he employed them  
(22-309)for a time, as his chief ministers and favourites.  
(22-309)Sir Thomas, one of Lord Boyd's sons, was honoured  
(22-309)with the hand of the Princess Margaret, the King's  
(22-309)eldest sister, and was created Earl of Arran. He  
(22-309)deserved even this elevation by his personal accomplishments,

(22-309)if he approached the character given of  
(22-309)him by an English gentleman. He is described as  
(22-309)"the most courteous, gentle, wise, kind, companionable,  
(22-309)and bounteous Earl of Arran; -- and again,  
(22-309)as "a light, able-bodied, well-spoken man, a goodly  
(22-309)archer, and a knight most devout, most perfect,  
(22-309)and most true to his lady."

(22-309)Notwithstanding the new Earl of Arran's accomplishments,  
(22-309)the sudden rise of his family was

[TG22-310, TG, ch. 22, p. 310]

(22-310)followed by as sudden a fall. The King, either  
(22-310)resenting the use which the Boyds had made of  
(22-310)his favour, or changing his opinion of them from  
(22-310)other causes, suddenly deprived the whole family  
(22-310)of their offices, and caused them to be tried for the  
(22-310)violence committed at Linlithgow, notwithstanding  
(22-310)the pardon which he himself had granted. Sir  
(22-310)Alexander Boyd was condemned and executed.  
(22-310)Lord Boyd and his sons escaped, and died in exile.  
(22-310)After the death of Sir Thomas (the Earl of  
(22-310)Arran," the Princess Margaret was married to the  
(22-310)Lord Hamilton, to whom she carried the estate  
(22-310)and title of Arran.

(22-310)It was after the fall of the Boyds that the King  
(22-310)came to administer the government in person, and  
(22-310)that the defects of his character began to appear.  
(22-310)He was timorous, a great failing in a warlike age;  
(22-310)and his cowardice made him suspicious of his  
(22-310)nobility, and particularly of his two brothers. He  
(22-310)was fond of money, and therefore did not use that  
(22-310)generosity towards his powerful subjects which  
(22-310)was necessary to secure their attachment; but, on  
(22-310)the contrary, endeavoured to increase his private  
(22-310)hoards of wealth by encroaching upon the rights

(22-310)both of clergy and laity, and thus made himself at  
(22-310)once hated and contemptible. He was a lover of  
(22-310)the fine arts, as they are called, of music and architecture;  
(22-310)a disposition graceful in a monarch, if  
(22-310)exhibited with due regard to his dignity. But he  
(22-310)made architects and musicians his principal

[TG22-311, TG, ch. 22, p. 311]

(22-311)companions, excluding his nobility from the personal  
(22-311)familiarity to which he admitted those whom the  
(22-311)haughty barons of Scotland termed masons and  
(22-311)fiddlers. Cochran, an architect, Rogers, a musician,  
(22-311)Leonard, a smith, Hommel, a tailor, and Torphichen,  
(22-311)a fencing-master, were his counsellors and  
(22-311)companions. These habits of low society excited  
(22-311)the hatred of the nobility, who began to make  
(22-311)comparisons betwixt the King and his two brothers,  
(22-311)the Dukes of Albany and Mar, greatly to the  
(22-311)disadvantage of James.

(22-311)These younger sons of James the Second were  
(22-311)of appearance and manners such as were then  
(22-311)thought most suited to their royal birth. This is  
(22-311)the description of the Duke of Albany by an ancient  
(22-311)Scottish author: He was well-proportioned, and  
(22-311)tall in stature, and comely in his countenance; that  
(22-311)is to say, broad-faced, red-nosed, large-eared, and  
(22-311)leaving a very awful countenance when it pleased  
(22-311)him to speak with those who had displeased him.  
(22-311)Mar was of a less stern temper, and gave great  
(22-311)satisfaction to all who approached his person, by  
(22-311)the mildness and gentleness of his manners. Both  
(22-311)princes excelled in the military exercises of tilting,  
(22-311)hunting, hawking, and other personal accomplishments,  
(22-311)for which their brother, the King, was  
(22-311)unfit, by taste, or from timidity, although they were



(22-311)in those times reckoned indispensable to a man of  
(22-311)rank.

(22-311)Perhaps some excuse for the King's fears may  
(22-311)be found in the turbulent disposition of the Scottish  
(22-311)nobles, who like the Douglasses and Boyds, often

[TG22-312, TG, chap. 22, p. 312]

(22-312)nourished schemes of ambition, which they endeavoured  
(22-312)to gratify by exercising a control over the  
(22-312)King's person. The following incident may serve  
(22-312)to amuse you, among so many melancholy tales,  
(22-312)and at the same time to show you the manners of  
(22-312)the Scottish Kings, and the fears which James  
(22-312)entertained for the enterprises of the nobility.

(22-312>About the year 1474, Lord Somerville being in  
(22-312)attendance upon the King's court, James III  
(22-312)offered to come and visit him at his castle of Cowthally,  
(22-312)near the town of Carnwath, where he then  
(22-312)lived in all the rude hospitality of the time, for  
(22-312)which this nobleman was peculiarly remarkable.  
(22-312)It was his custom, when, being from home, he  
(22-312)intended to return to the castle with a party of  
(22-312)guests, merely to write the words, Speates and  
(22-312)raxes; that is, spits and ranges; meaning by this  
(22-312)hint that there should be a great quantity of food  
(22-312)prepared, and that the spits and ranges, or framework  
(22-312)on which they turn, should be put into employment.  
(22-312)Even the visit of the King himself did  
(22-312)not induce Lord Somerville to send any other than  
(22-312)his usual intimation; only he repeated it three  
(22-312)times, and despatched it to his castle by a special  
(22-312)messenger. The paper was delivered to the Lady  
(22-312)Somerville, who, having been lately married, was  
(22-312)not quite accustomed to read her husband's hand-  
(22-312)writing, which probably was not very good; for

(22-312)in those times noblemen used the sword more than  
(22-312)the pen. So the lady sent for the steward, and,  
(22-312)after laying their heads together, instead of reading  
(22-312)Speates and raxes, speates and raxes, speates and

[TG22-313, TG, chap. 22, p. 313]

(22-313)raxes, they made out the writing to be Spears and  
(22-313)jacks, spears and jacks, spears and jacks. Jacks  
(22-313)were a sort of leathern doublet, covered with plates  
(22-313)of iron, worn as armour by horsemen of inferior  
(22-313)rank. They concluded the meaning of these terrible  
(22-313)words to be, that Lord Somerville was in  
(22-313)some distress, or engaged in some quarrel in Edinburgh,  
(22-313)and wanted assistance; so that, instead of  
(22-313)killing cattle and preparing for a feast, they collected  
(22-313)armed men together, and got ready for a  
(22-313)fray. A party of two hundred horsemen were  
(22-313)speedily assembled, and were trotting over the  
(22-313)moors towards Edinburgh, when they observed a  
(22-313)large company of gentlemen employed in the sport  
(22-313)of hawking, on the side of Corsett-hill. This was  
(22-313)the King and Lord Somerville, who were on their  
(22-313)road to Cowthally, taking their sport as they went  
(22-313)along. The appearance of a numerous body of  
(22-313)armed men soon turned their game to earnest; and  
(22-313)the King, who saw the Lord Somerville's banner  
(22-313)at the head of the troop, concluded it was some  
(22-313)rebellious enterprise against his person, and charged  
(22-313)the baron with treason. Lord Somerville declared  
(22-313)his innocence. "Yonder," said he, "are indeed  
(22-313)my men and my banner, but I have no knowledge  
(22-313)whatever of the cause that has brought them here.  
(22-313)But if your grace will permit me to ride forward,  
(22-313)I will soon see the cause of this disturbance. In  
(22-313)the mean time, let my eldest son and heir remain as

(22-313)an hostage in your grace's power, and let him lose  
(22-313)his head if I prove false to my duty." The King  
(22-313)accordingly permitted Lord Somerville to ride

[TG22-314, TG, chap. 22, p. 314]

(22-314)towards his followers, when the matter was soon  
(22-314)explained by those who commanded them. The  
(22-314)mistake was then only subject of merriment; for  
(22-314)the King, looking at the letter, protested he himself  
(22-314)would have read it Spears and jacks, rather  
(22-314)than Speates and raxes. When they came to  
(22-314)Cowthally, the lady was much out of countenance  
(22-314)at the mistake. But the King greatly praised her  
(22-314)for the despatch which she had used in raising men  
(22-314)to assist her husband, and said he hoped she would  
(22-314)always have as brave a band at his service, when  
(22-314)the King and kingdom required them. And thus  
(22-314)every thing went happily off.

(22-314)It was natural that a prince of a timid, and at  
(22-314)the same time a severe disposition, such as James  
(22-314)III seems to have had, should see with anxiety  
(22-314)the hold which his brothers possessed over the  
(22-314)hearts of his subjects; and the insinuations of the  
(22-314)unworthy familiars of his private hours turned that  
(22-314)anxiety and suspicion into deadly and implacable  
(22-314)hatred. Various causes combined to induce the  
(22-314)mean and obscure favourites of James to sow enmity  
(22-314)betwixt him and his brothers. The Homes and  
(22-314)Hepperns, families which had risen into additional  
(22-314)power after the fall of the Douglasses, had several  
(22-314)private disputes with Albany concerning privileges  
(22-314)and property belonging to the earldom of March,  
(22-314)which had been conferred on him by his father.

[TG22-315, TG, chap. 22, p. 315]

(22-315)Albany was also Lord Warden of the east frontiers,  
(22-315)and in that capacity had restrained and disobliged  
(22-315)those powerful clans. To be revenged, they made  
(22-315)interest with Robert Cochran, the King's principal  
(22-315)adviser, and gave him, it is said, large bribes to  
(22-315)put Albany out of credit with the King. Cochran's  
(22-315)own interest suggested the same vile course; for  
(22-315)he must have been sensible that Albany and Mar  
(22-315)disapproved of the King's intimacy with him and  
(22-315)his companions.

(22-315)These unworthy favourites, therefore, set  
(22-315)themselves to fill the King's mind with apprehensions  
(22-315)of dangers which were to arise to him from his  
(22-315)brothers. They informed him that the Earl of  
(22-315)Mar had consulted witches when and how the King  
(22-315)should die, and that it had been answered that he  
(22-315)should fall by means of his nearest relations. They  
(22-315)brought to James also an astrologer, that is, a man  
(22-315)who pretended to calculate future events by the  
(22-315)motion of the stars, who told him, that in Scotland  
(22-315)a Lion should be killed by his own whelps. All  
(22-315)these things wrought on the jealous and timid disposition  
(22-315)of the King, so that he seized upon both  
(22-315)his brethren. Albany was imprisoned in the castle  
(22-315)of Edinburgh, but Mar's fate was instantly decided;  
(22-315)the King caused him to be murdered by stifling  
(22-315)him in a bath, or, as other historians say, by causing  
(22-315)him to be bled to death. James committed this  
(22-315)horrid crime, in order to avoid dangers which were  
(22-315)in a great measure imaginary; but we shall find  
(22-315)that the death of his brother Mar rather endangered  
(22-315)than added to his safety.

(22-316)Albany was in danger of the same fate, but  
(22-316)some of his friends in France or Scotland had  
(22-316)formed a plan of rescuing him. A small sloop  
(22-316)came into the roadstead of Leith, loaded with  
(22-316)wine of Gascony, and two small barrels were sent  
(22-316)up as a present to the imprisoned prince. The  
(22-316)guard having suffered the casks to be carried to  
(22-316)Albany's chamber, the duke, examining them in  
(22-316)private, found that one of them contained a roll of  
(22-316)wax, enclosing a letter, exhorting him to make his  
(22-316)escape, and promising that the little vessel which  
(22-316)brought the wine should be ready to receive him  
(22-316)if he could gain the water-side. The letter conjured  
(22-316)him to be speedy, as there was a purpose to  
(22-316)behead him on the day following. A coil of ropes  
(22-316)was also enclosed in the same cask, in order to  
(22-316)enable him to effect his descent from the castle  
(22-316)wall, and the precipice upon which it was built  
(22-316)There was a faithful attendant, his chamberlain,  
(22-316)imprisoned with him in the same apartment, who  
(22-316)promised to assist his master in this perilous undertaking.  
(22-316)The first point was to secure the captain  
(22-316)of the guard; for which purpose Albany invited  
(22-316)that officer to sup with him, in order, as the duke  
(22-316)pretended, to taste the good wine which had been  
(22-316)presented to him in the two casks. The captain  
(22-316)accordingly, having placed his watches where he  
(22-316)thought there was danger, came to the duke's  
(22-316)chamber, attended by three of his soldiers, and  
(22-316)partook of a collation. After supper, the duke  
(22-316)engaged him in playing at tables and dice, until the  
(22-316)captain, seated beside a hot fire, and plied with

[TG22-317, TG, chap. 22, p. 317]

(22-317)wine by the chamberlain, began to grow drowsy, as

(22-317)did his attendants, on whom the liquor had not  
(22-317)been spared. Then the Duke of Albany, a strong  
(22-317)man and desperate, leapt from table, and stabbed  
(22-317)the captain with a whinger or dagger, so that he  
(22-317)died on the spot. The like he did to two of the  
(22-317)captain's men, and the chamberlain despatched the  
(22-317)other, and threw their bodies on the fire. This  
(22-317)was the more easily accomplished that the soldiers  
(22-317)were intoxicated and stupified. They then took  
(22-317)the keys from the captain's pocket, and, getting  
(22-317)out upon the walls, chose a retired corner, out  
(22-317)of the watchmen's sight, to make their perilous  
(22-317)descent. The chamberlain tried to go down the  
(22-317)rope first, but it was too short, so that he fell and  
(22-317)broke his thigh-bone. He then called to his master  
to make the rope longer. Albany returned to his  
(22-317)apartment, and took the sheets from the bed, with  
(22-317)which he lengthened the rope, so that he descended  
(22-317)the precipice in safety. He then got his chamberlain  
(22-317)on his back, and conveyed him to a place of  
(22-317)security, where he might remain concealed  
(22-317)till his hurt was cured, and went  
(22-317)himself to the sea-side, when, upon the appointed  
(22-317)signal, a boat came ashore and took him off to the  
(22-317)vessel, in which he sailed for France.

(22-317)During the night, the guards, who knew that  
(22-317)their officer was in the duke's apartment with  
(22-317)three men, could not but suppose that all was safe;  
(22-317)hut when daylight showed them the rope hanging  
(22-317)from the walls, they became alarmed, and hastened  
(22-317)to the duke's lodgings. Here they found the

[TG22-318, TG, chap. 22, p. 318]

(22-318)body of one man stretched near the door, and the  
(22-318)corpses of the captain and other two lying upon the

(22-318)fire. The King was much surprised at so strange  
(22-318)an escape, and would give no credit to it till he had  
(22-318)examined the place with his own eyes.

(22-318)The death of Mar, and the flight of Albany,  
(22-318)increased the insolence of King James's unworthy  
(22-318)favourites Robert Cochran, the mason, rose into  
(22-318)great power, and as every man's petition to the  
(22-318)King came through his hands, and he expected and  
(22-318)received bribes to give his countenance, he amassed  
(22-318)so much wealth, that he was able in his turn to  
(22-318)bribe the King to confer on him the earldom of  
(22-318)Mar, with the lands and revenues of the deceased  
(22-318)prince. All men were filled with indignation to  
(22-318)see the inheritance of the murdered earl, the son  
(22-318)of the King of Scotland, conferred upon a mean  
(22-318)upstart, like this Cochran. This unworthy favourite  
(22-318)was guilty of another piece of mal-administration,  
(22-318)by mixing the silver coin of the kingdom with  
(22-318)brass and lead, and thereby decreasing its real  
(22-318)value, while orders were given by proclamation to  
(22-318)take it at the same rate as if it were composed of  
(22-318)pure silver. The people refused to sell their corn  
(22-318)and other commodities for this debased coin, which  
(22-318)introduced great distress, confusion, and scarcity.  
(22-318)Some one told Cochran, that this money should be  
(22-318)called in, and good coin issued in its stead; but be

[TG22-319, TG, chap. 22, p. 319]

(22-319)was so confident of the currency of the Cochran-placks,  
(22-319)as the people called them, that he said, --  
(22-319)"The day I am hanged they may be called in;  
(22-319)not sooner. "This speech, which he made in jest,  
(22-319)proved true in reality.

(22-319)In the year 1482, the disputes with England had  
(22-319)come to a great height, and Edward IV made

(22-319)preparations to invade Scotland, principally in the  
(22-319)hope of recovering the town of Berwick. He invited  
(22-319)the Duke of Albany from France to join him  
(22-319)in this undertaking, promising to place him on the  
(22-319)Scottish throne instead of his brother. This was  
(22-319)held out in order to take advantage of the unpopularity  
(22-319)of King James, and the general disposition  
(22-319)which manifested itself in Scotland in favour of  
(22-319)Albany.

(22-319)But, however discontented with their sovereign,  
(22-319)the Scottish nation showed themselves in no way  
(22-319)disposed to receive another king from the hands of  
(22-319)the English. The Parliament assembled, and unanimously  
(22-319)determined on war against Edward the  
(22-319)Robber, for so they termed the King of England.  
(22-319)To support this violent language, James ordered  
(22-319)the whole array of the kingdom, that is, all the men  
(22-319)who were bound to discharge military service, to  
(22-319)assemble at the Borough-moor of Edinburgh, from  
(22-319)whence they marched to Lauder, and encamped  
(22-319)between the river Leader and the town, to the  
(22-319)amount of fifty thousand men. But the great barons,  
(22-319)who had there assembled with their followers,  
(22-319)were less disposed to advance against the English,

[TG22-320, TG, chap. 22, p. 320]

(22-320)than to correct the abuses of King James's  
(22-320)administration.

(22-320)Many of the nobility and barons held a secret  
(22-320)council in the church of Lauder, where they enlarged  
(22-320)upon the evils which Scotland sustained  
(22-320)through the insolence and corruption of Cochran  
(22-320)and his associates. While they were thus declaiming,  
(22-320)Lord Gray requested their attention to a fable.  
(22-320)"The mice," he said, "being much annoyed by the



(22-320)persecution of the cat, resolved that a bell should  
(22-320)be hung about puss's neck, to give notice when she  
(22-320)was coming. But though the measure was agreed  
(22-320)to in full council, it could not be carried into effect  
(22-320)because no mouse had courage enough to undertake  
(22-320)to tie the bell to the neck of the formidable enemy."  
(22-320)This was as much as to intimate his opinion, that  
(22-320)though the discontented nobles might make bold  
(22-320)resolutions against the King's ministers, yet it  
(22-320)would be difficult to find any one courageous enough  
(22-320)to act upon them.

(22-320)Archibald, Earl of Angus, a man of gigantic  
(22-320)strength and intrepid courage, and head of that  
(22-320)second family of Douglas whom I before mentioned,  
(22-320)started up when Gray had done speaking. "I  
(22-320)am he," he said, "who will bell the cat;" from  
(22-320)which expression he was distinguished by the name  
(22-320)of Bell-the-Cat to his dying day.

(22-320)While thus engaged, a loud authoritative knocking  
(22-320)was heard at the door of the church. This  
(22-320)announced the arrival of Cochran, attended by a  
(22-320)guard of three hundred men, attached to his own

[TG22-321, TG, chap. 22, p. 321]

(22-321)person, and all gaily dressed in his livery of white,  
(22-321)with black facings, and armed with partisans. His  
(22-321)own personal appearance corresponded with this  
(22-321)magnificent attendance. He was attired in a riding  
(22-321)suit of black velvet, and had round his neck a fine  
(22-321)chain of gold, whilst a bugle-horn, tipped and  
(22-321)mounted with gold, hung down by his sides. His  
(22-321)helmet was borne before him, richly inlaid with the  
(22-321)same precious metal; even his tent and tent-cords  
(22-321)were of silk, instead of ordinary materials. In this  
(22-321)gallant guise, having learned there was some council

(22-321)holding among the nobility, he came to see what  
(22-321)they were doing, and it was with this purpose that  
(22-321)he knocked furiously at the door of the church.  
(22-321)Sir Robert Douglas of Lochleven, who had the  
(22-321)charge of watching the door, demanded who was  
(22-321)there. When Cochran answered, "The Earl of  
(22-321)Mar," the nobles greatly rejoiced at hearing he  
(22-321)was come, to deliver himself, as it were, into their  
(22-321)hands.

(22-321)As Cochran entered the church, Angus, to make  
(22-321)good his promise to bell the cat, met him, and  
(22-321)rudely pulled the gold chain from his neck, saying,  
(22-321)"A halter would better become him." Sir Robert  
(22-321)Douglas, at the same time, snatched away his bugle-  
(22-321)horn, saying, "Thou hast been a hunter of mischief  
(22-321)too long.

(22-321)"Is this jest or earnest, my lords?" said Cochran,  
(22-321)more astonished than alarmed at this rude  
(22-321)reception.

(22-321)"It is sad earnest," said they, "and that thou and  
(22-321)thy accomplices shall feel; for you have abused the

[TG22-322, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 22, p. 322]

(22-322)King's favour towards you, and now you shall  
(22-322)have your reward according to your deserts."

(22-322)It does not appear that Cochran or his guards  
(22-322)offered any resistance. A part of the nobility went  
(22-322)next to the King's pavilion, and, while some engaged  
(22-322)him in conversation, others seized upon  
(22-322)Leonard, Hommel, Torphichen, and the rest, with  
(22-322)Preston, one of the only two gentlemen amongst  
(22-322)King James's minions, and hastily condemned them  
(22-322)to instant death, as having misled the King, and  
(22-322)misgoverned the kingdom. The only person who  
(22-322)escaped was John Ramsay of Balmain, a youth of

(22-322)honourable birth, who clasped the King round the  
(22-322)waist when he saw the others seized upon. Him  
(22-322)the nobles spared, in respect of his youth, for he  
(22-322)was not above sixteen years, and of the King's  
(22-322)earnest intercession in his behalf. There was a  
(22-322)loud acclamation among the troops, who contended  
(22-322)with each other in offering their tent-ropes, and  
(22-322)the halters of their horses, to be the means of executing  
(22-322)these obnoxious ministers. Cochran, who  
(22-322)was a man of audacity, and had first attracted the  
(22-322)King's attention by his behaviour in a duel, did  
(22-322)not lose his courage, though he displayed it in an  
(22-322)absurd manner. He had the vanity to request that  
(22-322)his hands might not be tied with a hempen rope,  
(22-322)but with a silk cord, which he ordered to furnish  
(22-322)from the ropes of his pavilion; but this was only  
(22-322)teaching his enemies bow to give his feelings additional  
(22-322)pain. They told him he was but a false  
(22-322)thief, and should die with all manner of shame;  
(22-322)and they were at pains to procure a hair-tether, or

[TG22-323, TG, chap. 22, p. 323]

(22-323)halter, as still more ignominious than a rope of  
(22-323)hemp. With this they hanged Cochran over the  
(22-323)centre of the bridge of Lauder (now demolished)  
(22-323)in the middle of his companions, who were suspended  
(22-323)on each side of him. When the execution  
(22-323)was finished, the lords returned to Edinburgh,  
(22-323)where they resolved that the King should remain  
(22-323)in the castle, under a gentle and respectful degree  
(22-323)of restraint.

(22-323)In the mean time, the English obtained possession  
(22-323)of Berwick, which important place was never  
(22-323)again recovered by the Scots, though they continued  
(22-323)to assert their claim to that bulwark of the

(22-323)eastern Marches. The English seemed disposed  
(22-323)to prosecute their advantages; but the Scottish  
(22-323)army having moved to Haddington to fight them,  
(22-323)a peace was conclude, partly by the mediation of  
(22-323)the Duke of Albany, who had seen the vanity of  
(22-323)any hopes which the English had given him, and,  
(22-323)laying aside his views upon the crown, appeared  
(22-323)desirous to become the means of restoring peace to  
(22-323)the country.

(22-323)The Duke of Albany, and the celebrated Richard  
(22-323)Duke of Gloucester (afterwards Richard the  
(22-323)Third), are said to have negotiated the terms of  
(22-323)peace, as well between the King and his nobility,  
(22-323)as between France and England. They had a  
(22-323)personal meeting at Edinburgh with the council of  
(22-323)Scottish lords who had managed the affairs of the  
(22-323)kingdom since the King's imprisonment. The  
(22-323)council would pay no respect to the Duke of Gloucester,  
(22-323)who, as an Englishman, they justly thought,

[TG22-324, TG, chap. 22, p. 324]

(22-324)had no right to interfere in the affairs of Scotland;  
(22-324)but to the Duke of Albany they showed much  
(22-324)reverence, requesting to know what he required at  
(22-324)their hands.

(22-324)"First of all," he said, "I desire that the King,  
(22-324)my brother, be set at liberty."

(22-324)"My lord," said Archibald-Bell-the-Cat, who  
(22-324)was chancellor, "that shall be presently done, and  
the rather that you desire it. As to the person  
(22-324)who is with yon (meaning the Duke of Gloucester),  
(22-324)we know him not; neither will we grant any  
(22-324)thing at his asking. But we know you to be the  
(22-324)King's brother, and nearest heir to his Grace after  
(22-324)his infant son. Therefore, we put the King's person

(22-324)at your disposal, trusting that he will act by  
(22-324)your advice in future, and govern the kingdom, so  
(22-324)as not to excite the discontent of the people, or  
(22-324)render it necessary for us, who are the nobles of  
(22-324)Scotland, to act contrary to his pleasure."

(22-324)James, being thus set at liberty, became, to appearance,  
(22-324)so perfectly reconciled with his brother,  
(22-324)the Duke of Albany, that the two royal brothers  
(22-324)used the same chamber, the same table, and the  
(22-324)same bed. While the King attended to the buildings  
(22-324)and amusements in which he took pleasure, Albany  
(22-324)administered the affairs of the kingdom, and, for  
(22-324)some time, with applause. But the ambition of  
(22-324)his temper began again to show itself; the nation  
(22-324)became suspicious of his intimate connexion with  
(22-324)the English, and just apprehensions were entertained  
(22-324)that the duke aimed still at obtaining the  
(22-324)crown by assistance of Richard III, now king of

[TG22-325, TG, chap. 22, p. 325]

(22-325)England. The duke was, therefore, once more  
(22-325)obliged to fly into England, where he remained for  
(22-325)some time, assisting the English against his countrymen.  
(22-325)He was present at that skirmish in 1484,  
(22-325)where the old Earl of Douglas was made prisoner,  
(22-325)and only escaped by the speed of his horse, Albany  
(22-325)soon after retired into France, where he formed a  
(22-325)marriage with a daughter of the Earl of Boulogne,  
(22-325)by whom he had a son, John, afterwards Regent  
(22-325)of Scotland in the days of James V. Albany  
(22-325)himself was wounded severely by the splinter of a  
(22-325)lance at one of the tournaments, or tilting-matches,  
(22-325)which I have described to you, and died in consequence.  
(22-325)The fickleness with which he changed  
(22-325)from one side to another, disappointed the high

(22-325)ideas which had been formed of his character in  
(22-325)youth.

(22-325)Freed from his brother's superintendence, the  
(22-325)King gradually sunk back into those practices which  
(22-325)had formerly cost him so dear. To prevent a renewal  
(22-325)of the force put on his person, he made a  
(22-325)rule that none should appear armed in the royal  
(22-325)presence, except the King's Guard, who were  
(22-325)placed under the command of that same John  
(22-325)Ramsay of Balmain, the only one of his former  
(22-325)favourites who had been spared by Bell-the-Cat,  
(22-325)and the other nobles, at the insurrection of Lauder  
(22-325)bridge. This gave high offence in a country,  
(22-325)where to be without arms was accounted both unsafe  
(22-325)and dishonourable,

(22-325)The King's love of money also grew, as is often  
(22-325)the case, more excessive as he advanced in years.

[TG22-326, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 22, p. 326]

(22-326)He would hardly grant any thing, whether as  
(22-326)matter of favour or of right, without receiving  
(22-326)some gift or gratuity. By this means he accumulated  
(22-326)a quantity of treasure, which considering the  
(22-326)poverty of his kingdom, is absolutely marvellous.  
(22-326)His "black chest," as his strong-box was popularly  
(22-326)called, was brimful of gold and silver coins, besides  
(22-326)quantities of plate and jewels. But while he hoarded  
(22-326)these treasures, he was augmenting the discontent  
(22-326)of both the nobility and people; and amid the  
(22-326)universal sense of the King's weakness, and hatred  
(22-326)of his avarice, a general rebellion was at length  
(22-326)excited against him.

(22-326)The King, among other magnificent establishments,  
(22-326)had built a great hall, and a royal chapel,  
(22-326)within the castle of Stirling, both of them

(22-326)specimens of finely ornamented Gothic  
(22-326)architecture(1485). He had also established a double  
(22-326)choir of musicians and singing men in the chapel,  
(22-326)designing that one complete band should attend  
(22-326)him wherever he went, to perform Divine service  
(22-326)before his person, while the other, as complete in  
(22-326)every respect, should remain in daily attendance in  
(22-326)the royal chapel.

(22-326)As this establishment necessarily incurred considerable  
(22-326)expense, James proposed to annex to the  
(22-326)royal chapel the revenues of the priory of Coldinghame,  
(22-326)in Berwickshire. This rich priory had  
(22-326)its lands amongst the possessions of the Homes and  
(22-326)the Hepburns, who had established it as a kind of  
(22-326)right that the prior should be of one or other of  
(22-326)these two families, in order to insure their being

[TG22-327, TG, chap. 22, p. 327]

(22-327)favourably treated in such bargains as either of  
(22-327)them might have to make with the Church. When  
(22-327)therefore, these powerful clans understood that,  
(22-327)instead of a Home or a Hepburn being named  
(22-327)prior, the King intended to bestow the revenues  
(22-327)of Coldinghame to maintain his royal chapel at  
(22-327)Stirling, they became extremely indignant, and  
(22-327)began to hold a secret correspondence, and form  
(22-327)alliances, with all the discontented men in Scotland,  
(22-327)and especially with Angus, and such other lords as,  
(22-327)having been engaged in the affair of Lauder bridge,  
(22-327)naturally entertained apprehensions that the King  
(22-327)would, one day or other, find a means of avenging  
(22-327)himself for the slaughter of his favourites, and the  
(22-327)restraint which had been imposed on his own person.

(22-327)By the time that the King heard of this league  
(22-327)against him, it had reached so great a head that

(22-327)every thing seemed to he prepared for  
(22-327)war, since the whole lords of the south  
(22-327)of Scotland, who could collect their forces with a  
(22-327)rapidity unknown elsewhere, were all in the field,  
(22-327)and ready to act(1488). The King, naturally timid, was  
(22-327)induced to fly to the North. He fortified the castle  
(22-327)of Stirling, commanded by Shaw of Fintrie, to  
(22-327)whom he committed the custody of the prince his  
(22-327)son, and heir-apparent, charging the governor  
(22-327)neither to let any one enter the castle, nor permit  
(22-327)any one to leave it, as he loved his honour and his  
(22-327)life. Especially he commanded him to let no one  
(22-327)have access to his son. His treasures James  
(22-327)deposited in Edinburgh castle; and having thus  
(22-327)placed in safety, as he thought, the two things he

[TG22-328, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 22, p. 328]

(22-328)loved best in the world, he hastened to the north  
(22-328)country, where he was joined by the great lords  
(22-328)and gentlemen on that side of the Forth; so that  
(22-328)it seemed as if the south and the north parts of  
(22-328)Scotland were about to fight against each other.

(22-328)The King, in passing through Fife, visited  
(22-328)James, the last Earl of Douglas, who had been  
(22-328)compelled, as I have before told you, to become a  
(22-328)monk in the abbey of Lindores. He offered his  
(22-328)full reconciliation and forgiveness, if he would once  
(22-328)more come out into the world, place himself at the  
(22-328)head of his vassals, and, by the terror of his former  
(22-328)authority, withdraw from the banners of the rebel  
(22-328)peers such of the southland-men, as might still  
(22-328)remember the fame of Douglas. But the views of  
(22-328)the old earl were turned towards another world,  
(22-328)and he replied to the King -- "Ah, sir, your grace  
(22-328)has kept me and your black casket so long under



(22-328)lock and key, that the time in which we might have  
(22-328)done you good service is past and gone." In  
(22-328)saying this, he alluded to the King's hoard of  
(22-328)treasure, which, if he had spent in time, might  
(22-328)have attached many to his person, as he, Douglas,  
(22-328)when younger, could have raised men in his behalf;  
(22-328)but now the period of getting aid from either  
(22-328)source was passed away.

(22-328)Mean while, Angus, Home, Bothwell, and others  
(22-328)of the insurgent nobility, determined, if possible,  
(22-328)to get into their hands the person of the prince,  
(22-328)resolving that, notwithstanding his being a child,  
(22-328)they would avail themselves of his authority to  
(22-328)oppose that of his father. Accordingly, they

[TG22-329, TG, chap. 22, p. 329]

(22-329)bribed, with a large sum of money, Shaw, the  
(22-329)governor of Stirling castle, to deliver the prince  
(22-329) (afterwards James IV) into their keeping. When  
(22-329)they had thus obtained possession of Prince James's  
(22-329)person, they collected their army, and published  
(22-329)proclamations in his name, intimating that King  
(22-329)James III was bringing Englishmen into the  
(22-329)country to assist in overturning its liberties, -- that  
(22-329)he had sold the frontiers of Scotland to the Earl  
(22-329)of Northumberland, and to the governor of Berwick,  
(22-329)and declaring that they were united to  
(22-329)dethrone a king whose intentions were so unkingly,  
(22-329)and to place his son in his stead. These allegations  
(22-329)were false; but the King was so unpopular, that  
(22-329)they were listened to and believed.

(22-329)James, in the mean time, arrived before Stirling  
(22-329)at the head of a considerable army, and passing to  
(22-329)the gate of the castle, demanded entrance. But  
(22-329)the governor refused to admit him. The King

(22-329)then eagerly asked for his son; to which the treacherous  
(22-329)governor replied, that the lords had taken  
(22-329)the prince from him against his will. Then the  
(22-329)poor King saw that he was deceived, and said in  
(22-329)wrath, "False villain, thou hast betrayed me; but  
(22-329)if I live, thou shalt be rewarded according to thy  
(22-329)deserts!" If the King had not been thus treacherously  
(22-329)deprived of the power of retiring into  
(22-329)Stirling castle, he might, by means of that fortress,  
(22-329)have avoided a battle until more forces had come  
(22-329)up to his assistance; and, in that case, might have  
(22-329)overpowered the rebel lords, as his father did the  
(22-329)Douglasses before Abercorn. Yet having with

[TG22-330, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 22, p. 330]

(22-330)him an army of nearly thirty thousand men, he  
(22-330)moved boldly towards the insurgents. The Lord  
(22-330)David Lindsay of the Byres, in particular, encouraged  
(22-330)the King to advance. He had joined him  
(22-330)with a thousand horse and three thousand footmen  
(22-330)from the counties of Fife and Kinross; and now  
(22-330)riding up to the King on a fiery grey horse, he  
(22-330)lighted down, and entreated the King's acceptance  
(22-330)of that noble animal, which, whether he had occasion  
(22-330)to advance or retreat, would beat every other  
(22-330)horse in Scotland, provided the King could keep  
(22-330)his saddle.

(22-330)The King upon this took courage, and advanced  
(22-330)against the rebels, confident in his great superiority  
(22-330)of numbers. The field of battle was not above a  
(22-330)mile or two distant from that where Bruce had  
(22-330)defeated the English on the glorious day of Bannockburn;  
(22-330)but the fate of his descendant and successor  
(22-330)was widely different.

(22-330)The King's army was divided into three great

(22-330)bodies. Ten thousand Highlanders, under Huntly  
(22-330)and Athole, led the van; ten thousand more, from  
(22-330)the westland counties, were led by the Lords of  
(22-330)Erskine, Graham, and Menteith. The King was  
(22-330)to command the rear, in which the burghers sent  
(22-330)by the different towns were stationed. The Earl  
(22-330)of Crawford and Lord David Lindsay, with the  
(22-330)men of Fife and Angus, had the right wing; Lord  
(22-330)Ruthven commanded the left, with the people of  
(22-330)Strathearn and Stormont.

(22-330)The King, thus moving forward in order of battle,  
(22-330)called for the horse which Lord David Lindsay

[TG22-331, TG, chap. 22, p. 331]

(22-331)had given him, that he might ride forward and  
(22-331)observe the motions of the enemy. He saw them  
(22-331)from an eminence advancing in three divisions,  
(22-331)having about six thousand men in each. The  
(22-331)Homes and Hepburns had the first division, with  
(22-331)the men of the East Borders and of East Lothian.  
(22-331)The next was composed of the Western Borderers,  
(22-331)or men of Liddesdale and Annandale, with many  
(22-331)from Galloway. The third division consisted of  
(22-331)the rebel lords and their choicest followers, bringing  
(22-331)with them the young Prince James, and  
(22-331)displaying the broad banner of Scotland.

(22-331)When the King beheld his own ensign unfurled  
(22-331)against him, and knew that his son was in the hostile  
(22-331)ranks, his heart, never very courageous, began  
(22-331)altogether to fail him; for he remembered the prophecy,  
(22-331)that he was to fall by his nearest of kin,  
(22-331)and also what the astrologer had told him of the  
(22-331)Scottish lion which was to be strangled by his own  
(22-331)whelps. These idle fears so preyed on James's  
(22-331)mind, that his alarm became visible to those around

(22-331)him, who conjured him to retire to a place of  
(22-331)safety. But at that moment the battle began,  
(22-331)The Homes and Hepburns attacked the King's  
(22-331)vanguard, but were repulsed by the Highlanders  
(22-331)with volleys of arrows, On this the Borderers of  
(22-331)Liddesdale and Annandale, who bore spears longer  
(22-331)than those used in the other parts of Scotland,  
(22-331)charged with the wild and furious cries, which they  
(22-331)called their slogan, and bore down the royal forces  
(22-331)opposed to them.  
(22-331)Surrounded by sights and sounds to which he

[TG22-332, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 22, p. 332]

(22-332)was so little accustomed, James lost his remaining  
(22-332)presence of mind, and turning his back, fled towards  
(22-332)Stirling. But he was unable to manage the grey  
(22-332)horse given him by Lord Lindsay, which, taking  
(22-332)the bit in his teeth, ran full gallop downhill into a  
(22-332)little hamlet, where was a mill, called Beaton's  
(22-332)mill. A woman had come out to draw water at  
(22-332)the mill-dam, but, terrified at seeing a man in complete  
(22-332)armour coming down towards her at full  
(22-332)speed, she left her pitcher, and fled back into the  
(22-332)mill. The sight of the pitcher frightened the  
(22-332)King's horse, so that he swerved as he was about  
(22-332)to leap the brook, and James, losing his seat, fell  
(22-332)to the ground, where, being heavily armed and  
(22-332)sorely bruised, he remained motionless. The people  
(22-332)came out, took him into the mill, and laid him  
(22-332)on a bed. Some time afterwards he recovered his  
(22-332)senses; but feeling himself much hurt and very  
(22-332)weak, he demanded the assistance of a priest. The  
(22-332)millers' wife asked who he was, and he imprudently  
(22-332)replied, "I was your King this morning." With  
(22-332)equal imprudence the poor woman ran to the door,

(22-332)and called with loud exclamations for a priest to  
(22-332)confess the King. "I am a priest," said an unknown  
(22-332)person, who, had just come up; "lead me to the  
(22-332)King." When the stranger was brought into the  
(22-332)presence of the unhappy monarch, he kneeled with

[TG22-333, TG, chap. 22, p. 333]

(22-333)apparent humility, and asked him, "Whether he  
(22-333)was mortally wounded?" James replied, that his  
(22-333)hurts were not mortal, if they were carefully looked  
(22-333)to; but that, in the mean time, he desired to be  
(22-333)confessed, and receive pardon of his sins from a  
(22-333)priest, according to the fashion of the Catholic  
(22-333)church. "This shall presently give thee pardon!"  
(22-333)answered the assassin; and, drawing a poniard, he  
(22-333)stabbed the King four or five times to the very  
(22-333)heart; then took the body on his back and departed,  
(22-333)no man opposing him, and no man knowing what  
(22-333)he did with the body.

(22-333)Who this murderer was has never been discovered,  
(22-333)nor whether he was really a priest or not.  
(22-333)There were three persons, Lord Gray, Stirling of  
(22-333)Keir, and one Borthwick, a priest, observed to pursue  
(22-333)the King closely, and it was supposed that one  
(22-333)or other of them did the bloody deed. It is  
(22-333)remarkable that Gray was the son of that Sir  
(22-333)Patrick, commonly called Cowe Gray, who assisted  
(22-333)James II to despatch Douglas in Stirling castle.  
(22-333)It would be a singular coincidence if the son of this  
(22-333)active agent in Douglas's death should have been  
(22-333)the actor in that of King James's son.

(22-333)The battle did not last long after the King left  
(22-333)the field, the royal party drawing off towards  
(22-333)Stirling, and the victors returning to their camp.  
(22-333)It is usually called the battle of Sauchie burn, and

(22-333)was fought upon the 18th of June, 1488.

(22-333)Thus died King James the Third, an unwise  
(22-333)and unwarlike prince; although, setting aside the  
(22-333)murder of his brother the Earl of Mar, his character

[TG22-334, TG, chap. 22, p. 334]

(22-334)is rather that of a weak and avaricious man  
(22-334)than of a cruel and criminal King. His taste for  
(22-334)the fine arts would have been becoming in a private  
(22-334)person, though it was carried to a pitch which  
(22-334)interfered with his duties as a sovereign. He fell,  
(22-334)like most of his family, in the flower of his age,  
(22-334)being only thirty-six years old.

[TG23-335, TG, chap. 23, p. 335]

(23-335)The fate of James III was not known for some  
(23-335)time. He had been a patron of naval affairs; and  
(23-335)on the great revolt in which he perished, a brave  
(23-335)sea officer, Sir Andrew Wood of Largo, was lying  
(23-335)with a small squadron in the frith of Forth, not  
(23-335)far distant from the coast where the battle was  
(23-335)fought. He had sent ashore his boats, and brought  
(23-335)off several wounded men of the King's party,  
(23-335)amongst whom it was supposed might be the King  
(23-335)himself.

(23-335)Anxious to ascertain this important point, the  
(23-335)lords sent to Sir Andrew Wood to come on shore,  
(23-335)and appear before their council. Wood agreed, on  
(23-335)condition that two noblemen of distinction, Lords  
(23-335)Seton and Fleming, should go on board his ships,  
(23-335)and remain there as hostages for his safe return.

(23-335)The brave seaman presented himself before the  
(23-335)Council and the young King, in the town of Leith.  
(23-335)As soon as the prince saw Sir Andrew, who was

[TG23-336, TG, chap. 23, p. 336]

(23-336)a goodly person, and richly dressed, he went towards  
(23-336)him, and said, "Sir, are you my father?"

(23-336)"I am not your father," answered Wood, the  
(23-336)tears falling from his eyes; "but I was your  
(23-336)father's servant while he lived, and shall be so to  
(23-336)lawful authority until the day I die."

(23-336)The lords then asked what men they were who  
(23-336)had come out of his ships, and again returned to  
(23-336)them on the day of the battle of Sauchie.

(23-336)"It was I and my brother," said Sir Andrew,  
(23-336)undauntedly, "who were desirous to have bestowed  
(23-336)our lives in the King's defence."

(23-336)They then directly demanded of him, whether  
(23-336)the King was on board his ships? To which Sir  
(23-336)Andrew replied, with the same firmness, "He is  
(23-336)not on board my vessels. I wish he had been there,  
(23-336)as I should have taken care to have kept him safe  
(23-336)from the traitors who have murdered him, and  
(23-336)whom I trust to see hanged and drawn for their  
(23-336)demerits."

(23-336)These were bitter answers; but the lords were  
(23-336)obliged to endure them, without attempting any  
(23-336)revenge, for fear the seamen had retaliated upon  
(23-336)Fleming and Seton. But when the gallant commander  
(23-336)had returned on board his ship, they sent  
(23-336)for the best officers in the town of Leith, and  
(23-336)offered them a reward if they would attack Sir  
(23-336)Andrew Wood and his two ships, and make him  
(23-336)prisoner, to answer for his insolent conduct to the  
(23-336)Council. But Captain Barton, one of the best  
(23-336)mariners in Leith, replied to the proposal by informing  
(23-336)the Council, that though Sir Andrew had

[TG23-337, TG, chap. 23, p. 337]

(23-337)but two vessels, yet they were so well furnished  
(23-337)with artillery, and he himself was so brave and  
(23-337)skilful, that no ten ships in Scotland would be a  
(23-337)match for him.

(23-337)James IV afterwards received Sir Andrew  
(23-337)Wood into high favour; and he deserved it by his  
(23-337)exploits. In 1490, a squadron of five English  
(23-337)vessels came into the Forth, and plundered some  
(23-337)Scottish merchant-ships. Sir Andrew sailed against  
(23-337)them with his two ships, the Flower, and the Yellow  
(23-337)Carvel, took the five English vessels, and  
(23-337)making their crews and commander prisoners,  
(23-337)presented them to the King at Leith. Henry VII  
(23-337)of England was so much incensed at this defeat,  
(23-337)that he sent a stout sea-captain, called Stephen  
(23-337)Bull, with three strong ships, equipped on purpose,  
(23-337)to take Sir Andrew Wood. They met him near  
(23-337)the mouth of the Frith, and fought with the utmost  
(23-337)courage on both sides, attending so much to the  
(23-337)battle, and so little to any thing else, that they let  
(23-337)their ships drift with the tide; so that the action,  
(23-337)which began off Saint Abb's Head, ended in the  
(23-337)Frith of Tay. At length Stephen Bull and his  
(23-337)three ships were taken. Sir Andrew again presented  
(23-337)the prisoners to the King, who sent them  
(23-337)back to England, with a message to Henry VII,  
(23-337)that he had as manly men in Scotland, as there  
(23-337)were in England, and therefore he desired he  
(23-337)would send no more captains on such errands.

(23-337)To return to the lords who had gained the  
(23-337)victory at Sauchie. They took a resolution, which  
(23-337)appears an act of daring effrontery. They resolved

[TG23-338, TG, chap. 23, p. 338]



(23-338)to try some of the principal persons who had assisted  
(23-338)King James III in the late civil commotion,  
(23-338)as if in so doing they had committed treason against  
(23-338)James IV, although the last was not, and could  
(23-338)not be king, till after his father's death. They  
(23-338)determined to begin with Lord David Lindsay of  
(23-338)the Byres, a man well acquainted with military  
(23-338)matters, but otherwise blunt and ignorant; so they  
(23-338)thought it would be no difficult matter to get him  
(23-338)to submit himself to the King's pleasure, when they  
(23-338)proposed to take a fine in money from him, or perhaps  
(23-338)confiscate some part of his lands. This they  
(23-338)thought would encourage others to submit in like  
(23-338)manner; and thus the conspirators proposed to  
(23-338)enrich themselves, and to impoverish those who  
(23-338)had been their enemies.

(23-338)It was on the 10th of May, 1489, that Lord  
(23-338)David Lindsay was called upon before the Parliament,  
(23-338)then sitting at Edinburgh, to defend himself  
(23-338)against a charge of treason, which stated, "that he  
(23-338)had come in arms to Sauchie with the King's father  
(23-338)against the King himself, and had given the King's  
(23-338)father a sword and good horse, counselling him to  
(23-338)devour the King's Grace here present."

(23-338)Lord Lindsay knew nothing about the form of  
(23-338)law affairs, but hearing himself repeatedly called  
(23-338)upon to answer to this accusation, he started up,  
(23-338)and told the nobles of the Parliament they were  
(23-338)all villains and traitors themselves, and that he  
(23-338)would prove them to be such with his sword. The  
(23-338)late King, he said, had been cruelly murdered by  
(23-338)villains, who had brought the prince with them to

(23-339)be a pretext and colour for their enterprise, and  
(23-339)that if he punish not you hastily for that murder,  
(23-339)you will murder him when you think time, as you  
(23-339)did his father. "And," said the stout old lord,  
(23-339)addressing himself personally to the King, who  
(23-339)was present in Parliament, "if your grace's father  
(23-339)were still living, I would fight for him to the  
(23-339)death, and stand in no awe of these false lurdans"  
(23-339) (that is villains). "Or, if your grace had a son who  
(23-339)should come in arms against you, I would take  
(23-339)your part against his abettors' and fight in your  
(23-339)cause against them, three men against six. Trust  
(23-339)me, that though they cause your grace to believe  
(23-339)ill of me, I will prove in the end more faithful than  
(23-339)any of them."

(23-339)The Lord Chancellor, who felt the force of these  
(23-339)words, tried to turn off their effect, by saying to  
(23-339)the King, that Lord Lindsay was an old-fashioned  
(23-339)man, ignorant of legal forms, and not able to speak  
(23-339)reverently in his grace's presence. "But," said he,  
(23-339)"he will submit himself to your grace's pleasure,  
(23-339)and you must not be severe with him; "and,  
(23-339)turning to the Lord David, he said, "It is best for  
(23-339)you to submit to the King's will, and his grace will  
(23-339)be good to you,"

(23-339)Now you must know, that the Lord David had  
(23-339)a brother-germain, named Patrick Lindsay, who  
(23-339)was as good a lawyer as Lord Lindsay was a  
(23-339)soldier. The two brothers had been long upon  
(23-339)bad terms; but when this Mr Patrick saw the  
(23-339)chancellor's drift, he trode upon his elder brother's  
(23-339)foot, to make him understand that he ought not to

[TG23-340, TG, chap. 23, p. 340]

(23-340)follow the advice given him, nor come into the

(23-340)King's will, which would be in fact confessing  
(23-340)himself guilty. The Lord David, however, did  
(23-340)not understand the hint. On the contrary, as he  
(23-340)chanced to have a sore toe, the tread of his  
(23-340)brother's foot was painful to him, so that he looked  
(23-340)fiercely at him, and said, "Thou art too pert, thou  
(23-340)loon, to stamp upon my foot-if it were out of the  
(23-340)King's presence, I would strike thee upon the  
(23-340)face."

(23-340)But Mr Patrick, without regarding his brother's  
(23-340)causeless anger, fell on his knees before the assembled  
(23-340)nobles, and bethought that he might have leave  
(23-340)to plead for his brother; "for," said he, "I see no  
(23-340)man of law will undertake his cause for fear of  
(23-340)displeasing the King's grace; and though my lord  
(23-340)my brother and I have not been friends for many  
(23-340)years, yet my heart will not suffer me to see the  
(23-340)native house from which I am descended perish  
(23-340)for want of assistance."

(23-340)The King having granted Mr Patrick Lindsay  
(23-340)liberty of speech in his brother's behalf, he began  
(23-340)by objecting to the King's sitting in judgment in a  
(23-340)case, in which he was himself a party, and had been  
(23-340)an actor. "Wherefore," said Mr Patrick, "we  
(23-340)object to his presence to try this cause, in which,  
(23-340)being a party, he ought not to be a judge. Therefore  
(23-340)we require his Majesty, in God's name, to rise  
(23-340)and leave the court, till the question be considered  
(23-340)and decided." The lord chancellor and the  
(23-340)lords, having conversed together, found that this  
(23-340)request was reasonable. So the young King was

[TG23-341, TG, chap. 23, p. 341]

(23-341)obliged to retire into an inner apartment, which he  
(23-341)resented as a species of public affront.

(23-341)Mr Patrick next endeavoured to procure favour,  
(23-341)by entreating the lords, who were about to hear  
(23-341)the cause, to judge it with impartiality, and as they  
(23-341)could wish to be dealt with themselves, were they  
(23-341)in misfortune, and some party adverse to them  
(23-341)possessed of power.

(23-341)"Proceed and answer to the accusation," said  
(23-341)the chancellor. "You shall have justice at our  
(23-341)hands."

(23-341)Then Mr Patrick brought forward a defence in  
(23-341)point of legal form, stating that the summons  
(23-341)required that the Lord Lindsay should appear forty  
(23-341)days after citation, whereas the forty days were  
(23-341)now expired; so that he could not be legally compelled  
(23-341)to answer to the accusation until summoned  
(23-341)anew.

(23-341)This was found good law; and Lord David  
(23-341)Lindsay, and the other persons accused, were dismissed  
(23-341)for the time, nor were any proceedings  
(23-341)ever resumed against them.

(23-341)Lord David, who had listened to the defences  
(23-341)without understanding their meaning, was so  
(23-341)delighted with the unexpected consequences of his  
(23-341)brother's eloquence, that he broke out into the  
(23-341)following rapturous acknowledgment of gratitude:  
(23-341)--"Verily, brother, but you have fine piet words"  
(23-341) (that is, magpie words). I could not have believed,  
(23-341)by Saint Mary, that ye had such words. Ye shall  
(23-341)have the Mains of Kirkfother for your day's  
(23-341)wage."

[TG23-342, TALES OF A GRANDFATHER, chap. 23, p. 342]

(23-342)The King, on his side, threatened Mr Patrick  
(23-342)with a reward of a different kind, saying, "he  
(23-342)would set him where he should not see his feet for

(23-342)twelve months." Accordingly, he was as good as  
(23-342)his word, sending the successful advocate to be  
(23-342)prisoner in the dungeon of the castle of Rothsay,  
(23-342)in the island of Bute, where he lay for a whole  
(23-342)year.

(23-342)It is curious to find that the King's authority  
(23-342)was so limited in one respect, and so arbitrary in  
(23-342)another. For it appears, that he was obliged to  
(23-342)comply with Patrick Lindsay's remonstrance, and  
(23-342)leave the seat of regal justice, when his jurisdiction  
(23-342)was declined as that of a partial judge; whilst, on  
(23-342)the other hand, he had the right, or at least the  
(23-342)power, to inflict upon the objecting party a long  
(23-342)and rigorous imprisonment, for discharging his  
(23-342)duty towards his client.

(23-342)James IV was not long upon the throne ere his  
(23-342)own reflections, and the remonstrances of some of  
(23-342)the clergy, made him sensible, that his accompanying  
(23-342)the rebel lords against his father in the field  
(23-342)of Sauchie was a very sinful action. He did not  
(23-342)consider his own youth, nor the enticements of the  
(23-342)lords, who had obtained possession of his person,  
(23-342)as any sufficient excuse for having been, in some  
(23-342)degree, accessory to his father's death, by appearing

[TG23-343, TG, chap. 23, p. 343]

(23-343)in arms against him. He deeply repented the  
(23-343)crime, and, according to the doctrines of the Roman  
(23-343)Catholic religion, endeavoured to atone for it by  
(23-343)various acts of penance. Amongst other tokens of  
(23-343)repentance, he caused to be made an iron belt, or  
(23-343)girdle, which he wore constantly under his clothes;  
(23-343)and every year of his life he added another link of  
(23-343)an ounce or two to the weight of it, as if he desired  
(23-343)that his penance should not be relaxed, but rather

(23-343)should increase during all the days of his life.

(23-343)It was, perhaps, in consequence of these feelings  
(23-343)of remorse, that the King not only forgave that  
(23-343)part of the nobility which had appeared on his  
(23-343)father's side, and abstained from all further persecution  
(23-343)against Lord Lindsay and others, but did  
(23-343)all in his power to conciliate their affections, without  
(23-343)losing those of the other party. The wealth  
(23-343)of his father enabled him to be liberal to the nobles  
(23-343)on both sides, and at the same time to maintain  
(23-343)at more splendid appearance in his court and royal  
(23-343)state than had been practised by any of his predecessors.

(23-343)He was himself expert in all feats of  
(23-343)exercise and arms, and encouraged the use of them,  
(23-343)and the practice of tilts and tournaments in his  
(23-343)presence, wherein he often took part himself. It  
(23-343)was his frequent custom to make proclamation  
(23-343)through his kingdom, that all lords and gentlemen  
(23-343)who might desire to win honour, should come to  
(23-343)Edinburgh or Stirling, and exercise themselves  
(23-343)in tilting with the lance, fighting with the battle-  
(23-343)axe, the two-handed sword, shooting with the long  
(23-343)bow, or any other warlike contention. He who

[TG23-344, TG, chap. 23, p. 344]

(23-344)did best in these encounters had his adversary's  
(23-344)weapon delivered up to him; and the best tilter  
(23-344)with the spear received from the King a lance with  
(23-344)a head of pure gold.

(23-344)The fame of these warlike sports -- for sports  
(23-344)they were accounted, though they often ended in  
(23-344)sad and bloody earnest-brought knights from  
(23-344)other parts of Europe to contend with those of  
(23-344)Scotland; but, says the historian, with laudable  
(23-344)partiality, there were none of them went unmatched,

(23-344)and few that were not overthrown.

(23-344)We may mention as an example, the combat in  
(23-344)the lists betwixt a celebrated German knight, who  
(23-344)came to Scotland in search of champions with whom  
(23-344)to match himself in single fight, and whose challenge  
(23-344)was accepted by Sir Patrick Hamilton, a brother  
(23-344)of the Earl of Arran, and near kinsman to the  
(23-344)King. They met gallantly with their lances at  
(23-344)full gallop, and broke their spears without doing  
(23-344)each other further injury. When they were furnished  
(23-344)with fresh lances, they took a second course;  
(23-344)but the Scottish knight's horse, being indifferently  
(23-344)trained, swerved, and could by no endeavours of  
(23-344)the rider be brought to encounter his adversary.  
(23-344)Then Sir Patrick sprung from his saddle, and called  
(23-344)to the German knight to do the same, saying, "A  
(23-344)horse was a weak warrant to trust to when men  
(23-344)had most to do." Then the German dismounted,  
(23-344)and fought stoutly with Sir Patrick for the best  
(23-344)part of an hour. At length Hamilton, by a blow  
(23-344)of his sword, brought the foreigner on his knees,  
(23-344)whereupon the King threw his hat into the lists,

[TG23-345, TG, chap. 23, p. 345]

(23-345)as a sign that the combat should cease. But the  
(23-345)honour of the day remained with Sir Patrick  
(23-345)Hamilton.

(23-345)Besides being fond of martial exercises, James  
(23-345)encouraged the arts, and prosecuted science, as it  
(23-345)was then understood. He studied medicine and  
(23-345)surgery, and appears to have been something of a  
(23-345)chemist.

(23-345)An experiment made under his direction, shows  
(23-345)at least the interest which James took in science,  
(23-345)although he used a whimsical mode of gratifying

(23-345)his curiosity. Being desirous to know which was  
(23-345)the primitive or original language, he caused a deaf  
(23-345)and dumb woman to be transported to the solitary  
(23-345)island of Inchkeith, with two infant children,  
(23-345)devising thus to discover what language they would  
(23-345)talk when they came to the age of speech. A  
(23-345)Scottish historian, who tells the story, adds, with  
(23-345)great simplicity, "Some say they spoke good Hebrew;  
(23-345)for my part I know not, but from report."  
(23-345)It is more likely they would scream like their  
(23-345)dumb nurse, or bleat like the goats and sheep on  
(23-345)the island.

(23-345)The same historian gives a very pleasing picture  
(23-345)of James IV.

(23-345)There was great love, he says, betwixt the subjects  
(23-345)and their sovereign, for the King was free  
(23-345)from the vice of avarice, which was his father's  
(23-345)failing. Neither would he endure flatterers, cowards,  
(23-345)or sycophants about his person, but ruled by  
(23-345)the counsel of the most eminent nobles, and thus  
(23-345)won the hearts of all men. He often went disguised

[TG23-346, TG, chap. 23, p. 346]

(23-346)among the common people, and asked them questions  
(23-346)about the King and his measures, and thus  
(23-346)learned the opinion which was entertained of him  
(23-346)by his subjects.

(23-346)He was also active in the discharge of his royal  
(23-346)duties. His authority, as it was greater than that  
(23-346)of any king who had reigned since the time of  
(23-346)James I, was employed for the administration of  
(23-346)justice, and the protection of every rank of his subjects,  
(23-346)so that he was revered as well as beloved  
(23-346)by all classes of his people. Scotland obtained,  
(23-346)under his administration, a greater share of prosperity



(23-346)than she had yet enjoyed. She possessed  
(23-346)some share of foreign trade, and the success of Sir  
(23-346)Andrew Wood, together with the King's exertions  
(23-346)in building vessels, made the country be respected,  
(23-346)as having a considerable naval power.

(23-346)These advantages were greatly increased by the  
(23-346)unusually long continuance of the peace, or rather  
(23-346)the truce, with England. Henry VII had succeeded  
(23-346)to the crown of that kingdom, after a dreadful  
(23-346)series of civil strife; and being himself a wise  
(23-346)and sagacious monarch, he was desirous to repair,  
(23-346)by a long interval of repose and quiet, the great  
(23-346)damage which the country had sustained by the  
(23-346)wars of York and Lancaster. He was the more  
(23-346)disposed to peace with Scotland, that his own title  
(23-346)to the throne of England was keenly disputed, and  
(23-346)exposed him more than once to the risk of invasion  
(23-346)and insurrection.

(23-346)On the most memorable of those occasions, Scotland  
(23-346)was for a short time engaged in the quarrel.

[TG23-347, TG, chap. 23, p. 347]

(23-347)A certain personage, calling himself Richard duke  
(23-347)of York, second son of Edward IV, supposed to  
(23-347)have been murdered in the Tower of London, laid  
(23-347)claim to the crown which Henry VII wore. On  
(23-347)the part of Henry, this pretended prince was said  
(23-347)to be a low-born Fleming, named Perkin Warbeck,  
(23-347)trained up by the Duchess of Burgundy (sister  
(23-347)of King Edward IV), to play the part which he  
(23-347)now assumed. But it is not, perhaps, even yet  
(23-347)certain, whether he was the real person he called  
(23-347)himself, or an impostor. In 1498, he came to Scotland  
(23-347)at the head of a gallant train of foreigners,  
(23-347)and accompanied by about fifteen hundred men,

(23-347)and made the greatest offers to James IV, providing  
(23-347)he would assist him in his claims against  
(23-347)England. James does not appear to have doubted  
(23-347)the adventurer's pretensions to the character which  
(23-347)he assumed. He received him with favour and  
(23-347)distinction, conferred on him the hand of Lady  
(23-347)Catharine Gordon, daughter of the Earl of Huntly,  
(23-347)the most beautiful woman in Scotland, and  
(23-347)disposed himself to lend him assistance to ascend  
(23-347)the English throne.

(23-347)The Scottish King with this view entered  
(23-347)Northumberland, and invited the people of that  
(23-347)warlike country to join the ranks of the supposed  
(23-347)prince. But the Northumbrians paid no attention  
(23-347)to this invitation, and when the adventurer besought  
(23-347)James to spare the country, the Scottish monarch  
(23-347)answered with a sneer, that it was very kind of  
(23-347)him to interfere in behalf of a people who did not  
(23-347)seem at all disposed to acknowledge him. The

[TG23-348, TG, chap. 23, p. 348]

(23-348)English in 1497 revenged his inroad by an invasion  
(23-348)of Berwickshire, in which they took a small castle,  
(23-348)called Ayton. No other mischief was done on  
(23-348)either side, for James gave up the cause of Perkin  
(23-348)Warbeck, satisfied either that he had no right to  
(23-348)the throne, or that he had not a hold on the affections  
(23-348)of any considerable party sufficient to make  
(23-348)such a right good. The adventurer, abandoned by  
(23-348)James, made afterwards no attempt to invade  
(23-348)England from Cornwall, and, being made prisoner,  
(23-348)was executed at Tyburn. His wife, who had  
(23-348)faithfully attended him through all his misfortunes,  
(23-348)fell into the hands of Henry VII, who assigned  
(23-348)her a pension, and recommended her to the protection

(23-348)of his Queen. She was commonly called,  
(23-348)from her grace and beauty, the White Rose of  
(23-348)Scotland.

(23-348)After this short war had been made up by a  
(23-348)truce of seven years, Henry's wisdom was employed  
(23-348)in converting that truce into a stable and lasting  
(23-348)peace, which might, for a length of time at least,  
(23-348)unite two nations, whose mutual interest it was  
(23-348)to remain friends, although circumstances had so  
(23-348)long made them enemies. The grounds of the  
(23-348)inveterate hostility between England and Scotland  
(23-348)had been that unhappy claim of supremacy set  
(23-348)up by Edward I, and persevered in by all his  
(23-348)successors. This was a right which England  
(23-348)would not abandon, and to which the Scots, by so  
(23-348)many instances of determined resistance, had shown  
(23-348)they would never submit. For more than a hundred  
(23-348)years there had been no regular treaty of

[TG23-349, TG, chap. 23, p. 349]

(23-349)peace betwixt England and Scotland, except for  
(23-349)the few years which succeeded the treaty of  
(23-349)Northampton. During this long period, the kindred  
(23-349)nations had been either engaged in the most  
(23-349)inveterate wars, or reposing themselves under the  
(23-349)protection of short and doubtful truces.

(23-349)The wisdom of Henry VII endeavoured to find  
(23-349)a remedy for such great evils by trying what the  
(23-349)effects of gentle and friendly influence would avail,  
(23-349)where the extremity of force had been employed  
(23-349)without effect. The King of England agreed to  
(23-349)give his daughter Margaret, a beautiful and accomplished  
(23-349)princess, to James IV in marriage. He  
(23-349)offered to endow her with an ample fortune, and  
(23-349)on that alliance was to be founded a close league

(23-349)of friendship between England and Scotland, the  
(23-349)Kings obliging themselves to assist each other  
(23-349)against all the rest of the world. Unfortunately  
(23-349)for both countries, but particularly so for Scotland,  
(23-349)this peace, designed to be perpetual, did not last  
(23-349)above ten years. Yet the good policy of Henry  
(23-349)VII bore fruit after a hundred years had passed  
(23-349)away; and in consequence of the marriage of  
(23-349)James IV and the Princess Margaret, an end was  
(23-349)put to all future national wars, by their great  
(23-349)grandson, James VI of Scotland and I of England,  
(23-349)becoming King of the whole island of Great  
(23-349)Britain.

(23-349)The claim of supremacy, asserted by England,  
(23-349)is not mentioned in this treaty, which was signed  
(23-349)on the 4th of January, 1502; but as the monarchs  
(23-349)treated with each other on equal terms, that claim,

[TG23-350, TG, chap. 23, p. 350]

(23-350)which had cost such oceans of Scottish and English  
(23-350)blood, must be considered as having been then  
(23-350)virtually abandoned.

(23-350)This important marriage was celebrated with  
(23-350)great pomp. The Earl of Surrey, a gallant English  
(23-350)nobleman, had the charge to conduct the Princess  
(23-350)Margaret to her new kingdom of Scotland.  
(23-350)The King came to meet her at Newbattle Abbey,  
(23-350)within six miles of Edinburgh. He was gallantly  
(23-350)dressed in a jacket of crimson velvet, bordered with  
(23-350)cloth of gold, and had hanging at his back his lure,  
(23-350)as it is called, an implement which is used in hawking.

(23-350)He was distinguished by his strength and  
(23-350)agility, leaping on his horse without putting his toe  
(23-350)in the stirrup, and always riding full gallop, follow  
(23-350)who could. When he was about to enter Edinburgh

(23-350)with his new bride, he wished her to ride  
(23-350)behind him, and made a gentleman mount to see  
(23-350)whether his horse would carry double. But as his  
(23-350)spirited charger was not broken for that purpose,  
(23-350)the King got up before his bride on her palfrey,  
(23-350)which was quieter, and so they rode through the  
(23-350)town of Edinburgh in procession, in the same  
(23-350)manner as you may now see a good farmer and his  
(23-350)wife riding to church. There were shows prepared  
(23-350)to receive them, all in the romantic taste of  
(23-350)the age. Thus they found in their way a tent  
(23-350)pitched, out of which came a knight armed at all  
(23-350)points, with a lady bearing his bugle-horn. Suddenly  
(23-350)another knight came up, and took away the  
(23-350)lady. Then the first knight followed him, and  
(23-350)challenged him to fight. They drew swords

[TG23-351, TG, chap. 23, p. 351]

(23-351)accordingly, and fought before the King and Queen  
(23-351)for their amusement, till the one struck the sword  
(23-351)out of the other's hands, and then the King commanded  
(23-351)the battle to cease. In this representation  
(23-351)all was sport except the blows, and these were  
(23-351)serious enough. Many other military spectacles  
(23-351)were exhibited, tilts and tournaments in particular.  
(23-351)James, calling himself the Savage Knight, appeared  
(23-351)in a wild dress, accompanied by the fierce chiefs  
(23-351)from the Borders and Highlands, who fought with  
(23-351)each other till several were wounded and slain in  
(23-351)these ferocious entertainments. It is said the King  
(23-351)was not very sorry to see himself thus rid of these  
(23-351)turbulent leaders, whose feuds and depredations  
(23-351)contributed so often to the public disturbance.

(23-351)The sports on occasion of the Queen's marriage,  
(23-351)and indeed the whole festivities of King James's

(23-351)reign, and the style of living at his court, showed  
(23-351)that the Scots, in his time, were a wealthier and a  
(23-351)more elegant people than they had formerly been.  
(23-351)James IV was renowned, as we have seen, among  
(23-351)foreign nations, for the splendour of his court, and  
(23-351)for the honourable reception which he gave to  
(23-351)strangers who visited his kingdom. And we shall  
(23-351)see in the next chapter, that his leisure was not  
(23-351)entirely bestowed on sport and pastime, but that  
(23-351)he also made wise laws for the benefit of the  
(23-351)kingdom.

[TG24-352, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 352]

(24-352)During the season of tranquillity which followed  
(24-352)the marriage of James and Margaret, we find that  
(24-352)the King, with his Parliament, enacted many good  
(24-352)laws for the improvement of the country. The  
(24-352)Highlands and Islands were particularly attended  
(24-352)to, because, as one of the acts of Parliament expressed  
(24-352)it, they had become almost savage for want  
(24-352)of justices and sheriffs. Magistrates were therefore  
(24-352)appointed, and laws made for the government  
(24-352)of those wild and unruly people.

(24-352)Another most important act of Parliament permitted  
(24-352)the King, and his nobles and barons, to let  
(24-352)their land, not only for military service, but for a  
(24-352)payment in money or in grain; a regulation which  
(24-352)tended to introduce quiet peaceful farmers into  
(24-352)lands occupied, but left uncultivated, by tenants of  
(24-352)a military character. Regulations also took place  
(24-352)for attendance on Parliament, and the representation  
(24-352)of the different orders of society in that assembly.  
(24-352)The possessors of lands were likewise called

[TG24-353, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 353]

(24-353)on to plant wood, and make enclosures, fish ponds,  
(24-353)and other improvements.

(24-353)All these regulations show, that the King entertained  
(24-353)a sincere wish to benefit his subjects, and  
(24-353)entertained liberal views of the mode of accomplishing  
(24-353)that object. But the unfortunate country  
(24-353)of Scotland was destined never to remain any long  
(24-353)time in a state of peace or improvement; and accordingly,  
(24-353)towards the end of James's reign, events  
(24-353)occurred which brought on a defeat still more calamitous  
(24-353)than any which the kingdom had yet  
(24-353)received.

(24-353)While Henry VII, the father-in-law of James,  
(24-353)continued to live, his wisdom made him very attentive  
(24-353)to preserve the peace which had been established  
(24-353)betwixt the two countries. His character  
(24-353)was, indeed, far from being that of a generous  
(24-353)prince, but he was a sagacious politician, and granted,  
(24-353)from an enlightened view of his own interest,  
(24-353)what perhaps he would otherwise have been illiberal  
(24-353)enough to refuse. On this principle, he made  
(24-353)some allowance for the irritable pride of his son-  
(24-353)in-law and his subjects, who were as proud as they  
(24-353)were poor, and made it his study to remove all the  
(24-353)petty causes of quarrel which arose from time to  
(24-353)time. But when this wise and cautious monarch  
(24-353)died, he was succeeded by his son Henry VIII, a  
(24-353)prince of a bold, haughty, and furious disposition,  
(24-353)impatient of control or contradiction, and rather  
(24-353)desirous of war than willing to make any concessions  
(24-353)for the sake of peace. James IV and he

[TG24-354, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 354]

(24-354)resembled each other perhaps too nearly in temper,

(24-354)to admit of their continuing intimate friends.

(24-354)The military disposition of Henry chiefly directed  
(24-354)him to an enterprise against France; and the King  
(24-354)of France, on his part, desired much to renew the  
(24-354)old alliance with Scotland, in order that the apprehension  
(24-354)of an invasion from the Scottish frontiers  
(24-354)might induce Henry to abandon his scheme of  
(24-354)attacking France. He knew, that the splendour in  
(24-354)which King James lived had exhausted the treasures  
(24-354)which his father had left behind him, and he  
(24-354)concluded that the readiest way to make him his  
(24-354)friend, was to supply him with sums of money,  
(24-354)which he could not otherwise have raised. Gold  
(24-354)was also freely distributed amongst the counsellors  
(24-354)and favourites of the Scottish King. This liberality  
(24-354)showed to great advantage, when compared with  
(24-354)the very opposite conduct of the King of England,  
(24-354)who delayed even to pay a legacy, which had been  
(24-354)left by Henry his father to his sister the Queen of  
(24-354)Scotland,

(24-354)Other circumstances of a different kind tended  
(24-354)to create disagreements between England and  
(24-354)Scotland. James had been extremely desirous to  
(24-354)increase the strength of his kingdom by sea, and  
(24-354)its commerce; and Scotland presenting a great  
(24-354)extent of sea-coast, and numerous harbours, had  
(24-354)at this time a considerable trade. The royal navy,  
(24-354)besides one vessel called the Great Michael, supposed  
(24-354)to be the largest in the world, and which, as  
(24-354)an old author says, "cumbered all Scotland to get  
(24-354)her fitted out for sea," consisted, it is said, of sixteen

[TG24-355, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 355]

(24-355)ships of war. The King paid particular attention  
(24-355)to naval affairs, and seemed never more happy



(24-355)than when inspecting and exercising his little navy.

(24-355)It chanced that one John Barton, a Scottish  
(24-355)mariner, had been captured by the Portuguese, as  
(24-355)far back as the year 1476. As the King of Portugal  
(24-355)refused to make any amends, James granted  
(24-355)the family of Barton letters of reprisals, that is, a  
(24-355)warrant empowering them to take all Portuguese  
(24-355)vessels which should come in their way, until their  
(24-355)loss was made up. There were three brothers, all  
(24-355)daring men, but especially the eldest, whose name  
(24-355)was Andrew Barton. He had two strong ships,  
(24-355)the larger called the Lion, the lesser the Jenny  
(24-355)Pirwen, with which it would appear he cruized in  
(24-355)the British Channel, stopping not only Portuguese  
(24-355)vessels, but also English ships bound for Portugal.  
(24-355)Complaints being made to King Henry, he fitted  
(24-355)out two vessels, which were filled with chosen men,  
(24-355)and placed under the command of Lord Thomas  
(24-355)Howard and Sir Edward Howard, both, sons to the  
(24-355)Earl of Surrey. They found Barton and his vessels  
(24-355)cruizing in the Downs, being guided to the place  
(24-355)by the captain of a merchant vessel, whom Barton  
(24-355)had plundered on the preceding day.

(24-355)On approaching the enemy, the noble brothers  
(24-355)showed no ensign of war, but put up a willow  
(24-355)wand on their masts, as being the  
(24-355)emblem of a trading vessel(July 1511). But when  
(24-355)the Scotsman attempted to make them bring to,  
(24-355)the English threw out their flags and pennons, and  
(24-355)fired a broadside of their ordnance. Barton then

[TG24-356, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 356]

(24-356)knew that he was engaged with the King of England's  
(24-356)ships of war. Far from being dismayed at  
(24-356)this, he engaged boldly, and, distinguished by his

(24-356)rich dress and bright armour, appeared on deck  
(24-356)with a whistle of gold about his neck, suspended by  
(24-356)a chain of the same precious metal, and encouraged  
(24-356)his men to fight valiantly.

(24-356)The fight was very obstinate. If we may  
(24-356)believe a ballad of the time, Barton's ship was  
(24-356)furnished with a peculiar contrivance, suspending  
(24-356)large weights, or beams, from his yard-arms, to be  
(24-356)dropped down upon the enemy when they should  
(24-356)come alongside. To make use of this contrivance;  
(24-356)it was necessary that a person should ascend the  
(24-356)mainmast, or in naval language, go aloft. As the  
(24-356)English apprehended much mischief from the consequences  
(24-356)of this manoeuvre, Howard had stationed  
(24-356)a Yorkshire gentleman, named Hustler, the best  
(24-356)archer in the ship, with strict injunctions to shoot  
(24-356)every one who should attempt to go aloft to let  
(24-356)fall the beams of Barton's vessel. Two men were  
(24-356)successively killed in the attempt, and Andrew  
(24-356)Barton himself, confiding in the strong armour  
(24-356)which he wore, began to ascend the mast. Lord  
(24-356)Thomas Howard called out to the archer to shoot  
(24-356>true, on peril of his life, "Were I to die for it,"  
(24-356)said Hustler, "I have but two arrows left." The  
(24-356)first which he shot bounded from Barton's armour  
(24-356)without hurting him; but as the Scottish mariner  
(24-356)raised his arm to climb higher, the archer took aim  
(24-356)where the armour afforded him no protection, and  
(24-356)wounded him mortally through the arm-pit.

[TG24-357, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 357]

(24-357)Barton descended from the mast. "Fight on,"  
(24-357)he said, "my brave hearts; I am a little wounded,  
(24-357)but not slain. I will but rest a while, and then  
(24-357)rise and fight again; mean time, stand fast by Saint

(24-357)Andrew's Cross," meaning the Scottish flag, or  
(24-357)ensign. He encouraged his men with his whistle,  
(24-357)while the breath of life remained. At length the  
(24-357)whistle was heard no longer, and the Howards,  
(24-357)boarding the Scottish vessel, found that her daring  
(24-357)captain was dead. They carried the Lion into the  
(24-357)Thames, and it is remarkable that Barton's ship  
(24-357)became the second man-of-war in the English  
(24-357)navy. When the Kings wanted to equip a fleet,  
(24-357)they hired or pressed into their service merchant  
(24-357)vessels, and put soldiers on board of them. The  
(24-357)ship called the Great Henry was the first built  
(24-357)especially for war, by the King, as his own property,  
(24-357)-- this captured vessel was the second.

(24-357)James IV was highly incensed at this insult, as  
(24-357)be termed it, on the flag of Scotland, and sent a  
(24-357)herald to demand satisfaction. The king of England  
(24-357)justified his conduct on the ground of Barton's  
(24-357)being a pirate, -- a charge which James could not  
(24-357)justly deny; but he remained not the less heated  
(24-357)and incensed against his brother-in-law. Another  
(24-357)misfortune aggravated his resentment, though the  
(24-357)subject of misunderstanding was of ancient date.

(24-357)While Henry VII was yet alive, Sir Robert  
(24-357)Ker of Fairniehirst, chief of one branch of the  
(24-357)clan of Ker, an officer of James's household, and a  
(24-357)favourite of that monarch, held the office of warden  
(24-357)on the Middle Marches of Scotland. In exercising

[TG24-358, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 358]

(24-358)this office with rather unusual strictness, he had  
(24-358)given offence to some of the more turbulent English  
(24-358)Borderers, who resolved to assassinate him.  
(24-358)Three of these, namely Heron, called the Bastard,  
(24-358)because a natural brother of Heron of Ford, with

(24-358)Starhed and Lilburn, surrounded the Scottish  
(24-358)warden, at a meeting upon a day of truce, and  
(24-358)killed him with their lances.

(24-358)Henry VII, with the pacific policy which marked  
(24-358)his proceedings towards Scotland; agreed to  
(24-358)surrender the guilty persons. Lilburn was given  
(24-358)up to King James, and died in captivity; Starhed  
(24-358)escaped for a time, by flying into the interior parts  
(24-358)of England; the Bastard Heron caused it to be  
(24-358)rumoured that he was dead of the plague, and made  
(24-358)himself be transported in a coffin, so that he passed  
(24-358)unsuspected through the party sent to arrest him,  
(24-358)and skulked on the Borders, waiting for a quarrel  
(24-358)between the kingdoms, which might make it safe  
(24-358)for him to show himself. Henry VII, anxious to  
(24-358)satisfy James, arrested his legitimate brother, and  
(24-358)Heron of Ford was delivered up instead of the  
(24-358)Bastard. But when Henry VIII and James  
(24-358)were about to disagree, both the Bastard Heron  
(24-358)and Starhed began to show themselves more publicly.  
(24-358)Starhed was soon disposed of, for Sir Andrew,  
(24-358)commonly called Dand Ker, the son of the  
(24-358)murdered Sir Robert, sent two of his dependents,  
(24-358)called Tait, to accomplish his vengeance upon the  
(24-358)English Borderer. They surprised and put him  
(24-358)to death accordingly, and brought his head to their  
(24-358)patron, who exposed it publicly at the cross of

[TG24-359, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 359]

(24-359)Edinburgh, exulting in the revenge he had taken.  
(24-359)But the Bastard Heron continued to rove about  
(24-359)the Border, and James IV made the public appearance  
(24-359)of this criminal a subject of complaint  
(24-359)against Henry VIII, who perhaps was not justly  
(24-359)responsible for it.

(24-359)While James was thus on bad terms with his  
(24-359)brother-in-law, France left no measures unattempted  
(24-359)which could attach Scotland to her side. Great  
(24-359)sums of money were sent to secure the good-will  
(24-359)of those courtiers in whom James most confided.  
(24-359)The Queen of France, a young and beautiful  
(24-359)princess, flattered James's taste for romantic gallantry,  
(24-359)by calling herself his mistress and lady-love,  
(24-359)and conjuring him to march three miles upon  
(24-359)English ground for her sake. She sent him, at the  
(24-359)same time, a ring from her own finger; and her  
(24-359)intercession was so powerful, that James thought  
(24-359)he could not in honour dispense with her request.  
(24-359)This fantastical spirit of chivalry was his own  
(24-359)ruin, and very nearly that of the kingdom also.

(24-359)At length, in June or July, 1513, Henry VIII  
(24-359)sailed to France with a gallant army, where he  
(24-359)formed the siege of Terouenne. James IV now  
(24-359)took a decided step. He sent over his principal  
(24-359)herald to the camp of King Henry before Terouenne,  
(24-359)summoning him in haughty terms to  
(24-359)abstain from aggressions against James's ally, the  
(24-359)King of France, and upbraiding him, at the same  
(24-359)time, with the death of Barton, the impunity of the  
(24-359)Bastard Heron, the detention of the legacy of  
(24-359)Henry VII to his daughter the Scottish Queen,

[TG24-360, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 360]

(24-360)and all the subjects of quarrel which had occurred  
(24-360)since the death of that monarch. Henry VIII  
(24-360)answered this letter, which he justly considered as  
(24-360)a declaration of war, with equal bitterness, treating  
(24-360)the King of Scots as a perjured man, because he  
(24-360)was about to break the peace which he had  
(24-360)solemnly sworn to observe. His summons he

(24-360)rejected with scorn. "The King of Scotland was  
(24-360)not," he said, "of sufficient importance to determine  
(24-360)the quarrel between England and France."  
(24-360)The Scottish herald returned with this message,  
(24-360)but not in time to find his master alive.

(24-360)James had not awaited the return of his embassy  
(24-360)to commence hostilities. Lord Home, his lord  
(24-360)high chamberlain, had made an incursion into  
(24-360)England with an army of about three or four  
(24-360)thousand men. They collected great booty; but  
(24-360)marching carelessly and without order, fell into an  
(24-360)ambush of the English Borderers, concealed among  
(24-360)the tall broom, by which Millfield plain, near  
(24-360)Wooler, was then covered. The Scots sustained  
(24-360)a total defeat, and lost near a third of their numbers  
(24-360)in slain and wounded. This was a bad commencement  
(24-360)of the war.

(24-360)Mean while James, contrary to the advice of his  
(24-360)wisest counsellors, determined to invade England  
(24-360)with a royal army. The Parliament were unwilling  
(24-360)to go into the King's measures. The tranquillity  
(24-360)of the country, ever since the peace with  
(24-360)England, was recollected, and as the impolitic  
(24-360)claim of the supremacy seemed to be abandoned,  
(24-360)little remained to stir up the old animosity between

[TG24-361, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 361]

(24-361)the kingdoms. The King, however, was personally  
(24-361)so much liked, that he obtained the consent of  
(24-361)the Parliament to this fatal and unjust war; and  
(24-361)orders were given to assemble all the array of the  
(24-361)kingdom of Scotland upon the Borough-moor of  
(24-361)Edinburgh, a wide common, in the midst of which  
(24-361)the royal standard was displayed from a large stone,  
(24-361)or fragment of rock, called the Hare-stone.

(24-361)Various measures were even in this extremity  
(24-361)resorted to for preventing the war. One or two  
(24-361)of them seem to have been founded upon a knowledge,  
(24-361)that the King's temper was tinged with a  
(24-361)superstitious melancholy, partly arising from constitutional  
(24-361)habits, partly from the remorse which he  
(24-361)always entertained for his accession to his father's  
(24-361)death. It was to these feelings that the following  
(24-361)scene was doubtless addressed:--

(24-361)As the King was at his devotions in the church  
(24-361)of Linlithgow, a figure, dressed in an azure-coloured  
(24-361)robe, girt with a girdle, or sash of linen, having  
(24-361)sandals on his feet, with long yellow hair, and a  
(24-361)grave commanding countenance, suddenly appeared  
(24-361)before him. This singular-looking person paid  
(24-361)little or no respect to the royal presence, but pressing  
(24-361)up to the desk at which the King was seated,  
(24-361)leaned down on it with his arms, and addressed  
(24-361)him with little reverence. He declared, that "his  
(24-361)Mother laid her commands on James to forbear the  
(24-361)journey which he purposed, seeing that neither  
(24-361)he, nor any who went with him, would thrive in  
(24-361)the undertaking." He also cautioned the King  
(24-361)against frequenting the society of women, and using

[TG24-362, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 362]

(24-362)their counsel; "If thou dost," said he, "thou shalt  
(24-362)be confounded and brought to shame."

(24-362)These words spoken, the messenger escaped  
(24-362)from among the courtiers so suddenly, that he  
(24-362)seemed to disappear. There is no doubt that this  
(24-362)person had been dressed up to represent Saint  
(24-362)John, called in Scripture the adopted son of the  
(24-362)Virgin Mary. The Roman Catholics believed in  
(24-362)the possibility of the souls of departed saints and

(24-362)apostles appearing on earth, and many impostures  
(24-362)are recorded in history of the same sort with that  
(24-362)I have just told you.

(24-362)Another story, not so well authenticated, says,  
(24-362)that a proclamation was heard at the market-cross  
(24-362)of Edinburgh, at the dead of night, summoning the  
(24-362)King, by his name and titles, and many of his  
(24-362)nobles and principal leaders, to appear before the  
(24-362)tribunal of Pluto within the space of forty days.  
(24-362)This also has the appearance of a stratagem,  
(24-362)invented to deter the King from his expedition.  
(24-362)But neither these artifices, nor the advice and  
(24-362)entreaty of Margaret, the Queen of Scotland, could  
(24-362)deter James from his unhappy expedition. He  
(24-362)was so well beloved, that he soon assembled a  
(24-362)great army, and placing himself at their head, he  
(24-362)entered England near the castle of Twisell, on the  
(24-362)22d of August, 1513. He speedily obtained possession  
(24-362)of the Border fortresses of Norham, Wark,  
(24-362)Etall, Ford, and others of less note, and collected  
(24-362)a great spoil. Instead, however, of advancing with  
(24-362)his army upon the country of England, which lay  
(24-362)defenceless before him, the King is said to have

[TG24-363, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 363]

(24-363)trifled away his time in an intercourse of gallantry  
(24-363)with Lady Heron of Ford, a beautiful woman, who  
(24-363)contrived to divert him from the prosecution of his  
(24-363)expedition until the approach of an English army.

(24-363)While James lay thus idle on the frontier, the  
(24-363)Earl of Surrey, that same noble and gallant knight  
(24-363)who had formerly escorted Queen Margaret to  
(24-363)Scotland, now advanced at the head of an army of  
(24-363)twenty-six thousand men. The earl was joined  
(24-363)by his son Thomas, the lord high admiral, with



(24-363)a large body of soldiers who had been disembarked  
(24-363)at Newcastle. As the warlike inhabitants of the  
(24-363)northern counties gathered fast to Surrey's standard,  
(24-363)so, on the other hand, the Scots began to  
(24-363)return home in great numbers; because, though,  
(24-363)according to the feudal laws, each man had brought  
(24-363)with him provisions for forty days, these being now  
(24-363)nearly expended, a scarcity began to be felt in  
(24-363)James's host. Others went home to place their  
(24-363)booty in safety.

(24-363)Surrey, feeling himself the stronger party, became  
(24-363)desirous to provoke the Scottish King to  
(24-363)fight. He therefore sent James a message, defying  
(24-363)him to battle; and the Lord Thomas Howard,  
(24-363)at the same time, added a message, that as King  
(24-363)James had often complained of the death of Andrew  
(24-363)Barton, he, Lord Thomas, by whom that  
(24-363)deed was done, was now ready to maintain it with  
(24-363)his sword in the front of the fight. James returned  
(24-363)for answer, that to meet the English in battle  
(24-363)was so much his wish, that had the message of the  
(24-363)earl found him at Edinburgh, he would have laid

[TG24-364, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 364]

(24-364)aside all other business to have met him on a  
(24-364)pitched field.

(24-364)But the Scottish nobles entertained a very different  
(24-364)opinion from their King. They held a  
(24-364)council, at which Lord Patrick Lindsay was made  
(24-364)president, or chancellor. This was the same  
(24-364)person, who, in the beginning of the King's reign,  
(24-364)had pleaded so well for his brother, to whose titles  
(24-364)and estate he afterwards succeeded. He opened  
(24-364)the discussion, by telling the council a parable of  
(24-364)a rich merchant, who would needs go to play at

(24-364)dice with a common hazarder, or sharper, and stake  
(24-364)a rose-noble of gold against a crooked halfpenny.  
(24-364)"You, my lords," he said, " will be as unwise as  
(24-364)the merchant, if you risk your King, whom I compare  
(24-364)to a precious rose-noble, against the English  
(24-364)general, who is but an old crooked churl, lying in  
(24-364)a chariot. Though the English lose the day, they  
(24-364)lose nothing but this old churl and a parcel of  
(24-364)mechanics; whereas so many of our common  
(24-364)people have gone home, that few are left with us  
(24-364)but the prime of our nobility." He therefore gave  
(24-364)it as his advice, that the King should withdraw  
(24-364)from the army, for safety of his person, and that  
(24-364)some brave nobleman should he named by the  
(24-364)council, to command in the action. The council  
(24-364)agreed to recommend this plan to the King.

(24-364)But James, who desired to gain fame by his  
(24-364)own military skill and prowess, suddenly broke in  
(24-364)on the council, and told them, with much heat,  
(24-364)that they should not put such a disgrace upon him.  
(24-364)"I will fight with the English," he said, "though

[TG24-365, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 365]

(24-365)you had all sworn the contrary. You may shame  
(24-365)yourselves by flight, but you shall not shame me;  
(24-365)and as for Lord Patrick Lindsay, who has got the  
(24-365)first vote, I vow, that when I return to Scotland,  
(24-365)I will cause him to be hanged over his own gate."

(24-365)In this rash and precipitate resolution to fight at  
(24-365)all risks, the King was much supported by the  
(24-365)French ambassador, De la Motte. This was  
(24-365)remarked by one of our old acquaintances, the  
(24-365)Earl of Angus, called Bell-the-Cat, who, though  
(24-365)very old, had come out to the field with his sovereign.  
(24-365)He charged the Frenchman with being

(24-365)willing to sacrifice the interests of Scotland to  
(24-365)those of his own country, which required that the  
(24-365)Scots and English should fight at all hazards; and  
(24-365)Angus, like Lord Lindsay, alleged the difference  
(24-365)between the parties, the English being many of  
(24-365)them men but of mean rank, and the Scottish  
(24-365)army being the flower of their nobility and gentry.  
(24-365)Incensed at his opposition, James said to him  
(24-365)scornfully, "Angus, if you are afraid, you may go  
(24-365)home." The earl, on receiving such an insult, left  
(24-365)the camp that night; but his two sons remained,  
(24-365)and fell in the fatal battle, with two hundred of  
(24-365)the name of Douglas.

(24-365)While King James was in this stubborn humour,  
(24-365)the Earl of Surrey had advanced as far as Wooler,  
(24-365)so that only four or five miles divided the armies.  
(24-365)The English leader enquired anxiously for some  
(24-365)guide, who was acquainted with the country,  
(24-365)which is intersected and divided by one or two  
(24-365)large brooks, which unite to form the river Till,

[TG24-366, Tales of a Grandfather, chap.24, p. 366]

(24-366)and is, besides, in part mountainous. A person  
(24-366)well mounted, and completely armed, but having  
(24-366)the visor of his helmet lowered, to conceal his  
(24-366)face, rode up, and then dismounting, knelt down  
(24-366)before the earl, and offered to be his guide, if he  
(24-366)might obtain pardon of an offence of which he had  
(24-366)been guilty. The earl assured him of his forgiveness,  
(24-366)providing he had not committed treason  
(24-366)against the King of England, or personally  
(24-366)wronged any lady -- crimes which Surrey declared  
(24-366)he would not pardon. "God forbid," said the  
(24-366)cavalier, "that I should have been guilty of such  
(24-366)shameful sin; I did but assist in killing a Scotsman

(24-366)who ruled our Borders too strictly, and often did  
(24-366)wrong to Englishmen." So saying, he raised the  
(24-366)visor of his helmet, which hid his face, and showed  
(24-366)the countenance of the Bastard Heron, who had  
(24-366)been a partner in the assassination of Sir Robert  
(24-366)Ker, as you were told before. His appearance  
(24-366)was most welcome to the Earl of Surrey, who  
(24-366)readily pardoned him the death of a Scotsman at  
(24-366)that moment, especially since he knew him to be  
(24-366)as well acquainted with every pass and path on the  
(24-366)eastern frontier, as a life of constant incursion and  
(24-366)depredation could make him.

(24-366)The Scottish army had fixed their camp upon a  
(24-366)hill called Flodden, which rises to close in, as it  
(24-366)were, the extensive flat called Millfield Plain (6 Sept.).

(24-366)This eminence slopes steeply  
(24-366)towards the plain, and there is an extended piece  
(24-366)of level ground on the top, where the Scots might  
(24-366)have drawn up their army, and awaited at great

[TG24-367, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 367]

(24-367)advantage the attack of the English. Surrey liked  
(24-367)the idea of venturing an assault on that position so  
(24-367)ill, that he resolved to try whether he could not  
(24-367)prevail on the King to abandon it. He sent a  
(24-367)herald to invite James to come down from the  
(24-367)height, and join battle in the open plain of Millfield  
(24-367)below--reminded him of the readiness with which  
(24-367)he had accepted his former challenge -- and hinted,  
(24-367)that it was the opinion of the English chivalry  
(24-367)assembled for battle, that any delay of the encounter  
(24-367)would sound to the King's dishonour.

(24-367)We have seen that James was sufficiently rash  
(24-367)and imprudent, but his impetuosity did not reach  
(24-367)to the pitch Surrey perhaps expected. He refused

(24-367)to receive the messenger into his presence, and  
(24-367)returned for answer to the message, that it was  
(24-367)not such as it became an earl to send to a king.

(24-367)Surrey, therefore, distressed for provision, was  
(24-367)obliged to resort to another mode of bringing the  
(24-367)Scots to action (9 Sept.). He moved northward,  
(24-367)sweeping round the hill of Flodden, keeping  
(24-367)out of the reach of the Scottish artillery, until,  
(24-367)crossing the Till near Twisell castle, he placed  
(24-367)himself, with his whole army, betwixt James and  
(24-367)his own kingdom. The King suffered him to  
(24-367)make this flank movement without interruption,  
(24-367)though it must have afforded repeated and advantageous  
(24-367)opportunities for attack. But when he  
(24-367)saw the English army interposed betwixt him and  
(24-367)his dominions, he became alarmed lest he should  
(24-367)be cut off from Scotland. In this apprehension he  
(24-367)was confirmed by one Giles Musgrave, an Englishman,

[TG24-368, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 368]

(24-368)whose counsel he used upon the occasion,  
(24-368)and who assured him, that if he did not descend  
(24-368)and fight with the English army, the Earl of Surrey  
(24-368)would enter Scotland, and lay waste the whole  
(24-368)country. Stimulated by this apprehension, the  
(24-368)King resolved to give signal for the fatal battle.

(24-368)With this view the Scots set fire to their huts,  
(24-368)and the other refuse and litter of their camp. The  
(24-368)smoke spread along the side of the hill, and under  
(24-368)its cover the army of King James descended the  
(24-368)eminence, which is much less steep on the northern  
(24-368)than the southern side, while the English advanced  
(24-368)to meet them, both concealed from each other by  
(24-368)the clouds of smoke.

(24-368)The Scots descended in four strong columns, all

(24-368)marching parallel to each other, having a reserve  
(24-368)of the Lothian men commanded by Earl Bothwell.  
(24-368)The English were also divided into four bodies  
(24-368)with a reserve of cavalry led by Dacre.

(24-368)The battle commenced at the hour of four in the  
(24-368)afternoon. The first which encountered was the  
(24-368)left wing of the Scots, commanded by the Earl of  
(24-368)Huntly and Lord Home, which overpowered and  
(24-368)threw into disorder the right wing of the English,  
(24-368)under Sir Edmund Howard. Sir Edmund was  
(24-368)beaten down, his standard taken, and he himself  
(24-368)in danger of instant death, when he was relieved  
(24-368)by the Bastard Heron, who came up at the head  
(24-368)of a band of determined outlaws like himself, and  
(24-368)extricated Howard. It is objected to the Lord  
(24-368)Home by many Scottish writers, that he ought to  
(24-368)have improved his advantage, by hastening to the

[TG24-369, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 369]

(24-369)support of the next division of the Scottish army.  
(24-369)It is even pretended, that he replied to those who  
(24-369)urged him to go to the assistance of the King, that  
(24-369)"the man did well that day who stood and saved  
(24-369)himself." But this seems invented, partly to criminate  
(24-369)Home, and partly to account for the loss of  
(24-369)the battle in some other way than by the superiority  
(24-369)of the English. In reality, the English cavalry,  
(24-369)under Dacre, which acted as a reserve, appear to  
(24-369)have kept the victors in check; while Thomas  
(24-369)Howard, the lord high admiral, who commanded  
(24-369)the second division of the English, bore down, and  
(24-369)routed the Scottish division commanded by Crawford  
(24-369)and Montrose, who were both slain. Thus  
(24-369)matters went on the Scottish left.

(24-369)Upon the extreme right of James's army, a division

(24-369)of Highlanders, consisting of the clans of  
(24-369)MacKenzie, MacLean, and others, commanded by  
(24-369)the Earls of Lennox and Argyle, were so insufferably  
(24-369)annoyed by the volleys of the English arrows,  
(24-369)that they broke their ranks, and, in despite of the  
(24-369)cries, entreaties, and signals of De la Motte, the  
(24-369)French ambassador, who endeavoured to stop  
(24-369)them, rushed tumultuously down hill, and being  
(24-369)attacked at once in flank and rear by Sir Edward  
(24-369)Stanley, with the men of Cheshire und Lancashire,  
(24-369)were routed with great slaughter.

(24-369)The only Scottish division which remains to be  
(24-369)mentioned, was commanded by James in person,  
(24-369)and consisted of the choicest of his nobles and gentry,  
(24-369)whose armour was so good, that the arrows  
(24-369)made but slight impression upon them. They were

[TG24-370, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 370]

(24-370)all on foot--the King himself had parted with his  
(24-370)horse. They engaged the Earl of Surrey, who  
(24-370)opposed to them the division which he personally  
(24-370)commanded. The Scots attacked with the greatest  
(24-370)fury, and, for a time, had the better. Surrey's  
(24-370)squadrons were disordered, his standard in great  
(24-370)danger, Bothwell and the Scottish reserve were  
(24-370)advancing, and the English seemed in some risk of  
(24-370)losing the battle. But Stanley, who had defeated  
(24-370)the Highlanders, came up on one flank of the  
(24-370)King's division; the admiral, who had conquered  
(24-370)Crawford and Montrose, assailed them on the  
(24-370)other. The Scots showed the most undaunted  
(24-370)courage. Uniting themselves with the reserve  
(24-370)under Bothwell, they formed into a circle, with  
(24-370)their spears extended on every side, and fought  
(24-370)obstinately. Bows being now useless, the English

(24-370)advanced on all sides with their bills, a huge  
(24-370)weapon which made ghastly wounds. But they  
(24-370)could not force the Scots either to break or  
(24-370)retire, although the carnage among them was  
(24-370)dreadful. James himself died amid his warlike  
(24-370)peers and loyal gentry. He was twice wounded  
(24-370)with arrows, and at length despatched with a bill.  
(24-370)Night fell without the battle being absolutely decided,  
(24-370)for the Scottish centre kept their ground,  
(24-370)and Home and Dacre held each other at bay. But  
(24-370)during the night, the remainder of the Scottish  
(24-370)army drew off in silent despair from the bloody  
(24-370)field; on which they left their King, and their  
(24-370)choicest nobles and gentlemen.

(24-370)This great and decisive victory was gained by

[TG24-371, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 371]

(24-371)the Earl of Surrey on 9th September, 1513. The  
(24-371)victors had about five thousand men slain, the Scots  
(24-371)twice that number at least. But the loss lay not  
(24-371)so much in the number of the slain, as in their rank  
(24-371)and quality. The English lost very few men of  
(24-371)distinction. The Scots left on the field the King,  
(24-371)two bishops, two mitred Abbots, twelve earls, thirteen  
(24-371)lords, and five eldest sons of peers. The  
(24-371)number of gentlemen slain was beyond calculation;  
(24-371)--there is scarcely a family of name in Scottish  
(24-371)history who did not lose a relative there.

(24-371)The Scots were much disposed to dispute the  
(24-371)fact, that James IV. had fallen on Flodden Field.  
(24-371)Some said, he had retired from the kingdom, and  
(24-371)made a pilgrimage to Jerusalem. Others pretended,  
(24-371)that in the twilight, when the fight was nigh  
(24-371)ended, four tall horsemen came into the field, having  
(24-371)each a bunch of straw on the point of their



(24-371)spears, as a token for them to know each other by.  
(24-371)They said these men mounted the King on a dun  
(24-371)hackney, and that he was seen to cross the Tweed  
(24-371)with them at night-fall. Nobody pretended to say  
(24-371)what they did with him, but it was believed he was  
(24-371)murdered in Home castle; and I recollect, about  
(24-371)forty years since, that there was a report, that in  
(24-371)cleaning the draw-well of that ruinous fortress, the  
(24-371)workmen found a skeleton wrapt in a bull's hide,  
(24-371)and having a belt of iron round the waist. There  
(24-371)was, however, no truth in this rumour. It was the  
(24-371)absence of this belt of iron which the Scots founded  
(24-371)upon to prove, that the body of James could not  
(24-371)have fallen into the hands of the English, since

[TG24-372, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 372]

(24-372)they either had not that token to show, or did not  
(24-372)produce it. They contended, therefore, that the  
(24-372)body over which the enemy triumphed, was not  
(24-372)that of James himself, but of one of his attendants,  
(24-372)several of whom, they said, were dressed in his  
(24-372)armour.

(24-372)But all these are idle fables, invented and believed  
(24-372)because the vulgar love what is mysterious,  
(24-372)and the Scots readily gave credit to what tended  
(24-372)to deprive their enemies of so signal a trophy of  
(24-372)victory. The reports are contrary to common sense.  
(24-372)Lord Home was the chamberlain of James IV,  
(24-372)and high in his confidence. He had nothing whatever  
(24-372)to gain by the King's death, and therefore we  
(24-372)must acquit him of a great crime, for which there  
(24-372)could be no adequate motive. The consequence  
(24-372)of James's death proved, in fact, to be the earl's  
(24-372)ruin, as we shall see presently.

(24-372)It seems true, that the King usually wore the

(24-372)belt of iron in token of his repentance, for his father's  
(24-372)death, and the share he had in it. But it is not  
(24-372)unlikely that he would lay aside such a cumbrous  
(24-372)article of penance in a day of battle; or the English,  
(24-372)when they despoiled his person, may have  
(24-372)thrown it aside as of no value. The body which  
(24-372)the English affirm to have been that of James, was  
(24-372)found on the field by Lord Dacre, and carried by  
(24-372)him to Berwick, and presented to Surrey. Both  
(24-372)of these lords knew James's person too well to be  
(24-372)mistaken. The body was also acknowledged by  
(24-372)his two favourite attendants, Sir William Scott  
(24-372)and Sir John Forman. who wept at beholding it.

[TG24-373, Tales of a Grandfather, chap. 24, p. 373]

(24-373)The fate of these relics was singular and degrading.  
(24-373)They were not committed to the tomb,  
(24-373)for the Pope, being at that time in alliance with  
(24-373)England against France, had laid James under a  
(24-373)sentence of excommunication, so that no priest  
(24-373)dared pronounce the funeral-service over them.  
(24-373)The royal corpse was therefore embalmed, and  
(24-373)sent to the Monastery of Sheen, in Surrey. It lay  
(24-373)there till the Reformation, when the monastery  
(24-373)was given to the Duke of Suffolk; and after that  
(24-373)period, the body, which was lapped up in a sheet  
(24-373)of lead, was suffered to toss about the house like  
(24-373)a piece of useless lumber. Stow, the historian,  
(24-373)saw it flung into a waste room among old pieces of  
(24-373)wood, lead, and other rubbish. Some idle workmen,  
(24-373)"for their foolish pleasure," says the same  
(24-373)writer, "hewed off the head; and one Lancelot  
(24-373)Young, master-glazier to Queen Elizabeth, finding  
(24-373)a sweet smell come from thence, owing, doubtless,  
(24-373)to the spices used for embalming the body, carried

(24-373)the head home, and kept it for some time; but in  
(24-373)the end, caused the sexton of Saint Michael's,  
(24-373)Wood street, to bury it in the charnel-house."

(24-373)Such was the end of that King once so proud  
(24-373)and powerful. The fatal battle of Flodden, in  
(24-373)which he was slain, and his army destroyed, is  
(24-373)justly considered as one of the most calamitous  
(24-373)events in Scottish history.

[TG25-374, TG, chap. 25, p. 374]

(25-374)THE event of the defeat at Flodden threw all  
(25-374)Scotland into a degree of mourning and despair,  
(25-374)which is not yet forgotten in the southern counties,  
(25-374)on whom a great part of the loss fell, as their  
(25-374)inhabitants, soldiers from situation and disposition,  
(25-374)composed a considerable portion of the forces which  
(25-374)remained with the King's army, and suffered, of  
(25-374)course, a great share in the slaughter which took  
(25-374)place. The inhabitants of the smaller towns on  
(25-374)the Border, as Selkirk, Hawick, Jedburgh, and  
(25-374)others, were almost entirely cut off, and their songs  
(25-374)and traditions preserve to this day the recollection  
(25-374)of their sufferings and losses.

(25-374)Not only a large proportion of the nobility and  
(25-374)of the baronage, who had by right of birth the  
(25-374)important task of distributing justice and maintaining

[TG25-375, TG, chap. 25, p. 375]

(25-375)order in their domains, but also the magistrates  
(25-375)of the burghs, who, in general, had remained with  
(25-375)the army, had fallen on the field; so that the  
(25-375)country seemed to be left open to invasion and  
(25-375)conquest, such as had taken place after the loss of  
(25-375)the battles of Dunbar and Halidon-Hill. Yet the

(25-375)firm courage of the Scottish people was displayed  
(25-375)in its noblest colours in this formidable crisis; -- all  
(25-375)were ready to combat, and more disposed, even  
(25-375)from the excess of the calamity, to resist, than to  
(25-375)yield to the fearful consequences which might have  
(25-375)been expected.

(25-375)Edinburgh, the metropolis, or capital city of  
(25-375)Scotland, set a noble example of the conduct which  
(25-375)should be adopted under a great national calamity.  
(25-375)The provost, bailies, and magistracy of that city,  
(25-375)had been carried by their duty to the battle, in  
(25-375)which most of them, with the burghers and citizens  
(25-375)who followed their standard, had fallen with the  
(25-375)King. A certain number of persons called Presidents,  
(25-375)at the head of whom was George Towrs of  
(25-375)Inverleith, had been left with a commission to  
(25-375)discharge the duty of magistrates during the  
(25-375)absence of those to whom the office actually  
(25-375)belonged. The battle was fought, as we have  
(25-375)said, on the 9th of September. On the 10th,  
(25-375)being the succeeding day, the news reached Edinburgh,  
(25-375)and George Towrs, and the other presidents,  
(25-375)published on that day a proclamation, which  
(25-375)would do honour to the annals of any country in  
(25-375)Europe. The presidents must have known that  
(25-375)all was lost; but they took every necessary precaution

[TG25-376, TG, chap. 25, p. 376]

(25-376)to prevent the public from yielding to a hasty  
(25-376)and panic alarm, and to prepare with firmness the  
(25-376)means of public defence.

(25-376)"Whereas," says this remarkable proclamation,  
(25-376)"news have arrived, which are yet uncertain, of  
(25-376)misfortune which hath befallen the King and his  
(25-376)army, we strictly command and charge all persons

(25-376)within the city to have their arms in readiness,  
(25-376)and to be ready to assemble at the tolling of the  
(25-376)common bell of the town, to repel any enemy who  
(25-376)may seek to attack the city. We also discharge  
(25-376)all women of the lower class, and vagabonds of  
(25-376)every description, from appearing on the street to  
(25-376)cry and make lamentations; and we command  
(25-376)women of honest fame and character to pass to the  
(25-376)churches, and pray for the King and his army,  
(25-376)and for our neighbours who are with the King's  
(25-376)host." In this way the gallant George Towrs  
(25-376)took measures at once for preventing the spreading  
(25-376)of terror and confusion by frantic and useless  
(25-376)lamentation, and for defence of the city, if need  
(25-376)should arise. The simplicity of the order showed  
(25-376)the courage and firmness of those who issued it,  
(25-376)under the astounding national calamity which had  
(25-376)been sustained.

(25-376)The Earl of Surrey did not, however, make any  
(25-376)endeavour to invade Scotland, or to take any advantage  
(25-376)of the great victory he had obtained, by  
(25-376)attempting the conquest of that country. Experience  
(25-376)had taught the English, that though it might  
(25-376)be easy for them to overrun their northern neighbours,  
(25-376)to ravage provinces, and to take castles and

[TG25-377, TG, chap. 25, p. 377]

(25-377)cities, yet that the obstinate valour of the Scots,  
(25-377)and their love of independence, had always, in the  
(25-377)long run, found means of expelling the invaders.  
(25-377)With great moderation and wisdom, Henry, or his  
(25-377)ministers, therefore, resolved rather to conciliate  
(25-377)the friendship of the Scots, by foregoing the immediate  
(25-377)advantages which the victory of Flodden  
(25-377)afforded them, than to commence another invasion,

(25-377)which, however distressing to Scotland, was likely,  
(25-377)as in the Bruce and Baliol wars, to terminate in  
(25-377)the English also sustaining great loss, and ultimately  
(25-377)being again driven out of the kingdom.  
(25-377)The English counsellors remembered that Margaret,  
(25-377)the widow of James, was the sister of the  
(25-377)King of England -- that she must become Regent  
(25-377)of the kingdom, and would naturally be a friend  
(25-377)to her native country. They knew that the late  
(25-377)war had been undertaken by the King of Scotland  
(25-377)against the wish of his people; and with noble as  
(25-377)well as wise policy, they endeavoured rather to  
(25-377)render Scotland once more a friendly power, than,  
(25-377)by invasion and violence, to convert her into an  
(25-377)irreconcilable enemy. The incursions which followed  
(25-377)the battle of FLODDEN extended only to the  
(25-377)Borders; no great attempt against Scotland was  
(25-377)made, or apparently meditated.

(25-377)Margaret, the Queen Dowager, became Regent  
(25-377)of Scotland, and guardian of the young King,  
(25-377)James V, who, as had been too often the case on  
(25-377)former similar occasions, ascended the throne when  
(25-377)a child of not two years old.

[TG25-378, TG, chap. 25, p. 378]

(25-378)But the authority of Margaret was greatly diminished,  
(25-378)and her character injured, by a hasty  
(25-378) and imprudent marriage which she formed  
(25-378)with Douglas, Earl of Angus, the  
(25-378)grandson of old Bell-the-Cat(6 Aug. 1514). That celebrated  
(25-378)person had not long survived the fatal  
(25-378)battle of Flodden, in which both his sons had fallen.  
(25-378)His grandson, the inheritor of his great  
(25-378)name, was a handsome youth, brave, high-born,  
(25-378)and with all the ambition of the old Douglasses, as

(25-378)well as with much of their military talents. He  
(25-378)was, however, young, rash, and inexperienced; and  
(25-378)his elevation to be the husband of the Queen Regent  
(25-378)excited the jealousy and emulation of all the  
(25-378)other nobles of Scotland, who dreaded the name  
(25-378)and the power of the Douglas.

(25-378)A peace now took place betwixt France and  
(25-378)England, and Scotland was included in the treaty;  
(25-378)but this could hardly be termed fortunate, considering  
(25-378)the distracted state of the country, which,  
(25-378)freed from English ravages, and no longer restrained  
(25-378)by the royal authority, was left to prosecute  
(25-378)its domestic feuds and quarrels with the usual  
(25-378)bloody animosity. The nation, or rather the  
(25-378)nobles, disgusted with Margaret's regency, chiefly  
(25-378)on account of her marriage with Angus, and that  
(25-378)young lord's love of personal power, now thought  
(25-378)of calling back into Scotland John Duke of Albany,  
(25-378)son of that Robert who, was banished during the  
(25-378)reign of James III. This nobleman was the nearest  
(25-378)male relation of the King, being the cousin-german

[TG25-379, TG, chap. 25, p. 379]

(25-379)of his father. The Queen was by many  
(25-379)considered as having forfeited the right  
(25-379)of regency by her marriage, and Albany  
(25-379)on his arrival from France, was generally accepted  
(25-379)in that character(18 May 1515).

(25-379)John Duke of Albany had been born and bred  
(25-379)in France, where he had large estates by his  
(25-379)mother, a daughter of the Earl of Boulogne; and  
(25-379)he seems always to have preferred the interests of  
(25-379)that kingdom to those of Scotland, with which he  
(25-379)was only connected by hereditary descent. He  
(25-379)was a weak and passionate man, taking up opinions

(25-379)too slightly, and driven out of his resolutions too  
(25-379)easily. His courage may justly be suspected; and,  
(25-379)if not quite a fool, he was certainly not the wise  
(25-379)man whom Scotland required for a governor.  
(25-379)He brought over with him, however, a large sum  
(25-379)of money from France; and as his manners were  
(25-379)pleasing, his birth high, and his pretensions great,  
(25-379)he easily got the advantage over Queen Margaret,  
(25-379)her husband the Earl of Angus, and other lords  
(25-379)who favoured her interest.

(25-379)After much internal disturbance, Queen Margaret  
(25-379)was obliged altogether to retire from Scotland  
(25-379)and to seek refuge at her brother's court,  
(25-379)where she bore a daughter, Lady Margaret  
(25-379)Douglas, of whom you will hear  
(25-379)more hereafter(18 Oct. 1515). In the mean time, her  
(25-379)party in Scotland was still farther weakened.  
(25-379)Lord Home was one of her warmest supporters;  
(25-379)this was the same nobleman who commanded the  
(25-379)left wing at the battle of Flodden, and was victorious

[TG25-380, TG, chap. 25, p. 380]

(25-380)on that day, but exposed himself to suspicion  
(25-380)by not giving assistance to the other divisions of  
(25-380)the Scottish army. He and his brethren were  
(25-380)enticed to Edinburgh, and seized upon, tried, and  
(25-380)beheaded, upon accusations which are not  
(25-380)known (8 Oct. 1516). This severity, however, was so  
(25-380)far from confirming Albany's power, that  
(25-380)it only excited terror and hatred; and his situation  
(25-380)became so difficult, that to his friends in secret he  
(25-380)expressed nothing but despair, and wished that he  
(25-380)had broken his limbs when he first left his easy  
(25-380)and quiet situation in France, to undertake the  
(25-380)government of so distracted and unruly a country



(25-380)as Scotland. In fact, he accomplished a retreat to  
(25-380) France, and, during his absence, committed  
(25-380)the wardenry of the Scottish frontiers  
(25-380)to a brave French knight, the  
(25-380)Chevalier de la Bastie, remarkable for the beauty  
(25-380)of his person, the gallantry of his achievements,  
(25-380)but destined, as we shall see, to a tragical fate (8 June 1517).

(25-380)The office of warden had belonged to the Lord  
(25-380)Home; and his friends, numerous, powerful, and  
(25-380)inhabiting the eastern frontier, to which the office  
(25-380)belonged, were equally desirous to avenge the  
(25-380)death of their chief, and to be freed from the  
(25-380)dominion of a stranger like De la Bastie, the  
(25-380)favourite of Albany, by whose authority Lord  
(25-380)Home had been executed. Sir David Home of  
(25-380)Wedderburn, one of the fiercest of the name, laid  
(25-380)an ambush for the unfortunate warden, near Langton,  
(25-380)in Berwickshire. De la Bastie, seeing his  
(25-380)life aimed at, was compelled to fly, in the hope of

[TG25-381, TG, chap. 25, p. 381]

(25-381)gaining the castle of Dunbar; but near the town  
(25-381)of Dunse, his horse stuck fast in a morass. The  
(25-381)pursuers came up and put him to death.  
(25-381)Sir David Home knitted the head, by  
(25-381)the long locks which the deceased wore,  
(25-381)to the mane of his horse, rode with it in triumph  
(25-381)to Home castle, and placed it on a spear on the  
(25-381)highest turret (19 Sept. 1517). The hair is said to be yet preserved  
(25-381)in the charter chest of the family. By this cruel  
(25-381)deed, Wedderburn considered himself as doing a  
(25-381)brave and gallant action in avenging the death of  
(25-381)his chief and kinsman, by putting to death a friend  
(25-381)and favourite of the Regent, although it does not  
(25-381)appear that De la Bastie had the least concern in

(25-381)Lord Home's execution.

(25-381)The decline of Albany's power enabled Queen  
(25-381)Margaret and her husband to return to Scotland,  
(25-381)leaving their infant daughter in the charge of her  
(25-381)maternal uncle, King Henry. But after their  
(25-381)return to their own country, the Queen Dowager  
(25-381)quarrelled, to an irreconcilable pitch, with her husband  
(25-381)Angus, who had seized upon her revenues,  
(25-381)and paid her little attention or respect, associating  
(25-381)with other women, and giving her much cause for  
(25-381)uneasiness. She at length separated from him,  
(25-381)and endeavoured to procure a divorce, which she  
(25-381)afterwards obtained. By this domestic discord,  
(25-381)the power of Angus was considerably diminished;  
(25-381)but he was still one of the first men in Scotland,  
(25-381)and might have gained the complete government  
(25-381)of the kingdom, had not his power been counterbalanced  
(25-381)by that of the Earl of Arran. This

[TG25-382, TG, chap. 25, p. 382]

(25-382)nobleman was the head of the great family of  
(25-382)Hamilton; he was connected with the royal family  
(25-382)by blood, and had such extensive possessions and  
(25-382)lordships as enabled him, though inferior in personal  
(25-382)qualities to the Earl of Angus, to dispute  
(25-382)with that chief of the more modern Douglasses the  
(25-382)supreme administration. All, or almost all, the  
(25-382)great men of Scotland were in league with one or  
(25-382)other of these powerful earls; each of whom  
(25-382)supported those who followed him, in right or wrong,  
(25-382)and oppressed those who opposed him, without any  
(25-382)form of justice, but merely at his own pleasure.  
(25-382)In this distracted state of things, it was impossible  
(25-382)for the meanest man in Scotland to obtain success  
(25-382)in the best-founded suit, unless he was under the

(25-382)protection either of Angus or Arran; and to which-  
(25-382)ever he might attach himself, he was sure to  
(25-382)become an object of hatred and suspicion to the  
(25-382)other. Under pretence, also, of taking a side, and  
(25-382)acting for the interests of their party, wicked and  
(25-382)lawless men committed violences of every kind,  
(25-382)burned, murdered, and plundered, and pretended  
(25-382)that they did so in the cause of the Earl of Angus,  
(25-382)or of his rival the Earl of Arran.

(25-382)At length, on the 30th of April, 1520, these two  
(25-382)great factions of the Douglasses and the Hamiltons  
(25-382)came both to Edinburgh to attend a parliament, in  
(25-382)which it was expected that the western noblemen  
(25-382)would in general take part with Arran, while those  
(25-382)of the east would side with Angus. One of the  
(25-382)strongest supporters of Arran was the Archbishop  
(25-382)of Glasgow, James Beaton, a man remarkable for

[TG25-383, TG, chap. 25, p. 383]

(25-383)talents, but unfortunately also for profligacy. He  
(25-383)was at this time Chancellor of Scotland; and the  
(25-383)Hamiltons met within his palace, situated at the  
(25-383)bottom of Blackfriars-Wynd, one of those narrow  
(25-383)lanes which run down from the High Street of  
(25-383)Edinburgh to the Cowgate. The Hamiltons, finding  
(25-383)themselves far the more numerous party, were  
(25-383)deliberating upon a scheme of attacking the Douglasses,  
(25-383)and apprehending Angus. That earl heard  
(25-383)of their intentions, and sent his uncle, Gawain  
(25-383)Douglas, Bishop of Dunkeld (a scholar and a poet),  
(25-383)to remonstrate with Beaton, and to remind him,  
(25-383)that it was his business as a churchman to preserve  
(25-383)peace; Angus offering at the same time to withdraw  
(25-383)out of the town, if he and his friends should  
(25-383)be permitted to do so in safety. The chancellor

(25-383)had, however, already assumed armour, which he  
(25-383)wore under his rochet, or bishop's dress. As he  
(25-383)laid his hand on his heart, and said, "Upon my  
(25-383)conscience, I cannot help what is about to happen,"  
(25-383)the mail which he wore was heard to rattle. "Ha,  
(25-383)my lord!" said the Bishop of Dunkeld, "I perceive  
(25-383)that your conscience is not sound, as appears  
(25-383)from its clatters!" And leaving him after this rebuke,  
(25-383)he hastened back to his nephew, the Earl of  
(25-383)Angus, to bid him defend himself like a man.  
(25-383)"For me," he said, "I will go to my chamber and  
(25-383)pray for you."

(25-383)Angus collected his followers, and hastened, like  
(25-383)a sagacious soldier, to occupy the High Street of  
(25-383)the city. The inhabitants were his friends, and  
(25-383)spears were handed out to such of the Douglasses

[TG25-384, TG, chap. 25, p. 384]

(25-384)as had them not; which proved a great advantage,  
(25-384)the Hamiltons having no weapons longer than their  
(25-384)swords.

(25-384)In the mean time Sir Patrick Hamilton, a wise  
(25-384)and moderate man, brother to the Earl of Arran,  
(25-384)advised his brother strongly not to come to blows;  
(25-384)but a natural son of the earl, Sir James Hamilton  
(25-384)of Draphane, notorious for his fierce and cruel  
(25-384)nature, exclaimed that Sir Patrick only spoke this  
(25-384)"because he was afraid to fight in his friend's  
(25-384)quarrel."

(25-384)"Thou liest, false bastard!" said Sir Patrick;  
(25-384)"I will fight this day where thou darest not be  
(25-384)seen."

(25-384)Immediately they all rushed towards the street,  
(25-384)where the Douglasses stood drawn up to receive  
(25-384)them.

(25-384)Now the Hamiltons, though very numerous,  
(25-384)could only come at their enemies by thronging out  
(25-384)of the little steep lanes which open into the High  
(25-384)Street, the entrance of which the Douglasses had  
(25-384)barricaded with carts, barrels, and suchlike lumber.  
(25-384)As the Hamiltons endeavoured to force their way,  
(25-384)they were fiercely attacked by the Douglasses with  
(25-384)pikes and spears. A few who got out on the street  
(25-384)were killed or routed. The Earl of Arran, and  
(25-384)his son the bastard, were glad to mount upon a  
(25-384)coal-horse, from which they threw the load, and  
(25-384)escaped by flight. Sir Patrick Hamilton was killed,  
(25-384)with many others; thus dying in a scuffle, which  
(25-384)he had done all in his power to prevent. The  
(25-384)confusion occasioned by this skirmish was greatly

[TG25-385, TG, chap. 25, p. 385]

(25-385)increased by the sudden appearance of Sir David  
(25-385)Home of Wedderburn, the fierce Border leader  
(25-385)who slew De la Bastie. He came with a band of  
(25-385)eight hundred horse to assist Angus, and finding  
(25-385)the skirmish begun, made his way into the city by  
(25-385)bursting open one of the gates with sledge-hammers.  
(25-385)The Hamiltons fled out of the town in great confusion;  
(25-385)and the consequences of this skirmish were  
(25-385)such, that the citizens of Edinburgh called it  
(25-385)Clean-the-Causeway, because the faction of Arran was,  
(25-385)as it were, swept from the streets. This broil gave  
(25-385)Angus a great advantage in his future disputes  
(25-385)with Arran; but it exhibits a wild picture of the  
(25-385)times, when such a conflict could be fought in the  
(25-385)midst of a populous city.

(25-385)A year after this battle, the Duke of Albany  
(25-385)returned from France, again to assume the Regency.  
(25-385)He appears to have been encouraged to

(25-385)take this step by the King of France, who was  
(25-385)desirous of recovering his influence in the Scottish  
(25-385)councils, and who justly considered Angus as a  
(25-385)friend of England. The Regent being successful  
(25-385)in again taking up the reins of government, Angus  
(25-385)was in his turn obliged to retire to France, where  
(25-385)he spent his time so well, that he returned much  
(25-385)wiser and more experienced than he had been  
(25-385)esteemed before his banishment. Albany, on the  
(25-385)contrary, showed himself neither more prudent nor  
(25-385)more prosperous than during his first government.  
(25-385)He threatened much, and did little. He broke the  
(25-385)peace with England, and invaded that country with  
(25-385)a large army; then made a dishonourable truce

[TG25-386, TG, chap. 25, p. 386]

(25-386)with Lord Dacre, who commanded on the English  
(25-386)frontier, and finally retired without fighting, or  
(25-386)doing any thing to support the boasts which he had  
(25-386)made. This mean and poor-spirited conduct excited  
(25-386)the contempt of the Scottish nation, and the  
(25-386)duke found it necessary to retreat once more to  
(25-386)France, that he might obtain money and forces to  
(25-386)maintain himself in the Regency, which he seemed  
(25-386)to occupy rather for the advantage of that country  
(25-386)than of Scotland.

(25-386)The English, in the mean while, maintained the  
(25-386)war which Albany had rekindled, by destructive  
(25-386)and dangerous incursions on the Scottish frontiers;  
(25-386)and that you may know how this fearful kind of  
(25-386)warfare was conducted, I will give you some  
(25-386)account of the storming of Jedburgh, which happened  
(25-386)at this time.

(25-386)Jedburgh was, after the castle and town of Roxburgh  
(25-386)had, been demolished, the principal town of

(25-386)the county. It was strongly walled, and inhabited  
(25-386)by a class of citizens, whom their neighbourhood to  
(25-386)the English frontier made familiar with war. The  
(25-386)town Was also situated near those mountains in  
(25-386)which the boldest of the Scottish Border clans had  
(25-386)their abode.

(25-386)The Earl of Surrey (son of him who had vanquished  
(25-386)the Scots at Flodden, and who was now  
(25-386)Duke of Norfolk) advanced from Berwick to  
(25-386)Jedburgh in September 1523, with an army of  
(25-386)about ten thousand men. The Border chieftains,  
(25-386)on the Scottish frontier, could only oppose to this  
(25-386)well-appointed army about fifteen or eighteen

[TG25-387, TG, Ch. 25, p. 387]

(25-387)hundred of their followers; but they were such  
(25-387)gallant soldiers, and so willing to engage in battle,  
(25-387)that the brave English general, who had served  
(25-387)in foreign countries as well as at home, declared he  
(25-387)had never met their equal. "Could forty thousand  
(25-387)such men be assembled," said Surrey, "it would  
(25-387)be a dreadful enterprise to withstand them." But  
(25-387)the force of numbers prevailed, and the English  
(25-387)carried the place by assault. There were six  
(25-387)strong towers within the town, which continued  
(25-387)their defence after the walls were surmounted.  
(25-387)These were the residences of persons of rank,  
(25-387)walled round, and capable of strong resistance. The  
(25-387)Abbey also was occupied by the Scots, and most  
(25-387)fiercely defended. The battle continued till late  
(25-387)in the night, and the English had no way of completing  
(25-387)the victory, but by setting fire to the town;  
(25-387)and even in this extremity, those who manned the  
(25-387)towers and the Abbey continued their defence.  
(25-387)The next day Lord Dacre was despatched to attack

(25-387)the castle of Fairniehirst, within about three miles  
(25-387)of Jedburgh, the feudal fortress of Sir Andrew  
(25-387)Ker, a border chief, formerly mentioned. It was  
(25-387)taken, but with great loss to the besiegers. In the  
(25-387)evening; Lord Dacre, contrary to Surrey's commands,  
(25-387)chose to encamp with his cavalry without  
(25-387)the limits of the camp which the latter had chosen.  
(25-387)About eight at night, when the English leaders

[TG25-388, TG, Chap. 25, p. 388]

(25-388)were at supper, and concluded all resistance over  
(25-388)Dacre's quarters were attacked, and his horses all  
(25-388)cut loose. The terrified animals, upwards of fifteen  
(25-388)hundred in number, came galloping down to Surrey's  
(25-388)camp, where they were received with showers of  
(25-388)arrows and volleys of musketry; for the English  
(25-388)soldiers, alarmed by the noise, thought the Scots  
(25-388)were storming their intrenchments, and shot off  
(25-388)their shafts at a hazard. Many of the horses ran  
(25-388)into Jedburgh, which was still in flames, and were  
(25-388)seized and carried off by the Scottish women,  
(25-388)accustomed like their husbands to the management  
(25-388)of horses. The tumult was so great, that the  
(25-388)English imputed it to supernatural interference,  
(25-388)and Surrey alleged that the devil was seen visibly  
(25-388)six times during the confusion. Such was the  
(25-388)credulity of the times; but the whole narrative  
(25-388)may give you some notion of the obstinate defence  
(25-388)of the Scots, and the horrors of a Border foray.

(25-388)The Scots, on their side, were victorious in  
(25-388)several severe actions, in one of which the Bastard  
(25-388)Heron, who had contributed so much to Surrey's  
(25-388)success at Flodden, was slain on the field.

(25-388)The young King of Scotland, though yet a boy,  
(25-388)began to show tokens of ill-will towards the French



(25-388)and Albany. Some nobles asked him what should  
(25-388)be done with the French, whom the Regent had  
(25-388)left behind. "Give them," said James, "to Davie  
(25-388)Home's keeping." Sir David Home, you must  
(25-388)recollect, was the chieftain who put to death Albany's  
(25-388)friend, De la Bastie, and knitted his head  
(25-388)by the hair to his saddlebow.

[TG25-389, TG, chap. 25, p. 389]

(25-389)Albany, however, returned again from France  
(25-389)with great supplies of money, artillery, arms, and  
(25-389)other provisions for continuing the war. These  
(25-389)were furnished by France, because it was the interest  
(25-389)of that country at all hazards to maintain  
(25-389)the hostility between Scotland and England. The  
(25-389)Regent, once more, with a fine army, made an  
(25-389)attack upon Norham, a castle on the English frontier;  
(25-389)but when he had nearly gained this fortress,  
(25-389)he suddenly, with his usual cowardice, left off the  
(25-389)assault, on learning that Surrey was advancing to  
(25-389)its relief. After this second dishonourable retreat,  
(25-389)Albany left Scotland, detested and despised alike  
(25-389)by the nobles and the common people, who felt  
(25-389)that all his undertakings had ended in retreat and  
(25-389)disgrace. In the month of May, 1524, he took  
(25-389)leave of Scotland, never to return.